# Contents

**Introduction**

**Glossary**

## UNIT 1

### FOOD AND DRINK

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Using nouns</th>
<th>DIAGNOSTIC TEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Singular and plural nouns</td>
<td>book/books; man/men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Countable and uncountable nouns (1)</td>
<td>an apple/some bread; this apple/these apples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Countable and uncountable nouns (2)</td>
<td>a coffee/some coffee; a paper/paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 a/an</td>
<td>a cake/an orange; a dentist/an architect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 the, a/an</td>
<td>the /ðə/ banana, the /ði:/ apple; the or a/an?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Uses of the and a/an</td>
<td>in the morning/on Monday; play the piano/play football</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 some and any</td>
<td>some bananas/any bananas; some/any tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 much, many, a lot of</td>
<td>not much milk/not many potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 a little, a few, too much, too many, not enough</td>
<td>a little salt/a few eggs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 all, most, some, no/none, both</td>
<td>all fruit/all of the fruit in this shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## UNIT 2

### COLLEGE AND STUDYING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronouns and possessives</th>
<th>DIAGNOSTIC TEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11 Subject and object pronouns</td>
<td>I/me, he/him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Possessive forms of nouns</td>
<td>Jake's teacher/my parents' house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Possessive adjectives and pronouns</td>
<td>my/mine, her/hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 this, that, these, those</td>
<td>this computer/that star, these days/those days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Reflexive pronouns; each other</td>
<td>myself; yourself; themselves/each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Indefinite pronouns</td>
<td>someone/anyone/no one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 one/ones, another one</td>
<td>the red one/the black ones; Which one?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## UNIT 3

### FESTIVALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prepositions</th>
<th>DIAGNOSTIC TEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18 Prepositions of place (1)</td>
<td>at, in, on, above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Prepositions of place (2)</td>
<td>in front of, behind, opposite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Prepositions of movement</td>
<td>along, past, across, over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Prepositions of time (1)</td>
<td>at, in, on, from ... to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 Prepositions of time (2)</td>
<td>before/after, for/during</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Prepositions with other meanings</td>
<td>by, with, as, like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Common phrases with prepositions</td>
<td>at home, in bed, on holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## UNIT 4

### HOBBIES AND ACTIVITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives and adverbs</th>
<th>DIAGNOSTIC TEST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25 Types of adjective</td>
<td>a long blue skirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 Adjectives with -ed and -ing</td>
<td>excited/exciting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 Types of adverb</td>
<td>quickly, often, today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 Adverbs and word order</td>
<td>He plays well. She's always late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 Comparative adjectives (1)</td>
<td>older than, more interesting than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 Comparative adjectives (2)</td>
<td>better, worse, further</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 Superlative adjectives</td>
<td>the highest, the most difficult, the best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 not as ... as, the same (... as)</td>
<td>Paris isn't as big as London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 too, enough</td>
<td>This jacket's too small/not big enough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 Adverbs of degree</td>
<td>very, extremely, a bit, a lot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present tenses</td>
<td>Diagnostic Test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present simple of be</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 Questions with be</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 Present simple (1)</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37 Present simple (2)</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38 Present continuous (1)</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 Present continuous (2)</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 Present simple or present continuous?</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41 have got</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 He has dark hair. He's having a shower.</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43 have</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past tenses</th>
<th>Diagnostic Test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past simple of be</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 Past simple (1)</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 Past simple (2)</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46 Past continuous</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47 Past continuous</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48 Past simple or past continuous?</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49 used to</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect</th>
<th>Diagnostic Test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect for past experiences</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 Present perfect with present results</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 Present perfect with just, already, yet</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52 Present perfect with for, since, etc.</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53 Present perfect or past simple?</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54 Present perfect continuous</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 Present perfect or present perfect continuous?</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56 We've played./We've been playing.</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future forms</th>
<th>Diagnostic Test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future with going to</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57 Future with will</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58 Future with present continuous and present simple</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 We're leaving at .../The train leaves at ...</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 Comparing future forms</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modal verbs</th>
<th>Diagnostic Test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can/can't</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61 could, will be able to</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62 can, could, may</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63 have to, need to</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64 must/mustn't</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 had to, will have to</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66 should, ought to, must</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67 might, may, must be, can't be</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68 It might rain later. You must be tired.</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Unit 10: HOLIDAYS AND TRAVEL
### Conditionals
- **69** Present conditions: If you press this switch, the light comes on.
- **70** First conditional: If you arrive late, they'll be asleep.
- **71** Second conditional: If I was rich, I'd travel around the world.

### Review
- **180**

### Test
- **182**

## Unit 11: THE WEATHER
### Word order and sentence patterns
- **72** Word order in statements: The boy hit the ball./The ball hit the boy.
- **73** Word order in questions and imperatives: Are you ...? Can she ...? Sit down.
- **74** Verbs with two objects: We sent her some flowers./We sent some flowers to her.
- **75** there + be: There's a new restaurant in town.
- **76** it as a subject/object: It's raining. I like it.

### Review
- **194**

### Test
- **196**

## Unit 12: TECHNOLOGY
### Questions
- **77** Yes/No questions: Is that a new phone? Yes, it is./No, it isn't.
- **78** Wh- questions: Which button should I press?
- **79** who, when, where, why: Who are you writing to?
- **80** what, which, whose: What's your favourite colour? Whose is this bag?
- **81** how: how old/how long/how tall/how wide?
- **82** Subject and object questions: Who saw you? Who did you see?

### Review
- **210**

### Test
- **212**

## Unit 13: DOCTORS AND MEDICINE
### Verbs with -ing forms and infinitives
- **83** Verb + -ing form: I like working here. We're going swimming.
- **84** Verb + infinitive: agree to, decide to, want to, would love to
- **85** Verb + object + infinitive; make and let: She asked me to phone her. He let us go home.

### Review
- **220**

### Test
- **222**

## Unit 14: INTERVIEWS
### Reported statements and indirect questions
- **86** Reported statements: She said she was hungry.
- **87** say, tell, ask, advise: He told me to sit down.
- **88** Indirect questions: Do you know what time it is?

### Review
- **230**

### Test
- **232**

## Unit 15: FILM LOCATIONS
### Relative clauses
- **89** Relative clauses and pronouns: This is my brother who lives in Japan.
- **90** Relative pronouns: This is the house (that was) used in the film.
- **91** Relative clauses and prepositions: That's the beach that we went to.

### Review
- **240**

### Test
- **242**

## Unit 16: CRIME AND POLICE
### Linking words
- **92** and, but, or: Would you like tea or coffee?
- **93** because, so, so that: I'm studying because I want to pass my exams.
- **94** Linking words for time: when, before, after, until, while
- **95** Linking words for stories and instructions: First, then, next ...

### Review
- **252**

### Test
- **254**
## Passive forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>The passive (1)</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>The passive (2)</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>to have something done</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Words that go together

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>Words that go together</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Verb + preposition (1)</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Verb + preposition (2)</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>Confusing verbs</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>make or do, have or take?</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Forming words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>Forming nouns</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>Forming adjectives</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Forming compound nouns and adjectives</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Spoken English

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>Question tags</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>too and so ..., either and neither ...</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Expressing surprise, shock, pleasure, etc.</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Weak forms</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>English in conversation</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Grammar check

### APPENDIX 1 Quick checks

- QUICK CHECK 1 Pronouns
- QUICK CHECK 2 Verb tenses
- QUICK CHECK 3 Modal verbs
- QUICK CHECK 4 Conditionals
- QUICK CHECK 5 Verbs + -ing form and infinitive
- QUICK CHECK 6 Linking words
- QUICK CHECK 7 Verbs + prepositions
- QUICK CHECK 8 Phrasal verbs

### APPENDIX 2 Irregular verbs

### APPENDIX 3 Spelling rules

### APPENDIX 4 British and American English

### Index

Pronunciation table

inside back cover
Introduction to MyGrammarLab

Welcome to MyGrammarLab – a three-level grammar series that teaches and practises grammar through a unique blend of book, online and mobile resources. We recommend that you read this introduction along with the guide on the inside front cover to find out how to get the most out of your course.

What level is MyGrammarLab?
The MyGrammarLab series takes learners from elementary to advanced grammar, each level benchmarked against the Common European Framework and providing grammar practice for Cambridge ESOL exams:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level description</th>
<th>CEFR level</th>
<th>Grammar practice for exams</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Elementary</td>
<td>A1/A2</td>
<td>KET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>B1/B2</td>
<td>PET FCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>C1/C2</td>
<td>CAE IELTS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What is unique about MyGrammarLab?
MyGrammarLab offers every learner of English the opportunity to study grammar in the way that best suits their needs – and provides as much practice as necessary to ensure that each grammar point is learnt and can be used in the context of real communication.

At each level, learners have access to a variety of materials:

**book**
- clear and simple explanations based on the Longman Dictionaries Defining Vocabulary of just 2000 words to ensure full understanding of the grammar
- natural examples to illustrate the grammar points, based on the Longman Corpus Network
- a topic-based approach that presents grammar in context
- a variety of exercise types – from drills to contextualised and personalised practice
- a review section at the end of each module to revise the key grammar points
- an exit test at the end of each module to check that the grammar has been fully understood
- information on the pronunciation of grammar items
- information on common errors and how to avoid making them
- a grammar check section for quickly checking specific grammar points
- a glossary of grammar terms used in the explanations

**online**
- a grammar teacher who explains key grammar points through short video presentations
- a full diagnostic test to identify the grammar points that need to be learnt
- more practice for every unit of the book
- regular progress tests to check that the grammar has been understood
- catch-up exercises for learners who fail the progress tests – to ensure that every learner has the opportunity to master the grammar
- a full exit test at the end of each module
- automatic marking and feedback
- pronunciation practice of grammar items
- the option to listen and check the answers for practice exercises from the book
- additional grammar practice for exams

**mobile**
- downloadable exercises for practice anywhere, any time
- the ability to create exercises from a bank of practice questions
- automatic marking and feedback for wrong answers
What is a MyLab?
A MyLab is a Learning Management System – an online platform that enables learners and teachers to manage the learning process via a number of online tools such as automatic marking, the recording of grades in a gradebook and the ability to customise a course.

How can I get the most out of MyGrammarLab?

To the Student:
If you are using MyGrammarLab in class, your teacher will tell you which units to study and which exercises to do.
If you are using MyGrammarLab for self study, you can work through the book from Module 1 to Module 20. Or you can choose a grammar point that you want to study and go to a specific unit. Here is a good way to study a complete module:

The modules in the book start with a text such as an advert, an email or a magazine article. The text introduces the grammar for the module. The grammar is highlighted in the text, and then there is a short exercise. The exercise shows you the units you need to study in order to learn more about the main grammar points.

Look for this instruction at the bottom of the first page of each module. Take the diagnostic test then click on the feedback button to see which unit to go to for more information and practice.

The grammar information is on the left in the book. The practice exercises are on the right. It is therefore easy to check and read the grammar while you are doing the exercises.

For more information about the grammar, go online to watch the grammar videos in each unit and listen to your grammar teacher.

If you would like more grammar and listening practice, you can listen to the correct answers for some of the practice exercises in the book. Look for this symbol: Play. Listen and check. If you have the book with answer key, you can check all the answers at the back of the book.

All the online exercises are different to the exercises in the book. They are marked automatically. Your grades are recorded in your own gradebook.

Look for this symbol on the grammar information pages in the book: Press. This means that there is some information on a pronunciation point. Go online to hear the information and practice the pronunciation.

Look for this instruction at the end of the practice exercises in the book. The online progress tests show you if you have understood the grammar points in the units that you have studied. If your grade is low, do the catch-up exercises online. If your grade is good, you probably don’t need to do these.

For practice away from your computer, download the catch-up exercises questions to your mobile phone. You can create your own practice tests. Go to www.mygrammarlab.com to download.

At the end of each module there is a two-page review section. The review exercises bring together all the grammar points in the module.

At the end of each module, there is also a test. The test shows you how much you know and if you need more practice.

Look for this instruction at the end of the exit test in the book.
To the Teacher:

If you are using MyGrammarLab with a class of students, you can either work through the book from the first to the last module, or you can select the areas that you would like your students to focus on.

You can work through a module as outlined on the previous page – but as a teacher, you are able to assign tests and view all the scores from your class in one gradebook. This will enable you to see at a glance which areas are difficult for your students – and will let you know which of your students are falling behind.

For pronunciation practice in class, audio CDs are available. The disk and track number for each explanation are given in the book. Look for this symbol: 🎧 1.10.

All tests (diagnostic, progress and exit) are hidden from students. Assign these when you want your class to take the test. Marking is automatic – as is the reporting of grades into the class gradebook.

Some practice exercises – such as written tasks - require teacher marking. These are hidden from your students so you should only assign these if you want them to submit their answers to you for marking. The grades are reported automatically into the gradebook.

Key to symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❗️</td>
<td>This highlights a grammar point that learners find particularly difficult and often gives common errors that students make.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NATURAL ENGLISH</td>
<td>Sometimes a sentence may be grammatically correct, but it does not sound natural. These notes will help you to produce natural English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRAMMAR IN USE</td>
<td>This indicates an exercise which practises grammar in a typical context, often a longer passage or dialogue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎧 1.02</td>
<td>This indicates where you will find pronunciation practice on the audio CDs and in the MyLab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎧 2.10 Listen and check.</td>
<td>This indicates that there is a recorded answer online. You can check your answer by listening to the recording, or, if you are using the edition with answer key, by looking in the key at the back of the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short form</td>
<td>Some words in the explanations are shown in green. This indicates that they are included in the glossary on p. ix. Look in the glossary to find out what these words mean.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Glossary

active if a verb or sentence is active, the person or thing doing the action is the subject of the verb. In the sentence The boy kicked the ball, the verb kick is active.
→ passive

adjective a word that describes a noun, e.g. big, comfortable, red, pleased

adverb a word that describes or adds to the meaning of a verb, an adjective, another adverb, or a sentence. There are different types of adverbs: manner: quickly, kindly, beautifully; degree: completely, definitely; frequency: always, often, never; place: here, there; time: now, then.

auxiliary verb a verb that we use with another verb to make questions, negative sentences, tenses and the passive. Common auxiliary verbs are be, do and have.
→ main verb, modal verb

capital letter the large form of a letter of the alphabet, that you use at the beginning of a name or sentence, e.g. B not b

clause a group of words that contains a verb and usually a subject. A clause may be a sentence or part of a sentence.
→ main clause, relative clause

comparative adjective nicer, hotter, better, more comfortable, etc. We use comparative adjectives for comparing two people or things.
→ superlative adjective

compound adjective an adjective that is made from two or more words, e.g. high-quality (high + quality), well-known (well + known)

compound noun a noun that is made from two or more words, e.g. whiteboard (white + board), dining room (dining + room)

consonant any of the sounds and letters of the English alphabet, except a, e, i, o, u → vowel

continuous the form of a verb in tenses we make with be and the -ing form. We use the continuous for things we are doing now, or for a temporary period of time:

present continuous: I'm using my computer at the moment; past continuous: They were living in Japan at the time; present perfect continuous: I've been waiting here for an hour.

countable a countable noun has a singular and a plural form: table/tables, man/men.
→ uncountable

first conditional a sentence with if that describes a future situation. We use the present tense after if in the first conditional:
If it's sunny tomorrow, we'll go to the beach.

imperative the form of a verb that you use to tell someone to do something:
Give me that book! | Don't sit there!

indefinite pronoun someone, anyone, everywhere, nothing, etc: I've looked everywhere for my key.

indirect question a question that begins with Could you tell me, Do you know, etc. We use indirect questions to sound more polite:
Could you tell me when the next bus leaves for London?

infinitive the base form of a verb, e.g. be, read, talk, write. The infinitive with to is to + the base form: to be, to read, to talk, to write.

-ing form the form of a verb that ends in -ing: being, reading, talking, writing

intonation the way that the level of your voice changes to add meaning to what you say. For example, your voice often goes up at the end of a question.

irregular an irregular verb does not have a past tense and past participle that end in -ed, e.g. go/went/gone; an irregular noun does not have a plural that ends in -s, e.g. man/men; an irregular adverb does not end in -ly, e.g. fast/fast → regular

linking word a word such as and, but or because that we use to connect one part of a sentence with another, or to show how one sentence is related to another:
We paid the bill and went home. | I like summer because it's warm.

main clause a group of words that we can use alone or with another clause. In the sentence It was raining when I went outside, the main clause is It was raining. → clause

main verb a verb that we can use with or without an auxiliary verb, e.g. cost in How much does it cost? It costs $20.
→ auxiliary verb, modal verb

modal verb a type of auxiliary verb such as can, should or might that we use with another verb to show ideas such as ability (can), advice (should) or possibility (might):
I can swim. | We should leave now. | You might be right.
negative a negative sentence contains a word such as not or never: Shakespeare wasn't French. | I've never liked coffee. → positive
noun a word for a person, animal, thing, place or idea, e.g. student, cat, rain, China, happiness
object a noun or pronoun that usually follows a verb. In the sentence The boy kicked the ball, the noun ball is the object. → subject
object pronoun me, him, her, it, us, you, them. We use object pronouns after the verb.
→ subject pronoun
passive if a verb or sentence is passive, the subject of the verb does not do the action, but is affected by the action of the verb. In the sentence The ball was kicked into goal, the verb was kicked is passive. → active
past continuous → continuous
past participle a form of a verb that we use to make perfect tenses and passives. Regular verbs have past participles that end in -ed, e.g. arrive/arrived, call/called. Irregular verbs have different forms, e.g. go/gone, speak/spoken, sell/sold.
past perfect the tense of a verb that we form with had and the past participle. We can use the past perfect in reported statements: He said he'd already seen that film.
past simple the tense of a verb that we form by adding -ed to regular verbs. Irregular verbs have different forms, e.g. go/went. We use the past simple for single or repeated actions in the past: I called you yesterday. | I called you twice yesterday.
phrasal verb a verb that we use with a preposition or an adverb, or both. A phrasal verb has a different meaning from the verb alone: Please take off your shoes before you enter. (take + off = remove)
plural the form of a word that we use for more than one person or thing. Students is the plural of student. They is a plural pronoun. → singular
positive a positive sentence does not contain a word such as not or never: Shakespeare was English. | I've always liked coffee. → negative
possessive adjective my, your, his, her, its, our, their. Possessive adjectives show who something belongs to, or who someone is related to: my house, her brother.
possessive pronoun mine, yours, his, hers, ours, theirs. A possessive pronoun replaces a possessive adjective + noun: It's hers. (her car) | That's mine. (my mobile)
preposition a word such as on, at, into or by that we use before a noun to show the position of something, or to talk about time: Put it on the table. | Meet me at six o'clock. We can use prepositions in other ways, too, e.g. Please send me your answer by email.
present continuous → continuous
present perfect the tense of a verb that we form with have and the past participle, e.g. has gone. The present perfect has many uses; for example, for a situation that started in the past and continues now: I've been at university for two years now.
present perfect continuous → continuous
present simple the tense of a verb that uses the base form, or the base form + s for he, she and it: I live, he lives. We use the present simple, for example, for regular activities and facts: I go to work by bus. | The Earth goes round the Sun.
pronoun a word that replaces a noun, e.g. I, she, they, me, her, them, it
→ subject pronoun, object pronoun
question a sentence that needs an answer: Are you English? | What time is it?
→ Wh- question, Yes/No question
question tag isn't it?, doesn't she?, have you? etc. We add question tags to the end of a statement to make it a question, or to check that someone agrees with you: You're from Poland, aren't you?
reflexive pronoun myself, yourself, himself, etc. We use reflexive pronouns when the subject and object of the verb are the same: Dave looked at himself in the mirror. (= Dave looked at Dave.)
regular a regular verb has a past tense and past participle that end in -ed: finish/finished; a regular noun has a plural that ends in -s: book/books; a regular adverb ends in -ly: quick/quickly. → irregular
relative clause a group of words that gives information about someone or something in the main part of the sentence. In the sentence Mary is the woman that I met on holiday, the relative clause is that I met on holiday.
**relative pronoun** a pronoun that connects a relative clause to the other part of the sentence, e.g. who, which, that

**reported statement** a statement that reports what a person has said. In a reported statement, the sentence *We’re going to the shops* becomes *They said they were going to the shops.*

**second conditional** a sentence with *if* that describes a situation we are imagining in the present or future. We use the past tense after *if* in the second conditional: *If I was rich, I’d buy a Ferrari.*

**short answer** an answer to a *Yes/No* question that does not repeat the main verb: *Are you waiting for the bus? Yes, I am.* | *Did you buy it? No, I didn’t.*

**short form** the form of verbs we usually use when we are speaking, e.g. *I’ve* (not *I have*), weren’t (not *were not*)

**singular** the form of a word that we use for only one person or thing. *Student* is a singular noun. *Am* and *is* are singular forms of the verb *be.* → plural

**statement** a sentence that is not a question or an imperative: *I’m British.* | *It’s three o’clock.* | *The play hasn’t started.*

**stress** the force that we use to say a part of a word. In the word *coffee*, the stress is on the first syllable. If we stress a word or part of a word, we say it with more force.

**strong form** the way we pronounce a word when we stress the vowel in it: The strong form of *can* is /kæn/ and the weak form of *can* is /kən/. → weak form

**subject** a noun or pronoun that usually comes before the main verb in the sentence. The subject shows who or what the action is. *The boy (subject) kicked the ball (object).* → object

**subject pronoun** *I, he, she, it, we, you, they.* We use subject pronouns before the verb. → object pronoun

**superlative adjective** nicest, hottest, best, most comfortable, etc. We use superlative adjectives when we compare one person or thing with several others.

→ comparative adjective

**syllable** a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound. *Dad* has one syllable and *Daddy* has two syllables.

**time expression** a word or phrase such as *today, every day, on Mondays, once a week.* Time expressions describe when or how often we do regular activities.

**uncountable** an uncountable noun does not have a plural form, e.g. *milk, music, information* → countable

**verb** a word which describes an action or state, e.g. *go, eat, finish or live*

**vowel** one of the sounds that are shown by the letters *a, e, i, o, u* → consonant

**weak form** the way we pronounce a word when we do not stress the vowel in it: The weak form of *an /æn/ is an /ən/.* → strong form

**Wh-question** a question that begins with a *Wh-word: What’s your name? | How are you? Wh-word who, what, where, when, why, how* 

**Yes/No question** a question which only needs the answer *yes* or *no:* *Are you a student? | Do you like pasta?*

---

**Punctuation**

' apostrophe
() brackets
: colon
, comma
! exclamation mark
. full stop/period *AmE
- hyphen
? question mark
" quotation marks
; semicolon
Before you start

1 Read about the market. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

FRENCH
MARKET

Try some exciting new food this weekend!

A French market will be in Frampton on Saturday and Sunday. There will be a lot of interesting things, including:

- Mediterranean fruit and vegetables
- cheese from Normandy
- French bread and cakes
- chocolate from Paris
- a few clothes and a little jewellery

All the food and drink is from France.

The market will be in North Square on both days from 9.00 to 18.00.

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics.

The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 Do you eat vegetable / vegetables?
2 I really like French food / foods.
3 Belgian chocolate / A Belgian chocolate is delicious.
4 There's a / an new restaurant in the town.
5 A / The new supermarket in the town centre is really cheap.
6 Let's meet at the food hall in Sloane Square / the Sloane Square.
7 There's always some / any interesting food at the market.
8 There are much / a lot of markets in this area.
9 They sell a little / a few clothes at the market, too.
10 It's an Italian shop. All / Some the food is from Italy.

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.
1 Singular and plural nouns

1 Nouns

A noun is a person, a place or a thing:

* a waiter  a town  a pizza  a melon
* an apple  an egg  a steak

In writing, names of people, places, days, months, etc. begin with a capital letter:

* John Smith  Mr Brown
* Vancouver  Oxford Street
* Saturday  September  May Day

2 Singular and plural nouns

Most nouns can be singular (one) or plural (more than one):

**Singular**

* a pizza  a melon  a banana  an apple  an egg

**Plural**

* two pizzas  three melons  four bananas  five apples  some eggs

We usually add *-s* to a singular noun to make it plural, but some nouns are different:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUNS THAT END IN</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| s, ss, sh, ch, and x (and potato, tomato) | add *-es* | *buses, classes, dishes, watches, boxes, potatoes*
| consonant (b, c, d, etc.) + y (ay, ey, oy) | change y to i and add *-es* (add *-s*) | *families, babies, countries* | *days, valleys, toys*
| f or fe | change f to v and add *-es* | *loaves, wives, scarves*

The plural form of a few nouns is different. We call these **irregular nouns**:

**Singular**

* man  woman  child  person  foot  tooth  penny  fish  sheep

**Plural**

* men  women  children  people  feet  teeth  pence  fishes  sheep

Spelling rules ➤ page 316

Pronunciation ➤ 1.02

3 Noun + verb

We use different verb forms with singular and plural nouns:

**Singular noun** + **singular verb**

* Our teacher is British.*
* The bus leaves at 8.30.*

**Plural noun** + **plural verb**

* Those students are Japanese.*
* The buses leave from the town centre.*

Some nouns are always plural:

* clothes  jeans  shorts  scissors  trousers  (reading) glasses

We can also say:

* a pair of jeans  a pair of shorts  a pair of scissors
Practice

1 Write the plural form of the nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ -s</th>
<th>+ -es</th>
<th>+ -ies</th>
<th>+ -ves</th>
<th>irregular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>babies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Match the two parts of the sentences. Listen and check.

0 1 My brothers A walks to work.
2 My brother B walk to work.
1 1 Our English teacher A come from London.
   2 Our English teachers B comes from London.
2 1 The children A is sick in bed.
   2 Jan’s child B are sick in bed.
3 1 My feet A are hurting.
   2 My foot B is hurting.
4 1 Your reading glasses A is on the table.
   2 Your glass of water B are on the table.

3 Write the plural form of the nouns in the picture.

A ..........................  B ..........................  C ..........................
D ..........................  E ..........................  F ..........................
G ..........................

4 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the note with nouns from Exercise 3 or a form of the verb be. Listen and check.

Sorry, James - I'm going to see Mum because she's not well.
Can you put the shopping away? Thanks.
The steaks (0) are for dinner tonight, so can you put them in the fridge?
Can you take the eggs out of the (1) and put them in the fridge, too?
There are some (2) and (3) in the green bag - put them in the two (4) on the table. There are two (5) of bread, too - can you put one of them in the fridge, please? The jeans (6) for Simon - can you put them in his room?
See you later - I hope the interview was OK. Maureen
1 Countable nouns

Countable nouns are things we can count, for example, carrot, onion, potato.
- they can be singular: an onion
  They often have a/an, the, this/that in front of them:
  Is there a market here? Where's the market? This carrot is very sweet.
- they can be plural: onions
  They often have some, the, these/those in front of them:
  I'd like some apples, please. Those apples look good. Do you like apples?

2 Uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns are things we can't count, for example, salt, oil, water.
- they don't usually have a plural form: one oil, two oils
- they don't usually have a/an in front of them: an oil, a salt.

Uncountable nouns often have some in front of them:
✓ Can I have some milk in my coffee?
✗ Can I have a milk in my coffee?

uncountable noun + singular verb

Petrol is expensive.
This advice is very useful.

Some common uncountable nouns are:
- food: bread cheese meat tea coffee sugar
- materials: metal wood plastic paper
- school subjects and languages: history art music English Russian
- ideas and feelings: advice love time education information
- groups of similar things: furniture (chairs, tables, sofas) luggage (suitcases, bags)
  money (euros, pounds, dollars)

✗ Do you have some informations about the castle?
✓ Do you have some information about the castle?
Practice

1 Is the noun in italics in each sentence countable (C) or uncountable (U)? Write C or U.
0 Is there a bank near here? .......... C
1 That cheese is delicious. .......... U
2 Do you have milk in your coffee? .......... C
3 How much luggage do you have? .......... U
4 I need to get some oil for the car. .......... C
5 Can I have some potatoes, please? .......... U

2 Are the nouns countable or uncountable?

| countable      | uncountable
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apple</td>
<td>art</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>furniture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sugar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Match the pictures with the things on the shopping list.

0 cheese
1 4 steaks
2 4 potatoes
3 oil
4 bread
5 a melon

4 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct underlined words in the note from Adam to Rachel.

Rachel
Can you buy the food for dinner tonight? Mum and Dad are coming, so can you get (0) a meat / some meat, maybe four nice (1) steak / steaks? We need some (2) potato / potatoes – four large (3) potato / potatoes for baking. Can you buy (4) a bread and a cheese / some bread and cheese, too, and maybe (5) a nice juicy melon / some nice juicy melon to start? Oh, and we need some (6) oil / oils as well. Thanks.
See you later,
Adam

5 Correct the mistakes in the underlined parts of the sentences.

0 Do you want a salt in your soup?
1 Education are very important.
2 Can I have two box of eggs, please?
3 Can you give me some informations about the trains?
4 We’ve got a lot of luggages.
5 I must get a petrol for the car before we start.
6 I haven’t got a lot of moneys.
1 Nouns that can be countable or uncountable
Some nouns have a countable meaning and an uncountable meaning:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COUNTABLE</th>
<th>UNCOUNTABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'd like three teas, please. (cups of tea)</td>
<td>Tea comes from China and India. (drink)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My uncle has 25 chickens on his farm. (animals)</td>
<td>I love chicken, it's delicious! (food)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you like a chocolate? (one sweet)</td>
<td>French chocolate is very good. (food)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you buy a paper at the shop? (a newspaper)</td>
<td>Paper is made from wood. (material)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are four Russians in my class. (people)</td>
<td>Do you speak Russian? (language)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Ways of counting uncountable nouns
We 'count' uncountable nouns like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UNITS</th>
<th>CONTAINERS</th>
<th>MEASUREMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a piece of cake/cheese</td>
<td>a carton of milk/juice</td>
<td>a litre of milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a piece of furniture/luggage/paper</td>
<td>a can/tin of soup</td>
<td>half a kilo of sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bit of information</td>
<td>a glass of orange juice</td>
<td>six metres of cotton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bar of chocolate</td>
<td>a box of chocolates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a slice of bread/toast/cake</td>
<td>a cup of coffee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a loaf of bread</td>
<td>a bottle of water</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a tube of toothpaste</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ We don't use uncountable nouns with a or an:

✗ Can I have a toast?
✓ Can I have a slice of toast?

We can say:
Would you like some chocolate? or Would you like a bar of chocolate?

When we talk about drinks like tea and coffee we can say:
Would you like some coffee? Would you like a cup of coffee? Would you like a coffee?
Practice

1 Write the correct words from the box under the pictures.

0 a paper 1 2 3
4 5 6 7

- a chicken
- a chocolate
- a coffee
- coffee
- paper

2 Grammar in use Complete the conversations with a or some . Listen and check.

0 A Would you like a chocolate?
   B Oh, yes. Can I have that white one?
1 A I've got luggage in the car.
   B How many bags have you got?
2 A What's on at the cinema tonight?
   B I'm not sure. I'll buy paper and check.
3 A We need sugar.
   B OK, a kilo or half a kilo?
4 A Can we pay the bill, please?
   B Of course, two coffees and tea. That's £4.50.

3 Match the words on the left with the things on the right.

0 a cup of A toast
global comment re lists: all figures/num- 
1 a tube of B milk 
bers range right except arrowed lists of 
2 a bit of C toothpaste 
units on module Openers and Tests 
3 a piece of D soup 
4 a litre of E coffee 
5 a can of F information 
6 a slice of G paper

4 Grammar in use The underlined words are all in the wrong place. Find and write the correct words. Listen and check.

HANNAH Hi, Josie. I'm going to the shops now. Do you want anything?

JOSIE Oh, yes please, just a piece of water, a kilo of soup and a cup of potatoes.

HANNAH That's no problem. I can get those.

JOSIE That's nice of you. Come in and have a slice of coffee before you go.

HANNAH Oh, lovely. Thanks.

JOSIE Would you like a glass of cake, too?

HANNAH No, thanks. I had two tins of chocolate earlier, but can I have a bottle of water with the coffee? I'm really thirsty.

JOSIE Of course. Now, let me find a bar of paper and make a list of the shopping ...
4 a/an

1 Form

We use *a* and *an* before different sounds:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEFORE WORDS THAT BEGIN WITH</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>a</em> +</td>
<td>a cake, a sports teacher, a hat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>u</em> or <em>eu</em>, when they sound like <em>y</em></td>
<td>a uniform /ju:/, a European /uə/ city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>an</em> +</td>
<td>an apple, an interesting book, an uncle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>h</em> when you do not pronounce the <em>h</em></td>
<td>an hour, an honest man</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Use

We use *a/an*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to talk about one person or thing</th>
<th>We saw a good film at the cinema on Saturday. Do you live in a house or a flat?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to describe a person or thing with an adjective</td>
<td>She's a nice person. Is that an interesting book?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to talk about jobs</td>
<td>My uncle is a dentist. I want to be an architect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to mean 'one' with fractions and numbers</td>
<td>one and a half, a hundred, a thousand, a million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to mean 'each' in measurements</td>
<td>twice a day, once a month, four times a year, 80 kilometres an hour</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ *My uncle is a dentist.*

✔️ *My uncle is a dentist.*

We DON'T use *a/an*

- before plural nouns:
  *I like books about other countries. Children are welcome in this restaurant. Do you like adventure films?*
- before uncountable nouns:
  *Do you take sugar? Furniture is expensive these days. Teenagers often listen to music.*
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with a or an.

0 The school is looking for an English teacher.
1 They're building a hospital in the town centre.
2 There's a hourly train from here to the coast.
3 'What's this?' 'It's an euro.'
4 I've got an uncle in Sydney, Australia.
5 We've got enough students for a new class now.
6 Is there an university in Manchester?

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Write a or an. Write – if we don’t need a or an. \(0/2.08\) Listen and check.

A What shall we do tonight? Shall we go to a restaurant? The Star, perhaps?
B No, I'm not keen on a Chinese food. What about a Indian restaurant. Or Angelo's? They do fantastic pizzas.
A Yes, but there are always a lot of children there and it's very noisy on Friday nights.
B That's true. You know, I'd like a kebab. Is there a Greek restaurant around here?
A Mmm, I love kebabs. We don't have a Greek restaurant, but there's a new Turkish one in King Street.
B OK, great. Let's go there.

3 Complete the sentences with a nationality from Box A and a noun from Box B.
   Add a or an if necessary.

A American British Chinese Finnish Japanese Swedish
B city businessman cars company motorbikes writer

0 Saabs are Swedish cars.
1 Beijing is a city.
2 Bill Gates is an American
3 J K Rowling is a writer.
4 Yamahas are a company.
5 Nokia is an

4 GRAMMAR IN USE There are eight more places in this text where we need a or an. Write a or an in the correct places. \(0/2.09\) Listen and check.

There's a fantastic Turkish restaurant in our town. The owners are a couple from Istanbul; they came to Britain two years ago. Ayla, the woman, is an architect, but she works in the restaurant in the evening. Ocan, her husband, was a university lecturer in Istanbul, but he wanted to do something different. They've got a Turkish chef, Kemal, and a English waiter, Joe. They've got very good menus, with lots of dishes. We go there once or twice a month for really delicious meals.

\(0\) Go online for more practice
1 Pronunciation of the
We pronounce the with /ə/ before consonant sounds (b, d, k, t, s, etc.): the book, the sports teacher
We pronounce the with /iː/ before vowel sounds (a, e, i, o, u): the apple, the English teacher

2 Use of the
We use the when there is only one of something: The sun is very hot today. (There’s only one sun.) Jamie’s in the garden. (We only have one garden.) Don’t forget to lock the front door. (There’s only one front door on our house.) Can I see the manager? (There’s only one manager.)
We DON’T use the before plural or uncountable nouns when we talk about things or people in general: I like children. (children in general) Milk is good for you. (milk in general) Compare: I like the children. (the children in that family) The milk tastes horrible. (the milk in that bottle)

3 the or a/an?
We use the, not a or an, when it is clear which person or thing we are talking about. Compare:

| I need to get a bus to the station. (I don’t know which bus.) | The number 2 bus goes to the station. (We know which bus.) |
| Let’s go to a restaurant this evening. (There is more than one restaurant.) | Let’s go to the restaurant in Dean Street. (We know which restaurant.) |
| Would you like a biscuit? (There is more than one biscuit.) | Jason had the last biscuit! (We know which biscuit.) |

We use a or an when we use a noun for the first time, and the when we use it again: I bought a new coat and a dress yesterday. The coat is really warm. ‘There’s a really nice new café in the village.’ ‘Oh, do you mean the café with tables outside? Yes, it’s great.’
Practice

1 Choose the correct sentence, A or B for each picture.

A Shall I open a window?  A Can I borrow a pen?
B Shall I open the window?  B Can I borrow the pen?

A I like a red dress.  A Would you like a chocolate ice cream?
B I like the red dress.  B Would you like the chocolate ice cream?

A Can you pass me a dictionary?
B Can you pass me the dictionary?

A I'm going to buy an umbrella.
B I'm going to buy the umbrella.

A Listen and check.

Write a, an or the. Write – if we don’t need a, an or the.

We’re going shopping to buy a new computer.
I can’t use my computer in my office. It’s not working.
Can you answer my phone? I’m in the bathroom.
Are you going to the kitchen? Can you get me an apple?
‘Do we need onions?’ ‘Yes, and pasta. Can you get pasta from the Italian shop near the station?’
Look at the moon. What a beautiful evening!

GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the email.

Australia is amazing – it’s our third week here and everything is going well.
We moved into the lovely apartment last week and we’re really enjoying it.
1 A / The apartment is huge – it’s got four bedrooms so 2 a / the children can have 3 a / the bedroom each, which they love. We’re only ten minutes from 4 a / the sea so we go swimming a lot. We’re going to 5 a / the party next weekend – that will be fun – a lot of people are going and 6 a / the party will be on the beach. There’s a very good restaurant very close to 8 a / the apartment, and we eat there once or twice a week.
Come and see us soon! We’re here for a year, so ...
6 Uses of the and a/an

1 Words with the
We usually use the with

- times of the day: in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening (but at night)
- musical instruments: I play the piano. Does she play the guitar?
- the media: the radio, I saw it on the Internet.
- shops/places in a town: the bank, the cinema, the post office, the supermarket, the chemist's, the station
- names of museums, cinemas, theatres, hotels: the Guggenheim Museum, the Odeon Cinema, the Drury Lane Theatre, the Savoy Hotel
- locations: on the left/right, in the middle, on the coast/border, in the east/north/south/west
- countries with plural names and with Republic, Kingdom: the Netherlands, the United States, the People's Republic of China, the United Kingdom
- names of oceans, seas, rivers, mountain ranges: the Pacific Ocean, the Mediterranean Sea, the Thames, the Amazon, the Himalayas, the Andes

⚠️ We don't usually use the with watch TV:
✓ I'm watching TV. ✗ I'm watching the TV.

2 Words without the, a or an
We don't use the, a or an with

- times, days and months: at midday, on Monday, in January
- meals: What time is breakfast?
- sports: basketball, tennis, football
- transport and communication: by train, by bus, by email, by phone
- languages, school subjects: English, Spanish, Turkish, art, history
- most magazines: Newsweek, Hello Magazine
- roads, streets, squares and parks: Park Lane, Oxford Street, Times Square, Central Park
- airports and stations: Manchester Airport, Victoria Bus Station, Penn Station
- most countries and continents: Spain, Japan, Turkey, Australia, Asia, Europe, Africa
- cities, towns and states: Paris, Sydney, Johannesburg, California
- mountains, hills and lakes: Mount Everest, Lake Ontario
- names and titles: John, Susan, Mr Smith, Professor Sinclair, Uncle Jack

⚠️ We don't use the, a or an for: at home, at work, in bed

Compare:
He plays the guitar. but He plays football.
She works at the bank. but She works at Manchester Airport.
Practice

1 Find the correct names from the lists on page 12. Include the where necessary.

0 a lake in Canada ........................................ Lake Ontario
1 a newspaper from the US ......................... 5 a river in South America
2 a city in Europe ........................................... 6 a park in New York
3 a hotel in London ....................................... 7 a mountain range in Asia

2 Match the two parts of the sentences. Listen and check.

0 My sister’s very musical. She plays the
1 My brother isn’t very good at
2 We don’t like our children staying out late at
3 I hate getting up early in the
4 The school bell always rings at
5 We usually take our summer holiday in
6 Are there any good films at the
7 On Friday evenings I usually watch

A night.
B July.
C midday every day.
D TV.
E piano and the violin.
F cinema this week?
G football.
H morning.

3 Complete the sentences with the words and phrases from the box. Add the if necessary.

0 My favourite newspaper is ..........The Times ............
1 The highest mountain in the world is ..................
2 Juliette Binoche’s first language is ...................
3 George Bush was president of ...................... from 2000 to 2008.
4 Cannes is a lovely French town on ...................
5 Too many people go to work by ....................
6 We always have ...................... together at eight o’clock.
7 You can buy this medicine at ......................
8 There’s a really good exhibition on at ................

breakfast
car
chemist’s
Guggenheim Museum
Mount Everest
Mediterranean Sea
French
The Times
United States

4 GRAMMAR IN USE There are six more mistakes with the, a or an in the conversation. Find and correct them. Listen and check.

BRAD Are you enjoying your time here?
ANNA Oh, yes. The London is a beautiful city.
BRAD What have you seen?
ANNA Well, I’ve been to a British Museum – that’s fantastic – and I really like Regent’s Park.
It’s very peaceful.
BRAD Mmm, it is, isn’t it? Are you studying here?
ANNA Yes, I’m studying the English and the history.
BRAD Oh, I see. Where are you living?
ANNA In an apartment with some friends.
BRAD When did you come here?
ANNA In the October, and I’m staying for a year.
BRAD Do you have much time to travel in United Kingdom?
ANNA Oh yes, I try to. But everything is so expensive here – every time I go to supermarket I spend about £40.00.

Go online for more practice
7 some and any

1 some and any with a noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ PLURAL NOUN</th>
<th>+ UNCOUNTABLE NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some</td>
<td>some grapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any</td>
<td>(not) any bananas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(not) any sugar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pronunciation ➤ 1.05

We use some and (not) any for a number (more than one) or an amount of something. The exact number or amount is not important.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in positive sentences</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>We’ve got some bananas today. ‘Shh. I’m doing some work.’ ‘But I want to listen to some music.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in negative sentences</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>We haven’t got any melons today. There isn’t any milk in the fridge. I can’t give you any advice, I’m afraid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in most questions</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Do you have any pears? Is there any sugar in the cupboard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when you ask for something</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>I’d like some Spanish oranges, please. Can I have some red grapes?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when you offer something to someone</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Would you like some strawberries? Do you want some tea with your lunch?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 some and any without a noun

We can use some and any without a noun, when it is clear what we are talking about: ‘I’m making some tea. Do you want some?’ (some tea)

NATURAL ENGLISH It is possible to repeat the noun after some and any. But it is more natural NOT to repeat it:
How much bread is there?
There isn’t any. (= There isn’t any bread.)
Practice

1 GRAMMAR IN USE Read the conversation between two teachers. Choose the correct words in italics.  2.14 Listen and check.

A Let's check that we've got everything for the exam this afternoon.
B OK. I've got (0) some / any paper and (1) any / some pens.
A Good. Have you got (2) any / some pencils?
B No. The students don't need (3) some / any.
A Oh, OK. What about rulers?
B Oh dear, I haven't got (4) any / some. Have you?
A Wait a minute. Yes, there are (5) any / some in the cupboard.
B OK. Everything's ready. Now I'm going to get (6) some / any food before the students arrive. Would you like (7) some / any?
A It's nearly two o'clock now. We haven't got (8) some / any time.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the TV interview with some or any.  2.15 Listen and check.

PRESENTER So, what kind of cake are you going to make?
CHEF It's an orange and lemon cake. It's very easy. You need (0) some, oranges and (1) ........ lemons, and about three eggs.
PRESENTER What about butter?
CHEF You don't need (2) ........ butter for this cake - it doesn't contain (3) ........ fat!
PRESENTER That's very unusual.
CHEF Yes. Well, I suppose it's not quite true. It contains (4) ........ fat because it has nuts in it and nuts contain oil.
PRESENTER I see. And it's very simple, you said.
CHEF Yes, it's very easy and it doesn't take (5) ........ time at all because you just mix everything together.

3 Find the mistakes in the sentences and correct them.

0 There's any milk in the fridge. We need to buy some.  There isn't any milk
1 I'd like any water, please. .........................................................
2 There aren't some emails for you. .........................................................
3 We've got any nice apples today. .........................................................
4 There are always some horse in the field near our house. .........................................................
5 'Where are your coats?' 'We didn't bring some.' .........................................................

4 Describe what you have in your fridge.

In my fridge there are always bottles of milk and yoghurt.
In my fridge there .........................................................
There aren't .........................................................
And I hate ......................................................... so there .........................................................

  Go online for more practice
They sell a lot of vegetables here but they don’t sell much fruit.

1 much, many, a lot of with a noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>much</th>
<th>+ uncountable nouns</th>
<th>I don’t eat much sugar. Hurry up. There isn’t much time.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>+ plural nouns</td>
<td>I don’t eat many sweets. Are there many students from Japan?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lot of</td>
<td>+ plural nouns and uncountable nouns</td>
<td>They sell a lot of vegetables. He doesn’t earn a lot of money. Do you have a lot of homework today?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use much, many and a lot of to talk about a large amount or number. The exact amount or number is not important.

- We can use a lot of in positive and negative sentences and questions:
  Lewis has got a lot of friends.
  We haven’t got a lot of time.
  Are there a lot of students from Japan?

- We usually use much and many in negative sentences and questions:
  Hurry up! We haven’t got much time.
  Are there many students from Japan?

**NATURAL ENGLISH** In everyday English, we don’t use much or many in positive sentences. We prefer a lot of:
There are a lot of tourists here in the summer.

2 much, many, a lot without a noun

We can use much and many without a noun, when it is clear what we are talking about:
Why don’t you buy it? It doesn’t cost much.
‘Can I have some of your sweets?’ ‘No, I haven’t got many.’

When we use a lot without a noun, we don’t need of:
We learned a lot in today’s lesson.

3 how much? or how many?

- We use how much and how many to ask about an exact amount or number.
  We use how much with uncountable nouns:
  How much sugar do I need?
- We use how many with countable nouns:
  How many bedrooms are there in the hotel?
- We use how much to ask about prices:
  How much is it? It’s fifteen euros.
  How much does it cost? It costs ten dollars.
1 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the conversation.

SAM Where shall we go shopping this afternoon? Shall we just go to the town centre?
ALI I don’t know. There aren’t (0) much / (many) shops in the town centre.
I think the big shopping centre is better – there are (1) a lot of / much shops there.
SAM Mmm. But we haven’t got (2) much / many time really, and it takes half an hour
to drive there.
ALI I know, but I need to buy (3) many / a lot of presents for my family, and I don’t
have (4) much / many money. There are (5) many / a lot of cheap shops in the
shopping centre.
SAM Are there (6) many / much people in your family, then?
ALI Well, there aren’t (7) many / much adults, but I’ve got (8) much / a lot of younger
brothers and sisters.
SAM OK, let’s go to the shopping centre. But can we go in your car? There isn’t
(9) much / many petrol in mine.

2 Use the picture to answer the questions
with much, many or a lot.

0 Have we got any milk? .................................................. We haven’t got much.
1 Have we got any rice? ..................................................
2 Have we got any potatoes? ...........................................
3 Have we got any olive oil? ...........................................
4 Have we got any pasta? ..............................................
5 Have we got any bread? .............................................
6 Have we got any biscuits? .........................................
7 Have we got any eggs? .............................................
8 Have we got any tea bags? .........................................

3 Complete the questions with How much? or How many? Then write true answers for you.

SAM 0 How many uncles have you got? I’ve got three. I haven’t got any. I haven’t got many.
1 ................................ aunts have you got? ..........................................
2 ................................ work have you got at the moment?
3 ................................ good friends have you got? ..................................
4 ................................ chocolate do you eat? ..................................
5 ................................ exercise do you do? ..................................
6 ................................ coffee do you drink? .................................

Go online for more practice
1 a little, a few

| a little | + uncountable nouns | I think this soup needs a little salt. |
| a few    | + plural nouns      | There are a few cafés near my house. |

We use *a little* to talk about a small amount. The exact amount is not important:

*Food often tastes better when you add* a little salt *to it.*

We use *a few* to talk about a small number. The exact number is not important:

*We've got a few friends in the village.*

**NATURAL ENGLISH** In everyday English, we don't often use *a little* + noun.

We prefer a bit of + noun.

'Sit down and have a cup of coffee.' 'OK, I've got a bit of time.'

We can use *a little* and *a few* without a noun, when it is clear what we are talking about:

'Would you like some milk in your coffee?' 'Yes, please, a little.'

'Have you got any friends on Facebook?' 'Yes, a few.'

2 too much, too many, not enough

| too much  | + uncountable nouns | Don't put too much pepper in the soup. |
| too many  | + plural nouns      | I feel sick. I ate too many cakes.    |
| not enough| + uncountable nouns | I haven't got enough money to buy a car. There aren't enough eggs to make a cake. |

Too much and *too many* have a negative meaning. They mean 'more than we want':

Let's go to another café. There are too many people here.

We made too much food for the party. No one was hungry.

It's bad to eat too many burgers.

Not enough is the opposite of *too much/too many*. It means 'less/fewer than we want':

We can't buy that car. We haven't got enough money!

The party was boring. There weren't enough people there.

We haven't got enough bread. We haven't got enough eggs.
Practice

1 Do the sentences in each pair have the same (S) or different (D) meanings? Write S or D.
   0 A We’ve got a little luggage.  
     B We’ve got a few bags.  
     S
   1 A Those children ask too many questions.  
     B Those children don’t ask enough questions.  
     D
   2 A The apartment has a little furniture.  
     B The apartment has a lot of furniture.  
     S
   3 A I have a few friends here.  
     B I don’t have enough friends here.  
     S
   4 A Let’s have a coffee. I’ve got a bit of time.  
     B Let’s have a coffee. I’ve got a few minutes.  
     D
   5 A We haven’t got enough furniture.  
     B We’ve got too much furniture.  
     D

2 Choose the correct words in italics. \( \textcolor{red}{2.18} \) Listen and check.
   0 There are only \textit{a few}/ \textit{a little} biscuits left in the tin.
   1 Would you like \textit{a few} / \textit{a bit} of chocolate?
   2 Only add \textit{a bit} / \textit{a bit of} sugar to this drink; it doesn’t need much.
   3 There were only \textit{a few} / \textit{a little} people at the meeting.
   4 I didn’t write the report on my own. My teacher gave me \textit{a bit of} / \textit{a few} help.
   5 Eggs taste better with \textit{a little} / \textit{a few} salt.

3 Write sentences about the things in the picture.
Use \textit{too much}, \textit{too many} or (not) \textit{enough}.

Kerry and Michael are having four friends to dinner. They need six chairs, plates, etc.
   0 (plates) \( \textcolor{red}{\text{There are enough plates.}} \) 
   1 (chairs) .......................................................... 
   2 (bread) .......................................................... 
   3 (water) .......................................................... 
   4 (glasses) .......................................................... 
   5 (burgers) ..........................................................

4 \textbf{GRAMMAR IN USE} There are six more mistakes in the email. Find and correct them.
\( \textcolor{red}{\text{2.19}} \) Listen and check.

Subject: Hi there!

So, we had a little party last weekend. You know, just a few friends at our house. 
There was a lot of talking and laughing, a bit dancing and a little party games. But we
made enough food – I felt ill the next day!
Well, it's only two days before we move to the USA now! It's too much time and there
are too much things that we need to do – packing and cleaning the house.
Come and visit us – we know we won't have much friends in the States.
Love,
Annabel

Go online for more practice
1 Form
We use all, most, some and no/none with plural countable nouns or uncountable nouns. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WITHOUT of</th>
<th>WITH of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All fruit is good for you.</td>
<td>All of the fruit in this shop is local.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most vegetables are cheap.</td>
<td>Most of these vegetables come from my garden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some meat is very expensive.</td>
<td>Some of the meat in this supermarket is frozen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's no milk in the fridge.</td>
<td>None of the milk in the shop is fresh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use both with plural countable nouns:

Both salads look delicious. = Both of these salads look delicious.

2 Use
We use all, most, some and no (without of) to talk about people or things in general:

Most people enjoy going on holiday, but some people prefer to stay at home.

We use all of, most of, none of and both (of) when we know exactly which people or things we mean:

All of the teachers at our school are good.
Both (of these) salads look delicious.
Can I have some of that chocolate cake?

We can also use all the/both the in the same way as all of the/both of the:

✓ All (of) the students in the class are working hard.

But we don’t use the other words in this way:

✗ Some the students in the class are working hard.
✓ Some of the students in the class are working hard.

3 all, most, some, etc. + verb

After a plural noun we use a plural verb:

Most vegetables are cheap. Most mobile phones take photographs.

After an uncountable noun we use a singular verb:

All fruit is good for you. Some of his advice is useful.

No and none mean ‘not any’. We use a positive verb after them:

✗ None of the advice he gave wasn’t useful.
✓ None of the advice he gave was useful.
Practice

1 Match the pictures A–E with the sentences below.

0 Most of the T-shirts are red.  E 3 All of the T-shirts are red. ........
1 Some of the T-shirts are red. .......... 4 Both of the T-shirts are red. .......... 
2 None of the T-shirts are red. ..........

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Look at the information and choose the correct words in italics.

Samson’s Supermarket

Winter Fruit

Samson’s Supermarket

has a very good variety of fruit this winter!

(0) **All** / Most / Some of the prices are per kilo. (1) **None** / Some / All
the fruit is £1.00 per kilo or more.
(2) Some / **None** / Most of the fruit
is over £5.00 per kilo and
(3) **most** / none / **all** of the items
are under £3.00 per kilo.
(4) All / **Most** / Some of the fruit
comes from Europe or America,
but (5) **some** / **all** / **none** of the
tropical fruit comes from Africa.
(6) All / **None** / Both of the European
countries provide a lot of fruit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FRUIT</th>
<th>FROM</th>
<th>£ PER KILO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apples</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bananas</td>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pears</td>
<td>UK</td>
<td>1.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oranges</td>
<td>USA</td>
<td>1.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melons</td>
<td>UK</td>
<td>2.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pineapples</td>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>3.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grapes</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>4.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strawberries</td>
<td>UK</td>
<td>4.80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Use the words below to write sentences. Add of the if necessary. **Listen and check.**

0 some / spiders / poisonous **Some spiders are poisonous.**
00 all / spiders / in my garden / harmless **All of the spiders in my garden are harmless.**
1 all / fruit / contain / vitamins
2 none / fruit / in the bowl / ready to eat
3 some / clothes / in this shop / very expensive
4 most / tea / comes from / India and China
5 no / cakes and biscuits / healthy
6 most / food / in my fridge / fresh

4 Complete these sentences with **all, most, some or no**/none so they are true for you.

0 **All** American films are fantastic.
1 **All** exercise is fun.
2 **All** English grammar is very difficult.
3 **All** of my classmates are really friendly.
4 **All** travel is bad for the environment.
5 **All** of the TV programmes in my country are really interesting.

Go online for more practice and a progress test
1 UNITS 1, 2 AND 3 Find the mistake(s) in the sentences and correct them.

0 Look at those chicken in the yard.
1 All the farmers take their sheep to the market in August.
2 Could you make an appointment for me to see mr hawkins while I'm in paris?
3 How many slices of luggage are you taking?
4 Would you like a bread with your soup?
5 All the teachers in this school is from England.
6 We need some more furnitures in our new house.

2 UNITS 4, 5 AND 6 Write a, an or the. Write – if you don’t need a, an or the.

Is chocolate really good for you?

PEOPLE STARTED MAKING (0) ............ chocolate centuries ago in (1) ............ South America, and people have always told stories about how healthy chocolate is. (2) ............ stories tell us that it can make us happy, too, and that may be true. A little chocolate may be good for our hearts, but (3) ............ fruit and vegetables are much better for us than chocolate.

Chocolate contains a lot of (4) ............ fat and sugar – but some people argue that (5) ............ fat in chocolate is good fat because it comes from a particular type of butter. That’s true, but most chocolate doesn’t contain much of it.

So, the answer to (6) ............ question above is really ‘no’. It’s good to have (7) ............ bar of chocolate occasionally, but we all really know that if (8) ............ type of food tastes good, it’s probably bad for us!

3 UNITS 7, 8 AND 9 Complete the conversation with some of the phrases from A–J.

Listen and check.

A Good morning. I’m looking for some red apples.
B We (0) ............ today, I’m afraid.
A Oh, what about green apples, then?
B Yes, we (1) ............ of those.
A And (2) ............ Spanish oranges?
B Yes, I’ve got (3) ............
A OK. (4) ............
B They’re £1.50 a kilo.
A And the apples?
B They’re £2.20 a kilo.
A £2.20? (5) ............ I’ll just have a kilo of the oranges, please.
B OK ... one, two, three oranges – that’s just a kilo.
A (6) ............ Can you give me another one, please?
B Here you are. That’s £1.95, please.

A How much are they?
B – haven’t got any
C ‘ve got any
D ‘ve got some
E a few, but not many
F That’s not enough!
G ‘ve got no
H That’s too much!
I a little but not much
J have you got any
4 UNITS 8, 9 AND 10  Look at the information below about two English colleges. Decide whether the statements below are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>College</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Teachers (full-time)</th>
<th>Levels</th>
<th>Average class no.</th>
<th>Computers in media centre</th>
<th>Cost for four weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abbey</td>
<td>Oxford, UK</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Beginner–Intermediate</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>£800.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnegie</td>
<td>Cambridge, UK</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>Beginner–Advanced</td>
<td>30+</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>£200.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Abbey College has a lot of full-time teachers. ....F....

Abbey College hasn’t got many full-time teachers.

1 Carnegie College doesn’t have many full-time teachers. .......

2 There are too many students in the Carnegie College classes. .......

3 There aren’t enough computers in the Carnegie College media centre. .......

4 Carnegie courses cost a lot of money. ........

5 Both colleges offer courses for beginners. .......

6 One of the colleges is in the UK. .......

5 ALL UNITS  Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words.

0 How much paper do you need?
   How many ........pieces of paper .......... do you need?

1 Let’s talk about your problems. I’ve got a few minutes.
   Let’s talk about your problems. I’ve got ...................... time.

2 Stop! That’s more salad than I want.
   Stop! That’s ......................

3 This camera is really expensive, and that camera is really expensive, too.
   ...................... are really expensive.

4 All of my friends are away this weekend.
   ...................... my friends are here this weekend.

5 We’ve got less time than we need for this project.
   We haven’t got ...................... for this project.

6 I’d like about a kilo of potatoes, please.
   I’d like ...................... potatoes, please. About a kilo.
Using nouns

Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. How many .......... do you have?
   A child  B children  C childs
   ➤ Unit 1

2. I like your jeans. .......... new?
   A Are they  B Is it  C Is they
   ➤ Unit 1

3. I’d like .......... apples, please.
   A an  B some  C that
   ➤ Unit 2

4. Could you give me .......... about courses?
   A an advice  B some advices  C some advice
   ➤ Unit 2

5. Can I have .........., please?
   A two toasts  B two slice of toast  C two slices of toast
   ➤ Unit 3

6. Do you read .......... newspaper every day?
   A one  B a  C an
   ➤ Unit 4

7. Our children like riding so we keep ...........
   A an horse  B horses  C a horses
   ➤ Unit 4

8. Don’t look at .......... It can hurt your eyes.
   A a sun  B sun  C the sun
   ➤ Unit 5

9. ‘Would you like .......... chocolate biscuit?’
   A a last  B last  C the last
   ➤ Unit 5

10. ‘You’ve got a lot of books.’ ‘Oh, .......... all belong to my husband.’
    A the books  B books  C a book
    ➤ Unit 5

11. The plane arrives at .......... Airport.
    A Gatwick  B a Gatwick  C the Gatwick
    ➤ Unit 6

12. Marcia started to play .......... when she was fifteen.
    A a tennis  B the tennis  C tennis
    ➤ Unit 6

13. We haven’t got .......... milk left.
    A some  B any  C a
    ➤ Unit 7

14. ‘How .......... the bus ticket to the town centre?’
    A much is  B many is  C much are
    ➤ Unit 8

15. I can’t come out this evening. I’ve got .......... homework.
    A much  B a lot of  C many
    ➤ Unit 8

    A many  B too much  C enough
    ➤ Unit 9

17. I don’t have a lot of time to help you, but I have .......... time on Friday.
    A a bit of  B a few  C much
    ➤ Unit 9

18. Most .......... here have at least four weeks’ holiday from work a year.
    A of people  B the people  C of the people
    ➤ Unit 10

19. None of the furniture in the flat .......... new.
    A is  B isn’t  C are
    ➤ Unit 10

20. I like .......... her brothers. They are nineteen and twenty-one.
    A most of  B both of  C all of
    ➤ Unit 10
Pronouns and possessives

Before you start

1 Read the information on the website. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 Clare’s standing next to I / me in the photo. ➤ Unit 11
2 Can you see Lucy’s / Lucy’s brother in the photo? ➤ Unit 12
3 I design some of me / my clothes. ➤ Unit 13
4 Those / This are my friends from college. ➤ Unit 14
5 Did you enjoy you / yourself at the show? ➤ Unit 15
6 Clare sits next to Anna in class. I think they like themselves / each other. ➤ Unit 15
7 Everyone is / are happy in this photo. ➤ Unit 16
8 Do you like this photo? I’ve got another / more one on my phone. ➤ Unit 17

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

Go online for a full diagnostic test
Subject and object pronouns

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>subject pronouns</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object pronouns</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Use

We use the pronouns I/me, you/you, he/him, she/her, we/us and they/them for people. We use subject pronouns before the verb. We use object pronouns after the verb.

- Christina likes David. He loves the children.
- He comes every day at this time.
- What do you think of our new teacher?
- I like her.

3 Things and animals

We use the pronouns it, they and them for things and animals:

- 'Can I put these 5p coins in the ticket machine?' ‘No, it doesn't accept them.'
- There's a fox in our garden. It eats the food from the bins.
- But if we know the sex of an animal we can also use he/she/him/her:
- Jack has a cat called Fluffy. She is three years old.

4 Object pronouns after prepositions and be

We also use object pronouns:

- after prepositions (e.g. near, to, of):
  - Mr and Mrs Jenson live near us.
  - Can you give this letter to him?
  - 'Which colour do you prefer?' ‘I like both of them.'

- after the verb be:
  - 'Who's that?' It's me.'
  - That's us in the photo.
Practice

1 Who/what is Clara talking about? Match the sentences.

0 ‘I like him.’ A George likes Tiggles and Fluffy.
1 ‘He likes me.’ B Clara likes Martin.
2 ‘We like them.’ C Helen likes her mobile phone.
3 ‘They like us.’ D Helen and George like Clara and Martin.
4 ‘He likes them.’ E Martin likes Clara.
5 ‘They like them.’ F Tiggles and Fluffy like George and Helen.
6 ‘She likes it.’ G Clara and Martin like Helen and George.

2 Choose the correct words in italics. \[2.23\] Listen and check.

0 ‘Hello. Is that you, Jane?’ ‘Yes, it’s me / I.’
1 Have you seen my keys? I can’t find they / them.
2 Do you live near him / he?
3 Every Tuesday me / I go to an exercise class.
4 There’s too much pasta on my plate.
   I can’t eat all of it / them.
5 Is that they / you in the photograph?
6 We / Us walk to college. It’s not very far.
7 She’s got two computers. She uses both of them / they.
8 Who’s that in the photo? It’s we / us.
9 Juana gave I / me a fantastic present.
10 I told you / we to be quiet!

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Replace the underlined words with pronouns. \[2.24\] Listen and check.

JEMMA Have you got any brothers and sisters? Can you tell me about
(0) your brothers and sisters? …….them……..

HILAL Well, I’ve got one sister – her name is Meena.

JEMMA Is (1) Meena older than you? ……………………..

HILAL No, (2) Meena is the same age as me. (3) Meena and I are twins. ……………………..

JEMMA And have you got any brothers?

HILAL Yes, I’ve got one brother. (4) My brother is called Ali. ……………………..

JEMMA (5) Ali is older than my sister and me. ……………………..

JEMMA Do you live with your parents?

HILAL No, I don’t. (6) My parents live in Salford. I live in a student flat in London. ……………………..

JEMMA Where is (7) the flat? ……………………..

HILAL (8) The flat is near the university. ……………………..

JEMMA Do you see your brother and sister very often?

HILAL Yes, I see my brother once a week. I go to football with (9) my brother ……………………..
every Saturday. But I don’t see my sister very often. I only see (10) my sister …………………….. when I visit my parents.

4 Answer the questions about you. Use pronouns and full sentences.

0 What’s your job? I’m a student.
1 How old are you? ………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………..
2 Where was your mother born? ………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………..
3 Where do your parents live? …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………..
1 Noun + 's or '
We use noun + 's or ' to show that something belongs to someone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular nouns</th>
<th>add 's</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>John → John's (car)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James → James's (phone)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my mother → my mother's (garden)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plural nouns that end in s</th>
<th>add '</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boys → boys' (school)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birds → birds' (eggs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parents → parents' (house)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plural nouns that don't end in s</th>
<th>add 's</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>children → children's (books)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>men → men's (clothes)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people → people's (names)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use noun + 's or ' for people and animals:
I'm using my friend's mobile phone. (the phone belongs to my friend)
Clara's brother is Marco's teacher. What is your cat's name? This is my parents' car.

We can use noun + 's or ' alone
- when the meaning is clear:
  'Is this Lucy's mobile phone?' 'No, it's Amanda's.' (Amanda's phone)
  That isn't our cat. It's our neighbours'. (our neighbours' cat)
- for people's homes:
  Shall we go to Sally's? (Sally's house)
- to talk about some shops and services:
  I need to go to the doctor's.
  Are you going to the butcher's?

2 of + noun
We usually use of + noun for things and places:
We visited the centre of Madrid. What happens at the end of the film?
What's the size of the screen on your TV? What's the height of Mount Everest?

⚠️ We don't usually use of + noun for people:
|x  He is the brother of Clare.  ✓  He is Clare's brother.

⚠️ We don't usually use noun + 's or ' for things:
|x  I didn't see the film's end.  ✓  I didn't see the end of the film.
Practice

1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the sentences with noun + 's or 's. **2.25** Listen and check.

Ann and Frank are married.
Ann is (0) Frank's wife. Frank is (1) husband.
Ann has two children, Mike and Lucy.
Lucy is (2) daughter. Mike is (3) brother.
Ann has brown hair but the children have blond hair.
(4) hair is brown but the (5) hair is blond.
The family has two cats called Spike and Susie.
The (6) names are Spike and Susie.

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Choose the correct words in italics in the text. **2.26** Listen and check.

The oldest student in the world?

IF YOU VISIT (0) London’s University (the University of London) you’ll have a surprise. This university has a student who is 250 years old! The student’s name is Jeremy Bentham. He sits in a box at the (1) main building’s end / end of the main building. He can watch the other students and listen to the lecturers through the (2) box’s glass front / glass front of the box. Of course, he isn’t a real student because he died in 1832.

Jeremy Bentham was a famous writer who believed in free education for everybody. (3) Bentham’s ideas / The ideas of Bentham encouraged people to start new universities. After he died, they put (4) Jeremy’s body / the body of Jeremy in a glass box in the (5) college’s centre / centre of the college, so he can be a student forever.

3 Find five more mistakes in the sentences and correct them. Tick (✓) the correct sentences.

0 I am interested in the Scotland geography. the geography of Scotland
1 I live eight kilometres from the Paris’s centre.
2 My mother’s name is Alice.
3 I like watching womens’ sports events on TV.
4 We sometimes have lunch at Carol’s.
5 What is the computer’s size?
6 Do you know the age of Diana?
7 Where is the bowl of your cat?

4 Write sentences 1–4 from Exercise 3 so they are true for you. Use possessive forms.

0 I am interested in the history of my country.

1
2
3
4

Go online for more practice
13 Possessive adjectives and pronouns

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>subject pronouns</td>
<td>I  you  he  she  it  we  you  they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessive adjectives</td>
<td>my  your  his  her  its  our  your  their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessive pronouns</td>
<td>mine  yours  his  hers  –  ours  yours  theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Possessive adjectives

Possessive adjectives tell us who things belong to. We put them before a noun:

- Jenny is Christina and Michael Brown’s daughter. → Jenny is their daughter.
- Jenny’s brother is called David. → Her brother is called David.

⚠️ The possessive adjective depends on the noun it replaces, NOT the noun that follows it:

- John’s father = his father
- John’s mother = his mother (≠ her mother)
- Mary’s father = her father (≠ his father)
- Mary’s mother = her mother

We also use possessive adjectives with parts of the body:

- The children closed their eyes and listened to the story.
- I’m tired and my legs hurt.

Look at the difference between its and it’s:
- I like Thailand. It’s a beautiful country. (it is)
- Thailand is famous for its beautiful beaches. (the beaches of Thailand)

3 Possessive pronouns

We can use possessive pronouns instead of a possessive adjective + noun:

- Is that your mobile phone? → Is that yours?
- No, it isn’t my mobile phone. → No, it isn’t mine.
- It’s Clara’s mobile phone. → It’s hers.
- Can we borrow your umbrella? We forgot to bring ours. (our umbrella)

⚠️ We don’t use a, an, the or apostrophes (‘) with possessive adjectives and pronouns:

- × That pen is her’s. ✓ That pen is hers.
- × This bedroom is the mine. ✓ This bedroom is mine.

4 Whose?

We often use Whose? instead of ‘Who does it belong to?’:

- ‘Whose phone is this?’ ‘It’s Clara’s.’
- ‘Whose are these?’ ‘I don’t know – they aren’t mine.’
Practice

1 Complete the questions in each line so they have the same meaning.

0 Does this book belong to you? Is this your book? Is this yours?
1 Is this Mary's book? Is this ______ book? Is this ______?
2 Is this the children's book? Is this ______ book? Is this ______?
3 Does this book belong to me? Is this ______ book? Is this ______?
4 Does this book belong to us? Is this ______ book? Is this ______?
5 Is this Peter's book? Is this ______ book? Is this ______?
6 Who does this book belong to? ______ book is this? ______ is this?

GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the text.

I live next door to (0) ______/ ______ friend David and (1) ______/ ______ sister, Fiona. David is in (2) ______/ ______ class at college; he's taller than Fiona and (3) ______/ ______ hair is darker. Fiona's two years older than (4) ______/ ______ brother. She's an art student and she's always got paint on (5) ______/ ______ fingers! (6) ______/ ______ house is small but (7) ______/ ______ garden is beautiful, and (8) ______/ theirs/ ______ barbecues are always great fun!

GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation with the correct words from the box. [2.27] Listen and check.

A Is this your suitcase, Sir?
B Yes. It's (0) ______ ______
A Can you open it for me, please? OK. Are these (1) ______ clothes?
B Some of them are (2) ______ clothes, but some of them belong to my wife.
A Is this dress (3) ________?
B Yes, she bought it in Thailand.
A There are a lot of toys here. (4) ________ are they?
B They belong to (5) ________ daughter.
A What about all this money. Is it (6) ________?
B Oh, no, it isn't (7) ________!

4 Write questions and answers. Use possessive adjectives and pronouns. [2.28] Listen and check.

0 that / you / phone? No / it / not me / she
00 who / pens / these? / They / she
1 this / he / book? / No / it / not he / she
2 who / drinks / these? / They / they
3 that / she / iPod? / It / not she / me
4 who / ticket / this? / It / you

Is that your phone? No, it isn't mine, it's hers.
Whose pens are these? They're hers.
1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE (BEFORE A NOUN)</th>
<th>PRONOUN (WITHOUT A NOUN)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This coat is expensive.</td>
<td>This is expensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That building is beautiful.</td>
<td>That is beautiful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These coats are expensive.</td>
<td>These are expensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Those buildings are beautiful.</td>
<td>Those are beautiful.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use a singular verb after this/that and a plural verb after these/those.

2 Near or far?

We use this and these to talk about things that are near us:
- Excuse me. Is this seat free? (the seat near us)
- I need some new glasses – these are broken. (the glasses I am holding)

We use that and those for things that are not near us:
- Look at the sky – that's the North Star.
- I'd like some pens – how much are those on the top shelf?

3 Now or then?

We also use this/these to talk about now or a time that is near us:
- This lesson is interesting. (the lesson we are in now)
- I hate these cold winter days. (the winter days we have now)
- I'm doing a lot of exercise these days. (at the present time)
- What are you doing this evening? (It's the morning or afternoon now.)

We use that/those to talk about a situation in the past:
- What did you think of that lesson yesterday?
- There were no cars in those days. (at a time in the past)

4 this is/is that ... ?

We use this is ... to introduce someone:
- Peter, this is Jane.

We use this is ... and is that ... ? on the phone:
- 'Hello, can I speak to Joan?' 'This is Joan speaking.'
- 'Is that Angela?' 'No, she isn't here at the moment.'
1 Look at the picture and tick (√) the things which belong to Darren.

Yes, these are our coats and this is my scarf. But, those are my gloves and that's my umbrella.

2 Match the sentences 1 and 2 with A and B in each group.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>What's your opinion of that film?</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>The film we are watching now.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>What do you think of this film?</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>The film we watched yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>I don't like this car.</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>The car we are in now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>I don't like that car.</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>The car in the garage window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Do you like those flowers?</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>The flowers in my hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Do you like these flowers?</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>The flowers in my neighbour's garden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Are these phones expensive?</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>The phones we are looking at.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Are those phones expensive?</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>The phones we looked at last week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Complete the sentences. Use this, that, these or those. [2.29] Listen and check.

0 ............. phones in the window look really smart.
1 Do you like ................. ring? My sister gave it to me.
2 What did you think of ................. DVD we saw yesterday?
3 I’d like two of ................. cakes – the ones on the top shelf.
4 Theatre tickets are very expensive ................. days.
5 Could you help me? ................. books are very heavy.
6 In ................. days, children often worked in factories.

4 Grammar in use Complete the conversations with this, that, these or those and the correct form of the verbs in brackets ().. [2.30] Listen and check.

1 A Let me introduce my colleagues. (0) ................. (be) my assistants, Sue and Joe.
   B Pleased to meet you.
   A And (1) ................. (be) our office manager, Mike.
   B Hello, Mike. So, where is your boss?
   A (2) ................. (be) my boss, Eleanor, over there in the corner of the room.
2 A Hello. Can I speak to Mrs Hargreaves?
   B (3) ................. (be) Mrs Hargreaves speaking. Can I help you?
3 A Here are the two keys. (4) ................. (open) the front and back doors.
   B What about the keys for the balcony door and the car?
   A Oh, (5) ................. (be) in the cupboard in the kitchen.
   B And where’s the key for the garage?
   A Oh, (6) ................. (not have) a lock, so there’s no key.
15 Reflexive pronouns; each other

The students are painting **themselves**. They are painting **each other**.

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject pronoun</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object pronoun</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflexive</td>
<td>myself, yourself (singular)</td>
<td>yourself (plural)</td>
<td>himself</td>
<td>herself</td>
<td>itself</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Use

We use reflexive pronouns when the subject and object are the same person or thing:

Daniel is painting **Daniel**. = He is painting **himself**.

Have you hurt **yourself**?

I hate watching **myself** in videos.

My **computer** turns itself off at night.

We often use reflexive pronouns with these verbs:

enjoy: We enjoyed **ourselves** at the party. (we had fun)

help: Help **yourself** to some pizza. (take some)

behave: The children behaved themselves at the restaurant. (behaved well)

We often use by myself, by himself, etc. It means 'alone' or 'without help'.

I live **by myself**. (= I live alone.)

Don't help him. He wants to do it **by himself**. (without your help)

3 each other

We use each other (not themselves or ourselves) when the subject and object are different:

✓ Maria and Suzanna like **each other**. (= Maria likes Suzanna and Suzanna likes Maria.)

✗ Maria and Suzanna like themselves.

✓ We meet **each other** for lunch every Tuesday.

✗ We meet ourselves for lunch every Tuesday.
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with reflexive pronouns or each other.

‘My phone turns ................ on when I open it.’
Jan and Maritza are always arguing with ..................
‘I’ve hurt ....................!’

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the information with the correct words from the box.

each other  himself  itself  ourselves  themselves  yourself

Listen and check.

The Danger of Power Tools

WHAT CAN HAPPEN?
Did you know that each year power tools cause more than 100,000 accidents in the United States? The most dangerous tools are power saws. Last year 40,000 people cut (0) .................. using them. Another dangerous tool is the nail gun. On average, an American man injures (1) .................. with a nail gun every twenty minutes – that’s 28,600 accidents per year!

WHAT TO DO?
So, how can we protect (2) .................. from these dangerous machines?

- You should always wear suitable clothes – you can protect (3) .................. by wearing safety goggles and strong gloves.
- Make sure your power tool has a safety device. Then, if something goes wrong, the machine will turn (4) .................. off immediately.
- Never use power tools near water or when it is raining.

And remember, if you are working with another person, make sure you don’t stand too close to (5) ..................

3 Write a sentence with the same meaning. Use reflexive pronouns or each other.

Listen and check.

0 I wrote this song without any help. ..........................
1 Karen is looking in the mirror. ..........................
2 You must fill in this form without any help. ..........................
3 Derek is talking to Kim and Kim is talking to Derek. ..........................
4 My aunt lives alone in a small flat. ..........................
5 My brother hurt his leg when he was playing football. ..........................
6 Selma doesn’t like Emma and Emma doesn’t like Selma. ..........................

Go online for more practice
16 Indefinite pronouns

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PEOPLE</th>
<th>someone/somebody</th>
<th>anyone/anybody</th>
<th>everyone/everybody</th>
<th>no one/nobody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>THINGS</td>
<td>something</td>
<td>anything</td>
<td>everything</td>
<td>nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLACES</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>anywhere</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use a singular verb with all these pronouns.
*Everything is expensive in Switzerland. Nobody lives on the moon.*

⚠️ *Everybody make mistakes.* ✓ *Everybody makes mistakes.*

2 Indefinite pronouns with *some/any*

We use indefinite pronouns to talk about a person, object or place. The exact person, object or place is not important:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in positive sentences</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td><em>I’ll ask someone</em> for help. <em>He needs something</em> for his computer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in negative sentences</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td><em>I can’t find anywhere</em> to sit. <em>There isn’t anything</em> on TV tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in most questions</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td><em>Did you see anyone</em> in town? <em>Is there anything</em> you want at the shop?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when you ask for or offer something</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td><em>Can I have something</em> to drink? <em>Would you like something</em> to eat?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when you suggest something</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td><em>Let’s go somewhere</em> nice for a meal tonight.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*some/any ➤ Unit 7*

3 Indefinite pronouns with *no*

We use *no one/nobody, nowhere* and *nothing* with positive verbs, but the meaning is negative: *There’s nowhere to sit.* (= There isn’t anywhere to sit.) *No one answered the phone.*

⚠️ We don’t use two negatives in English:

* I didn’t eat nothing. ✓ *I didn’t eat anything.*
* Nobody isn’t here. ✓ *Nobody is here.*

4 Indefinite pronouns with *every*

We use *everyone/everybody, everything* and *everywhere* when we mean ‘all people’, ‘all things’ or ‘all places’:

*Everyone in the room stopped speaking. Everybody was very happy with the results.*
*Is everything all right? I want to visit everywhere on the island.*
Practice

1 Choose the correct words in italics. [2.33] Listen and check.

0 I’m thirsty. I need anything / something to drink.
1 Everybody on my course has / have a university degree.
2 We don’t have something / anything in the fridge.
3 The shop was expensive so I didn’t buy nothing / anything.
4 She looked anywhere / everywhere but she couldn’t find her key.
5 Be quiet! Everyone are / is asleep.
6 They’re on holiday so nobody is / isn’t at home.
7 No one like / likes unfriendly people.
8 We don’t know somebody / anybody who speaks Turkish.

2 Grammar in use Complete the conversation with indefinite pronouns. [2.34] Listen and check.

A I’m hungry. I haven’t eaten (0) anything today.
   Let’s find (1) ...................... for lunch.
B But there’s (2) ...................... to eat near here.
A I’m sure there is. Let’s ask (3) ......................
B Excuse me. Is there (4) ...................... to eat around here – a café or a restaurant?
C There’s a hotel on Grange Street, but it’s quite expensive.
B Oh. Are there any cheaper places to eat?
C Mmm, not really. I’m afraid (5) ...................... in this town is expensive.
A What about (6) ...................... like a sandwich?
C Well, there’s a supermarket near here. I think it sells sandwiches.

3 Write the sentences again. Change the underlined word(s) to an indefinite pronoun and/or a different form of the verb.

0 There is no food in the fridge. There is nothing in the fridge.
1 All the students in my class are friendly.
2 There are no students in the classroom.
3 I didn’t eat any food yesterday.
4 All the things here are dirty.
5 I’ve got no clothes to wear to the wedding.
6 There isn’t a place to sit on this train.

4 Find four more mistakes in the sentences and correct them. Tick (√) the correct sentences.

0 Nobody in my class likes classical music. √ Somewhere is busy at this time of year.
1 We didn’t get nothing at the supermarket today.
2 Somebody was talking, but I don’t know who.
3 The restaurant was empty; there wasn’t nobody there.
4 Everyone use the Internet these days.
5 In my town there are cafés everywhere.
6 I think anything is expensive in this shop.

Go online for more practice
1 Replacing a noun

We use one to replace a singular countable noun:
I'm making a cup of coffee. Would you like one? (a cup of coffee)

We use ones to replace a plural countable noun:
Shall I wear brown shoes or black ones? (shoes)
'Which jeans do you want to buy?' 'The ones on the right.' (jeans)

We can use a/an/the/some + adjective + one(s):
I don't like the blue shirt. I like the red one. (the red shirt)
Those are really bad photos but here are some good ones. (good photos)
That pen's very expensive. I only want a cheap one. (a cheap pen)

We can't use one or ones to replace an uncountable noun.
× I prefer folk music to classical one. ✓ I prefer folk music to classical music.

2 Which one/ones?

We can ask people to say which thing they want or mean with Which one(s)?:
'Which one do you want?' I want the red one.'
'I've got some Tom Cruise films on DVD.' Which ones? (= Which films?)

We use this/that/these/those + one(s) to say which thing we want or mean:
'Which pen would you like?' I'd like that one.'
Can you pass me some plates? Those ones on the top shelf.

Countable/uncountable nouns ➤ Unit 2

3 another one

We use another one
• for an extra thing:
  Sara hasn't got a student book. Have you got another one? (an extra book)
• for a different thing:
  She doesn't like that jumper. She wants another one. (a different jumper)
Practice

1 Choose the correct words in *italics*.
0 I prefer plain food to spicy *one* / *food*.
1 Do you have a gas cooker or an electric *one* / *ones*?
2 We’ve got three litres of milk but we need *another* / *other* one for tomorrow.
3 Can we have a blue pen and a *black* / *black* one, please?
4 I don’t want the cotton trousers, I want the wool *ones* / *one*.
5 I’m still hungry. I’d like *sandwich another* / *another sandwich*.
6 Would you like brown sugar or white *one* / *sugar*?

2 Complete the sentences with *one*, *ones* or *another*. *شااعر_2.35* Listen and check.
0 I’d like two red peppers and a green ..........*one*......
1 I don’t like modern films, I prefer old .................
2 Do you have any more euros? We need ................. one for the drinks machine.
3 Do you have these ................. in a smaller size?
4 There are a lot of things to take; I think we need ................. suitcase.
5 James sold his old car and bought a new .................
6 That dress is nicer than the ................. you were wearing yesterday.

3 *Grammar in use* Improve this conversation by replacing some more words with *one* or *ones*. *شااعر_2.36* Listen and check.
A Can I help you?
B Yes. I’d like that coffee pot.
A Which *one* coffee pot?
B The coffee pot on the top shelf.
A Oh, I see. That coffee pot?
B Yes, that’s it.
A Anything else?
B Yes. I’d like some cups.
A Do you mean the cups next to the coffee pot?
B No, not those cups. The blue and white cups on the other shelf.
A These cups?
B Yes.

4 Answer the questions with full sentences. Do not use the *underlined* words in your answer.
0 Do you prefer plain *biscuits* or chocolate *biscuits*? I prefer chocolate *ones*.
1 What colour *shoes* are you wearing?
2 What colour *pen* do you usually use?
3 Do you prefer hot *drinks* or cold *drinks*?
4 Do you prefer old *houses* or new *houses*?
1. **Choose the correct answer, A, B or C below.**

   **Subject: My first term**

   Dear Mum and Dad,
   
   (0) ........., I'm really enjoying (1) ........ first term at college. The lessons are really interesting and (2) ........ have lots of friends. (3) ........ best friend is Simon. (4) ........ is doing the same course as (5) ........ Simon lives with (6) ........ family in a flat near the university. I visited them yesterday. The flat is much nicer than (7) ........ (8) ........ is in an expensive area and (9) ........ are quite rich. By the way, we did (10) ........ first project last week and I got an A!
   
   Lots of love, Dan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0 A Me</th>
<th>B I</th>
<th>C Myself</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 A me</td>
<td>B mine</td>
<td>C me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 A me</td>
<td>B mine</td>
<td>C I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 A Mine</td>
<td>B Me</td>
<td>C My</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 A He</td>
<td>B Him</td>
<td>C His</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 A me</td>
<td>B I</td>
<td>C mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 A her</td>
<td>B him</td>
<td>C his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 A me</td>
<td>B mine</td>
<td>C my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 A He</td>
<td>B It</td>
<td>C Their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 A the parents of Simon</td>
<td>B Simons’ parents</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 A us</td>
<td>B our</td>
<td>C we</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words.**

   0 Does this belong to you? Is ......................... yours ?
   1 Does this belong to the children? Is ......................... ?
   2 We went to college in the car David owns. We went to college in .................
   3 Caroline lives in Moscow – near the centre. Caroline lives near the .................
   4 Does this book belong to him? Is ......................... ?
   5 You can’t have that, it belongs to me. That’s ................., you can’t have it.
   6 I love these old teacups, they belonged to my grandmother. I love these old teacups, they were .................

3. **Find five more mistakes in the text and correct them.**

   This is a photograph from last summer. Look, that’s my little brother and those is my two sisters. It was the day we went to the funfair. We had a lot of fun this day, we really enjoyed myself. We went into the hall of mirrors and looked at ourselves – we laughed so much! Then we went on the rollercoaster. It was really frightening. My brother hates heights but he made he go on it – he was very brave! But the best part was seeing the animals in the circus tent – these animals were fantastic to watch!
4 **UNITS 16 AND 17** Choose the correct words in *italics* in the conversation.

**Listen and check.**

A Can I help you?
B Yes. I’m going to a college interview next month and I need (0) anything / something to wear.
A Well, these dresses are very nice.
B Mmm, I’m not sure. Have you got (1) anything / anyone in a lighter colour?
A How about this (2) one / ones?
B I’d prefer one in blue – (3) no one / everyone says blue suits me.
A OK. What about this dress?
B I think that’s a bit big. Have you got (4) other / another one in a smaller size?
A Yes, we have. That’s £125.
B Oh, that’s a bit expensive. Have you got (5) everything / anything under £100?
A No. I’m afraid (6) there’s / there isn’t nothing under £100 here.
B Oh, dear. Is there (7) anything / anywhere I can find cheaper clothes near here?
A Well. There’s a clothes market around the corner ...

5 **ALL UNITS** Complete the crossword.

**ACROSS**

2 Excuse me. Is ... your bag over there?
5 We took the wrong suitcase. It wasn’t ours, it was ... ...
8 ... house is this? Your uncle’s?
9 My son painted that picture by ... ...
12 That cake was delicious. Can I have ... one?
13 Our teacher gives ... a lot of homework every day.

**DOWN**

1 I’ve looked ... but I can’t find my phone.
2 I don’t like ... shoes – I prefer those ones over there.
3 Does ... in this class speak Russian?
4 The heating in my house turns ... off at midnight.
6 I’m hungry. I’d like ... to eat.
7 My best friend and I send text messages to each ... every day.
8 I prefer happy films to sad ...
10 That isn’t your book, it’s ... !
11 Everyone itself me my one ones this those us you yourselves

6 **ALL UNITS** Complete the text with the correct words from the box.

There are two extra words.

‘Good morning, everyone. (0) ....... **My** ....... name is Roger Downley and I am the head teacher of this college. It is a great pleasure for (1) ....... to welcome you all personally to Crandon. First, I’d like to tell (2) ....... about the fantastic facilities we have here. There are two libraries. The main library is in the Shelton building and the smaller (3) ....... is behind the history department. So there is plenty of space for (4) ....... . Your education is the most important thing for (5) ....... here. But we also want you to enjoy (6) ....... , so we have plenty of social and sporting activities, too. You probably saw the sports fields outside (7) ....... building. We are very proud of (8) ....... fields – not many colleges have so much open space ...’

**Go online for more review exercises**
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. George likes me but I don’t like ..........  
   A. him    B. he    C. his  
   ➤ Unit 11

2. That’s a nice mobile phone. Does .......... take photos?  
   A. he    B. she    C. it  
   ➤ Unit 11

3. ‘Who’s that in the photo?’ ‘It’s ..........’  
   A. we    B. us    C. I  
   ➤ Unit 11

4. Do you like ..........?  
   A. Anna’s cooking    B. the cooking of Anna    C. Anna’s cooking  
   ➤ Unit 12

5. David is ..........  
   A. a brother of Alan    B. Alan’s brother    C. Alan’s brother  
   ➤ Unit 12

6. She lives in the .........., near the Empire State building.  
   ➤ Unit 12

7. I feel sick and .......... head hurts.  
   A. the    B. mine    C. my  
   ➤ Unit 13

8. This dictionary doesn’t belong to me. It’s ..........  
   A. her    B. hers    C. her’s  
   ➤ Unit 13

9. Don’t touch that. It’s ..........  
   A. the mine    B. my    C. mine  
   ➤ Unit 13

10. I’d like some apples. How much are .......... behind you?  
   A. these    B. those    C. them  
   ➤ Unit 14

11. What did you think of .......... film we saw last week?  
   A. this    B. those    C. that  
   ➤ Unit 14

12. ‘Can I speak to the manager?’ ‘Yes, .......... is the manager speaking.’  
   A. that    B. this    C. these  
   ➤ Unit 14

13. We enjoyed .......... at the concert.  
   A. themselves    B. yourselves    C. ourselves  
   ➤ Unit 15

14. I don’t have any family so I live ..........  
   A. myself    B. by me    C. by myself  
   ➤ Unit 15

15. I phone Miranda every day; we spend a long time talking to ..........  
   A. ourselves    B. each other    C. themselves  
   ➤ Unit 15

16. Where are my keys? I can’t find them ..........  
   A. anywhere    B. nowhere    C. somewhere  
   ➤ Unit 16

17. Caroline wasn’t hungry so she didn’t eat ..........  
   A. something    B. nothing    C. anything  
   ➤ Unit 16

   A. are    B. aren’t    C. is  
   ➤ Unit 16

19. I don’t like black jeans. I prefer blue ..........  
   A. one    B. ones    C. them  
   ➤ Unit 17

20. We need two phones. Do you have ..........?  
   A. other one    B. another one    C. more one  
   ➤ Unit 17
Prepositions

Before you start

1 Read the information in the article. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

THE STRATFORD SHAKESPEARE FESTIVAL

THE STRATFORD SHAKESPEARE FESTIVAL is one of the major theatre festivals in the world. It takes place in Stratford, Ontario near the town of Kitchener. It starts in the spring and runs from April to November every year. Some of the world's best actors appear on stages in front of crowds of thousands of fans who travel to the festival from all parts of the world. Transport to the festival is good: you can reach Stratford by plane, train, bus or car. There are special buses from Toronto and Kitchener on some Saturdays during the summer. Tickets for this year's festival are for sale now, on the festival website.

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 Our closest theatre festival takes place on/at/in Burnham. ➤ Unit 18
2 Sometimes you can't get close/near/by the stage. ➤ Unit 18
3 Some actors don't like to play opposite/behind/in front of a big crowd. ➤ Unit 19
4 A lot of people go at/in/to the Burnham Theatre festival. ➤ Unit 20
5 The Burnham Theatre Festival starts in/on/at August. ➤ Unit 21
6 Most summer festivals here are from July up/in/to September. ➤ Unit 21
7 We try to see a play at the festival in every/on every/every week. ➤ Unit 22
8 Festivals don't usually take place while/during/from the winter. ➤ Unit 23
9 Most people travel to the festival in/with/by car or train. ➤ Unit 24
10 Tickets are usually to sale/by sale/for sale two months before the start. ➤ Unit 24

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

Go online for a full diagnostic test

43
1 Main uses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>at</strong></td>
<td>There's someone at the door. She's at her desk by 9.00 every day. Write your name at the top of the paper.</td>
<td>Adrian is standing below the clock. The coats are in the cupboard below the stairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>in</strong></td>
<td>There are some books in the cupboard. There was no one in the house.</td>
<td>The rubbish bin is under the desk. I keep my old school books under the bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on</strong></td>
<td>The computer is on the desk. The poster is on the wall.</td>
<td>The cupboard is next to/beside the desk. He lives in the house next to/beside the school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>above</strong></td>
<td>There's a poster on the wall above the desk. He lives in the flat above the shop.</td>
<td>Adrian is standing near the door. She works at the shop near the station.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Other uses

We use **at** with:
- home and places of study/work:
  - **at home**, **at school**, **at university**, **at work**, **at the office**
- other places in a town:
  - **at the doctor's**, **at the cinema**, **at the station**

We use **in** with:
- towns and countries:
  - **in Milan**, **in Italy**, **in Europe**

Practice

1 Match the two parts of the sentences.

0 There were some really good bands
1 Your coats and scarves are
2 Who painted that lovely picture
3 Can you put your old papers in the bin
4 You’ll find the tickets
5 At the moment Meral is living
6 Louisa met her husband

A on the desk in my office.
B on the bedroom wall?
C in the cupboard by the front door.
D at her best friend’s wedding.
E under the sink?
F at the festival last year.
G in Izmir, but she comes from Ankara.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation with the correct phrases from the box.

beside the park in the office block in the park near the festival near the station next to our house

A How are you getting to the festival on Saturday?
B I’m going by train. We live quite (0) near the station... – it’s only about a fifteen-minute walk.
A That’s too far with luggage!
B No, I’ll take a taxi to the station. The taxi office is (1) next door.
A That’ll be expensive. Why don’t you drive here and we can go by bus? The bus stops (2) just outside really.
B Does it stop (3) then?
A Quite near, it’s only about a five-minute walk.
B But the station is (4) . You can walk straight into the festival.
A Why don’t we just drive? There’s parking for the festival (5).
B That’s true! Let’s do that.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Look at the picture. Complete the text with prepositions.

Hi Melissa!
About Saturday – let’s meet at the station. You can’t miss it – there’s a huge clock (0) the wall at the front and there’s a car park (1) the station. I’ll meet you at the taxi stop (2) the station – it’s just outside. There are some nice shops (3) the station and we can have lunch at the café (4) the department store. The cinema is right (5) the store, so we can go straight there after lunch. Maggie can’t meet us for lunch so she’ll just meet us (6) the cinema at 2.30. See you then! Jackie

Go online for more practice
19 Prepositions of place (2)

1 in front of, behind, opposite, between

| in front of | Joanne is in front of Simon. Annie sits in front of me in the class. |
| behind      | Simon is behind Joanne. There's a police car behind our car. |
| opposite    | The snack bar is opposite the ticket office. My house is opposite the post office. |
| between     | Simon is between Joanne and Mariella. That's me in the photo – between mum and dad. |

⚠ The snack bar is opposite to the ticket office.
✓ The snack bar is opposite the ticket office.

2 Describing a picture

We use prepositions to describe where things are in a picture. Read this description of the picture at the top of the page.

The picture shows the entrance to a festival.
At the front we can see the ticket office. Three people are waiting for tickets.
There's a festival stage at the back.
The ticket office is on the left of the picture and the snacks are on the right.
In the centre there's a group of people.
At the top we can see the sky and at the bottom we can see some children.
Practice

1 Look at the plan below. Then choose the correct words in italics. ♦ 2.40 Listen and check.

0 A is on the right /left of B.
1 C is opposite / between B and E.
2 D is in front of / behind E.
3 F is opposite / between A and B.
4 G is between / in front of H.
5 G is opposite / in front of C.
6 I is on the right / left of H.
7 E is behind / opposite I.
8 C is on the right / left of E.

A ................. B .......... hotel ................. C ................. D .................
E ................. F ................. G ................. H ................. I .................

Shopping Centre – Main Street

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Now read the text. Write the correct places in the plan.

The biggest building in the shopping centre is the department store. It's opposite the supermarket and a small hotel. The hotel is on the right of the supermarket. On the right of the hotel is a cinema, and opposite that is the café, which has a lot of tables and chairs in front of it. The café is on the left of the bus station, which is opposite the sports centre. That has a small area behind it with a tennis court.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Look at the photo. Complete the text with the correct words from the box. ♦ 2.41 Listen and check.

back front left right top

The picture shows a scene from Chinese New Year in London. At the (0) .......... front .......... we can see people holding models of a dragon and a bird. There are some old buildings and shops on the (1) ................. and (2) ................. of the picture. It is a nice day because we can see blue sky at the (3) ................. Behind all the people, at the (4) ................. , there are more colourful things that are part of the festival.

4 Now look at a picture in the room you are in, or find a picture from this book. Write three sentences with prepositions to describe it.

At the front I can see .................

........................................

........................................
20 Prepositions of movement

From the ticket office, you go through the main gate and along the path. Go past the toilets and follow the path to the food court. Then go round the fountain and across the bridge. The main stage is in front of you.

1 along, past, across, over, through, round, from, to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>along</td>
<td>Walk along the path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>Go past the toilets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>across</td>
<td>Go across the bridge. Go over the bridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>through</td>
<td>Go through the main gate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round</td>
<td>Go round the fountain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from</td>
<td>You go from the ticket office ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>Follow the path to the food court.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We also use from in this way:
Our English teacher comes/is from New Zealand. (= New Zealand is her country.)

2 into, out of, onto, off

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>into</td>
<td>Let's go into the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of</td>
<td>Can you get my shoes out of the wardrobe?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onto</td>
<td>The cat jumped onto the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off</td>
<td>The cat jumped off the table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Into* is similar to *in*, but we use *into* for movement.

in for position/place ➤ Unit 18

We get into/out of a car or taxi, but get on/off a bus, plane, train, ship, bike:
*Get into the car. We're ready to go. I felt ill when I got off the ship.*

⚠️ *I got into the bus:* ✓ *I got on the bus.*
Practice

1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Read these directions to an arts festival. Then choose the correct words in italics. **2.42** Listen and check.

**How to find us**
If you are coming by train, follow these directions from the station to the Arts Centre: when you leave the station, go (0) **across** / **through** the railway bridge. (1) **To** / **From** the bridge, turn right and walk (2) **along** / **past** the path by the river for about 200 metres, then go (3) **along** / **through** the small park on your left.
Go (4) **across** / **round** the statue in the middle and (5) **from** / **past** the park café.
Follow the path (6) **to** / **along** the main gate and go (7) **across** / **through** the gate.
Go (8) **along** / **across** the main road and you’ll see the Arts Centre in front of you.

2 **Complete the sentences with prepositions. 2.43** Listen and check.
0 You have to turn your lights on when you go **through** the tunnel.
1 I always walk **across** the bridge to get to work. It’s quicker.
2 ‘Is this Kew Gardens?’ ‘No. You need to get **past** the bus at the next stop.’
3 The doors open at 6.00 p.m. and then people can go **to** the cinema.
4 Turn right and go **to** the post office – it’s the next building on the right.
5 Walk **along** the lake. The café is on the other side.

3 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the description below with prepositions. Use the map to help you.

The parade starts at 10.30.
We go (0) **out of** the station car park and walk (1) **along** the path by the river, and then go (2) **past** the tunnel under the railway into the town centre. We walk (3) **along** the hospital (4) **through** Main Street (closed to traffic for the day).
We go (5) **past** the street and then (6) **across** the main square to the statue – we divide into two groups to go (7) **past** the statue, and finally, we walk up the steps and (8) **to** the stage at the other side of the square.

4 **Describe your route to school/work every day.**

I always walk to work. I go **out of** my apartment and turn left. I walk **past** some shops ...

[Diagram of an arts festival location]

**Go online for more practice**
21 Prepositions of time (1)

THEATRE! DANCE! MUSIC! COMEDY!

England's biggest, busiest festival is back - it starts **on** 5 May and continues **until** 27 May. Events **at** lunchtime **on** most days and **in** the evening every day.

The ticket office is open **from** 10.00 a.m. **to** 6.00 p.m. every day.

1 **at, in, on**

| at + | an exact time                             | The train arrives **at** 6.00.  
The film starts **at** 9.00.  
|      | special days or occasions                | Lucy met an old friend **at** her sister's wedding. 
|      | times of meals and the weekend           | The concert is **at** lunchtime.  
|      |                                          | What are you doing **at** the weekend? 
| in + | parts of the day                          | There are events **in** the evening every day.  
|      |                                          | It gets cooler **in** the afternoon. 
|      | months, seasons, years, centuries        | The festival is **in** May.  
|      |                                          | He was born **in** 1994.  
|      |                                          | They built the castle **in** the eleventh century. 
| on + | dates and days                            | The festival starts **on** 5 May.  
|      |                                          | My interview is **on** Thursday afternoon. 

⚠️ We say **at**, NOT **in** the night:  
❌ The supermarket is open **in** the night  
✔ The supermarket is open **at** night.

2 **No preposition**

We don't use a preposition with
- **this** (morning, week, etc.):
  What time did you have breakfast **this** morning?
- **last** (month, year, etc.):
  The new theatre opened **last** month.
- **next** (week, year, etc.):
  My English course starts **next** week.
- **every** (day, weekend, etc.):
  There are special events **every** day.

❌ Kevin's exam was **on** last Tuesday.  
✔ Kevin's exam was **last** Tuesday.  
❌ There's a festival here **in** every February.  
✔ There's a festival here **every** February.

3 **in, until, from ... to/until**

My birthday is **in** five days. (five days from now)  
The festival continues **until** 12 May. (It ends on this date)  
The festival lasts **from** 9 May **to/until** 12 May. (From the beginning to the end of this time)

Use of prepositions in American English ➤ page 317
Practice

1 Match the two parts of the sentences. Listen and check.
0 The first men walked on the moon in .................................................
1 Americans usually have family parties in .................................................
2 World War Two lasted from .................................................................
3 People usually do their best work in ....................................................
4 Johnny Depp was born on .................................................................
5 Children don’t usually go to school on ...................................................

B Saturdays.
C the morning.
D 1969.
E November.
F 1939 until 1945.

2 Look at the notices. Complete the sentences below them. Use the correct prepositions.

0 Knightley Manor is only open to the public ...........................................
1 The train to Winchester arrives .........................................................
2 The shop is closed ........................................................................
3 The next term starts ....................................................................
4 The cinema tickets are half price ..................................................
5 The next performance of the play will be .......................................

3 Complete/write the second sentence so it means the same as the first.
Use the words in brackets (). Listen and check.

0 I usually go to the gym at 10:00. (in) ....................................................
1 I went to the gym at 10:30 today. (this)
   I went .................................................................................................
2 It’s Monday 15 June now. I have a doctor’s appointment for Monday 22 June. (next)
   I’m going ............................................................................................
3 At the moment I’m working from Monday to Sunday. (every)
   ........................................................................................................
4 It’s Monday. The report will be ready on Thursday. (in)
   ........................................................................................................
5 The builders are starting on Wednesday and working until Saturday. (from ... to)
   ........................................................................................................

4 Complete the sentences about you. Use the information in brackets ().

0 (year) I was born .................................................................
1 (year) I was born .................................................................
2 (day, month) My birthday is ...........................................................
3 (time) I usually get up ........................................................ and go to bed ...........................................................
4 (period) I usually work / study from ............................................
5 (day) I often take exercise / play a sport ........................................
1 before, after

We use before and after with

- times:
  - Let's meet before 7.00. The film starts then.
  - Train tickets are cheaper after 9.30 in the morning.
- events/situations:
  - There will be drinks before the film. Let's watch TV after dinner.
  - My grandmother was born before the war. I can meet you after work.

before and after + -ing form ➔ Unit 95.1

2 by, for, during

We use by to mean 'not later than':
- Please give me your homework by Friday. (on or before Friday)
- The holiday will be cheaper if we book it by 30 April. (on or before 30 April)
- The meeting is on Wednesday so I'll finish the report by then.

We use for + a period of time:
- for an hour, two days, three weeks
- It means 'the whole time':
  - We waited for the bus for an hour.

We use during + an event or situation:
- during the flight, the winter, the war
- Neil Brand plays the piano during the film.
- Uncle Andy called us during supper with some bad news.

Compare during and for:
- I only slept for half an hour during the flight.
- It rained for two days during our holiday.

⚠️ I go to classes during three hours in the afternoon.
✓ I go to classes for three hours in the afternoon.

for with present perfect ➔ Unit 53.1
Practice

1 GRAMMAR IN USE Look at the flight information board. Use the information below to complete it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEPARTURES</th>
<th>ARRIVALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>08.55 (0) BC218 Edinburgh</td>
<td>09.05 LT079 FRANKFURT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09.10 AC1252 MONTREAL</td>
<td>09.15 (5) AFI062 PARIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09.15 DA729 MADRID</td>
<td>09.15 (6) JOHANNESBURG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09.25 PA1921 (1)</td>
<td>09.30 BA9193 FRANKFURT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09.35 LT200 FRANKFURT</td>
<td>09.35 DA738 MUNICH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09.45 DA1910 MILAN</td>
<td>09.55 AA0107 TANGIER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09.50 PA6100 MONTEVIDEO</td>
<td>10.10 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>10.25 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>10.35 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.20 (4)</td>
<td>10.35 DA661 ATHENS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Only one flight leaves the airport before 9 o'clock in the morning, the BC218 to Edinburgh.
There are two flights for North America before 9.30, for Montreal and New York.
Only two flights leave between 10.00 and 10.30, the AFI063 to Paris, and ten minutes before that the SAS202 to Stockholm.

Two flights arrive from Paris after 9.00: BA5634 arrives five minutes after the Air France flight.
There are two arrivals from the United States: BA4242 from Miami first at 10.10, then PA2190 from Dallas fifteen minutes after that.

2 Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.

0 If you aren’t doing anything this evening, let’s go to the cinema during [after] work.
1 The flight’s at 8.00 a.m. so we’ll have to get up after / before 6.00 to get to the airport.
2 The last date for your project is 25 March. Please give it to your teacher by / after then.
3 Mike had a bad accident during / for his holiday and was in hospital during / for two weeks.
4 Everything smells very fresh before / after rain.
5 Please don’t talk for / during the exam.
6 We’ll send out the interview letters by / after the weekend, so you’ll hear early next week.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the text with the correct words from the box.

after before by during during for

The Rocks Hotel has welcomed visitors for 25 years.

The following information will help you to have an enjoyable stay:

- The restaurant is open from 6.30 until 9.30 p.m. If you would like an evening meal after this time, please call 135.
- Breakfast is served between 6.30 and 9.00 a.m. If you would like breakfast in your room, please hang the menu card on your door during 2.00 a.m.
- Reception is closed from 11.30 p.m. to 6.00 a.m. If you need a doctor the night, please call 100.
- We ask guests to leave their rooms by 11.00 a.m. If you wish to keep your room later than this, please let us know for 9.00 a.m.

** SPECIAL SPRING OFFER ** the months of March and April, stay two nights and have dinner here, get the third night FREE!
23 Prepositions with other meanings

Last year I went to the Hay-on-Wye book festival. I went with my two best friends, and we went by bus. It was great — we went to a really funny and interesting talk by Charlie Higson. He wrote the Young James Bond books.

1 by
We use by to talk about

- a way of travelling:
  We went to Hay by bus.
  Dave goes to work by bike.

- a way of communicating:
  I keep in touch with all my friends by email.

- a way of paying for something:
  I pay for my shopping by credit card.
  (But we pay for something in cash or by cash.)

⚠️ Amanda goes to work by foot. ✓ Amanda goes to work on foot.
We also use by to say who wrote or produced something:
The ‘Young James Bond’ books are by Charlie Higson.
‘Guernica’ is a famous painting by Pablo Picasso.
The play ‘Macbeth’ was written by Shakespeare.
by with passive form of verb ➔ Unit 96.3

2 with
We use with to mean ‘together’:
I went to Hay with my two best friends.
My parents are on holiday with my brother at the moment.

We can also use with to say what we use to do something:
He pushed the door open with his foot.

3 as, like
We use as for a person’s job, or to say what something is used for:
Martin works as a waiter in the evenings.
You can use the side of a book as a ruler.

We use like when we mean ‘similar to’:
Debbie’s very beautiful — she looks like a model. (She isn’t a model.)
This tastes like chocolate. (It isn’t chocolate.)

⚠️ We don’t use like when we talk about someone’s job. We use as:
✘ Alex works like a builder. ✓ Alex works as a builder. (This is his job.)
Practice

1 Match the sentences 1–5 with the meanings A–F.
0 That picture is by Karen, when she was at college.
1 That picture is of Karen, when she was at college.
2 Karen usually goes to work on foot.
3 Karen catches the bus if she’s late.
4 Karen works as a photographer.
5 Karen looks like a photographer.
A She is a photographer.
B She walks to work.
C She is in the picture.
D She painted the picture.
E She isn’t a photographer.
F She sometimes goes to work by bus.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation with the phrases A–H below.

SUE Did you go to any festivals last year?
AMY Yes, we went to one – a film festival in Liverpool.
SUE Really? Did you go (0) ….. H…..?
AMY Yes. We went to a wonderful talk (1) ……….. about Indian films.
SUE How did you go – (2) …………?
AMY No, we didn’t drive. We went (3) …………
But it was quite expensive – we had to pay for the train fares (4) ………….
SUE Mmm, but did you enjoy the festival?
AMY Yes, it was great – but Justin fell and hurt his foot and he had to walk (5) …………. for weeks afterwards!
SUE Oh, no! Is he OK now?
AMY Yes. He got a book (6) …………. with exercises in, and he did those. He’s fine now.
SUE Good. Oh, I nearly forgot. When is the Ely festival this year?
AMY Mmm, I’ve got the information at home. I’ll send it to you (7) ………….
SUE Great. Thanks.

A by email C by car E by a famous fitness teacher G with a stick
B by train D by credit card F by an Indian film director H with Justin

3 Complete the sentences with as or like.

0 Robert spent years ….. as a carpenter before he became a teacher.
1 Your brother really looks ……. that footballer in Real Madrid.
2 Marina loves going to parties, …………. most girls of her age.
3 You can use this sofa ………… a bed. It’s really comfortable.
4 Mmm, your perfume smells ……….. roses. It’s lovely.
5 The TV chef Gordon Ramsay trained ………… a footballer when he was young.

4 Change the sentences so they are true for you.

0 I pay for most things by cheque. I pay for most things in cash.
1 I look like my father.
2 I live with two other students.
3 I love music by Mozart.
4 I always go to work by car.

Go online for more practice
# 24 Common phrases with prepositions

## 1 Phrases of place

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHRASE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at home</td>
<td>I'm usually at home in the evenings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at school</td>
<td>The children are at school next week so we can't come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at work</td>
<td>Robert's at work now - why don't you call him there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in bed</td>
<td>Teenagers often stay in bed till late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on holiday</td>
<td>Where are you going on holiday this year?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on business</td>
<td>Melissa's in Rome on business this week. (working there)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ We don't use to with home, here or there:

❌ I'm tired. I want to go to home now. ✅ I'm tired. I want to go home now.

## 2 Phrases of time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHRASE</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at first</td>
<td>in the beginning after a long time immediately together</td>
<td>At first I was unhappy at college but now I really like it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at last</td>
<td>have to do something quickly finally early enough for something</td>
<td>At last it stopped raining so we went outside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at once</td>
<td>have to do something quickly finally early enough for something</td>
<td>The ambulance arrived almost at once.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the same time</td>
<td>have to do something quickly finally early enough for something</td>
<td>You can't watch TV and study at the same time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a hurry</td>
<td>I can't talk now. I'm in a hurry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the end</td>
<td>We solved the problem in the end, after a lot of work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in time</td>
<td>Make sure you get home in time for dinner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on time</td>
<td>The plane left on time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In time* means 'early enough for something':

*I didn't arrive at the station in time for the six o'clock train, so I had to wait for the next one.*

*On time* means 'at the correct time':

*Last year 92 percent of South-East trains left on time.*

## 3 Other common phrases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHRASE</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>by</td>
<td>by chance</td>
<td>We found this wonderful restaurant by chance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>by mistake</td>
<td>I sent that email by mistake - I didn't want you to read it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>in love</td>
<td>My father says that he's still in love with my mother after twenty-five years!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in public</td>
<td>I was very nervous the first time I spoke in public.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in private</td>
<td>Can we discuss your work in private?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>on fire</td>
<td>The motorway was closed because a car was on fire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on purpose</td>
<td>I didn't get wet on purpose - I fell in the water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>for sale</td>
<td>The house at the end of the road is for sale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of</td>
<td>out of order</td>
<td>The lift is out of order. We'll have to use the stairs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with prepositions. [2.50] Listen and check.

0 Which languages do you study ...at... school in your country?
1 Can I talk to you ........... private after the class?
2 It's dangerous to drive and talk on a mobile phone ........... the same time.
3 I really like the handbag in the window. Is it .......... sale?
4 The police found the money ........... chance when they searched the apartment.
5 Ahmed travels to Switzerland every month ........... business.
6 After nearly an hour, our bus arrived .......... last!

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the story with the correct words and phrases from the box.

**at first at once home in a hurry in the end in time on fire**

We had a terrible experience a few weeks ago. One evening, a friend of ours had dinner with us, and we drove him to the station after our meal. We were quite late for his train so we left the house (0) **in a hurry**, and I forgot to turn off the cooker. When we got (1) ............... from the station, the kitchen was (2) ...............! We were shocked (3) ............... but then we called the fire service. They arrived almost (4) ............... and put the fire out. We were lucky that they put the fire out (5) ............... to save our kitchen – there wasn't much damage, so everything was OK (6) ................

3 Write the sentences again. Replace the underlined words with a common phrase.

0 I'm really sorry I took your coat – I didn't do it deliberately.
   ...I'm really sorry I took your coat – I didn't do it on purpose... (0)
1 The film seemed very boring in the beginning, but then it got better.
   ...The film seemed very boring at first, but then it got better...
2 I'm going to be in Prague for work next week.
   ...I'm going to be in Prague at once...
3 Please make sure that you arrive at the correct time for your appointment.
   ...Please make sure that you arrive on time...
4 If you hear the bell, go to your class immediately.
   ...If you hear the bell, go to your class at once...
5 The coffee machine isn't working again.
   ...The coffee machine has broken down again...

4 **GRAMMAR IN USE** There are five more mistakes with prepositions in the conversation. Find and correct them. [2.51] Listen and check.

A Did you get tickets for Radiohead? B Yes, I did. I had to phone the box office about ten times but I got through it on the end.
A That's great!
B I've got tickets for Friday 15th – I'll be on work that day, so I'll go straight from the office to Wembley Stadium.

A Well, I'm actually by holiday from work that day. I'll meet you to there.
B Can you meet me at 6.30? It starts at 8.00 and I want to be there by time – at least an hour before it starts.
A Yes, that's fine. I'll drive and park nearby, then I can drive you to home afterwards.
B Thanks. That's great.
1 UNITS 18, 19 AND 20
Look at the map and read the instructions. Then:
• draw the way to the language school
• find the places A–K and write them below.

A  bus station
B  
C  
D  
E  
F  
G  
H  
I  
J  
K  

HOW TO FIND US
From the bus station, take the road to the roundabout.
Go round the roundabout and along the path through the park to the river. Go across Brook Bridge to a car park. Go straight across the car park; you come out opposite a cinema. Take the road next to the cinema and go past the cinema on the right. Turn right and go past the shoe shop and the bookshop opposite the cinema. Go past the police station and an Italian café opposite the chemist's. Our language school is on your left, opposite the hospital and between the café and a clothes shop.

2 UNITS 21 AND 22  Replace the underlined words in the conversation with the phrases A–F.

**Listen and check.**

ANDY  When's your brother coming back from his trip round Europe?
JANE  It's Monday now. He'll be here (0) by the middle of the week.  
ANDY  And how long is he going to stay with us?
JANE  Well, (1) until the weekend, at least. Then he's going back to New York.  
ANDY  Is he going to see your parents while he's here?
JANE  No, they're coming here to see him. They'll be here (2) in three days.
ANDY  I see. And are they going to stay (3) for three days?
JANE  Yes, but they'll leave (4) after breakfast.
ANDY  You know I'm in a golf competition (5) at the weekend, don't you?
JANE  Oh, Andy! You told me that wasn't until next weekend!

A  on Thursday  C  on or before Wednesday  E  on Saturday and Sunday
B  in the morning  D  from then to Saturday or Sunday  F  until Sunday

3 UNITS 23 AND 24  Choose the correct words in italics.

0 Joe works by / like / as a builder in the college holidays.
1 I'm sorry I stepped on your foot. I didn't do it by / on / with purpose.
2 We can let you know the football results by / with / on text message.
3 What time did you get at home / home / to home last night?
4 Wait a minute. I can hold the door open with / by / for my foot.
5 This is a photo by / from / of my daughter when she was at college.
6 Swiss trains always arrive in / on / at time – they're never late.
7 Gosh! You really look as / like / to your older brother.
8 I can't stop and talk now – I'm on / at / in a hurry.
4 ALL UNITS  Complete the text with prepositions or – (no preposition).

Last year we were (0) ……... on ….. holiday in Spain and we went to an amazing festival – the running of the bulls in Pamplona. The festival starts (1) ……………… 7 July and the bulls run every day (2) ……………… 14 July. The bulls run from outside the town centre, (3) ……………… the town’s streets (4) ……………… the bullring, and people – often young men – can run (5) ……………… the bulls until they get (6) ……………… there. Lots of people watch the bulls run; you just stand (7) ……………… special fences. We stood (8) ……………… the museum, where there is a very good view, but we had to be there (9) ……………… 6.30 in the morning to get a place! The festival started hundreds of years ago, but it only became famous in the 1920s when it appeared in a book (10) ……………… Ernest Hemingway. It was great fun – very exciting but also quite scary!

5 ALL UNITS  Complete the word puzzle. Use the sentences 1–6 below to help you. Then answer 7.

0 I got ….. the bus at the wrong stop.
1 The cat’s sleeping ….. the bed.
2 Let’s wait ….. a few minutes.
3 The main door is locked – walk ….. it and go in the next door.
4 We usually have coffee ….. dinner.
5 My brother looks ….. a famous film star!
6 My parents have a house ….. the sea in Italy.
7 The phrase in the green squares is ………………..

6 ALL UNITS  Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words.

0 It’s Tuesday today. The festival lasts until Friday.
   The festival finishes ….. three days.

1 We often drive to France.
   We often go to France …..

2 Our office is on the floor above the dentist’s.
   The dentist’s is on the floor …..

3 Hal writes books in his free time.
   Hal works ….. in his free time.

4 The museum is always open on Saturday and Sunday.
   The museum is always open …..

5 Lucas sits behind Magda in class.
   Magda sits ….. Lucas in class.

6 They won’t let us in if we arrive after the show has started.
   We have to arrive ….. for the start of the show.
Test MODULE 3

Prepositions

Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. I’ve got an appointment ......... the doctor’s in the morning.
   A in  B at  C by

2. Arnold Schwarzenegger was born ......... Austria.
   A in  B at  C from

3. Gary lives ......... the airport. It takes about 20 minutes to get there.
   A beside  B near  C next to

4. My house is ......... the red house and the grey one.
   A in  B by  C between

5. Look at this picture. Can you see the building ......... the back?
   A in  B at  C on

6. You can have a lovely walk ......... the path beside the river.
   A under  B past  C along

7. It takes about three hours to walk ......... the lake.
   A round  B across  C through

8. Hurry up and get ......... the car! We want to leave now.
   A on  B onto  C into

9. Is the supermarket open ......... Sunday morning?
   A on  B in  C at

10. There was a terrible crash on the motorway ......... week.
    A last  B in last  C on last

11. There’s a great fitness class ......... lunchtime here.
    A in  B on  C at

12. Please leave the building quietly ......... the concert.
    A on  B after  C before

13. The bus will leave at 9.00 a.m. Please be at the bus station ......... 8.45.
    A after  B by  C during

14. That photo is ......... Rachel. She’s a great photographer.
    A from  B of  C by

15. I’ve marked the interesting points in the article ......... a red pen.
    A with  B by  C of

16. Sally’s very beautiful – she’s ......... a princess.
    A as  B for  C like

17. Did you do anything interesting ......... holiday?
    A on  B for  C by

18. Is the bus coming ......... to pick up the tourists?
    A here  B to here  C at here

19. Don’t try to read ......... the same time as watching TV.
    A with  B by  C at

20. We discovered this hotel ......... chance – we intended to stay at a different one.
    A on  B with  C by

Go online for a full exit test
Adjectives and adverbs

Before you start

1 Read the information on the website. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

www.myfriends.net

my hobbies and interests
I love sport, especially cycling. On Saturdays I sometimes go to the market to buy new sports clothes – it's cheaper than the shops in town – those fashionable shops are too expensive for me! On Sundays I go cycling with my friends. I think it's a brilliant hobby. It's a good way to get healthy and it isn't as expensive as going to a gym. There's some beautiful countryside outside my town and we usually go there. There are a lot of hills and it's really exciting when you cycle down them! My friend Zak is younger than me, but he cycles well in fact he's the fastest cyclist in our group.

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 I love diving; I think it's a sport fantastic / fantastic sport.  ➤ Unit 25
2 Life under the sea is very interesting / interested.  ➤ Unit 26
3 You have to swim good / well to be a successful diver.  ➤ Unit 27
4 I swim often / often swim when I'm on holiday.  ➤ Unit 28
5 My sister likes diving. She's only fourteen, so I'm older than her / she.  ➤ Unit 29
6 Diving in the sea is more good / better than diving in a swimming pool.  ➤ Unit 30
7 The North Sea is the most cold / coldest place in England to swim.  ➤ Unit 31
8 The Mediterranean isn't as cold / colder as the North Sea.  ➤ Unit 32
9 My grandfather was a good diver but now he's too much old / too old to dive.  ➤ Unit 33
10 I like diving because it's really / a lot exciting.  ➤ Unit 34

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

Go online for a full diagnostic test 61
1 Form

Adjectives describe people, things and places. There are many different types of adjectives, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OPINION</th>
<th>SHAPE</th>
<th>COLOUR</th>
<th>NATIONALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>fantastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>square</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British</td>
<td>French</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠ Adjectives do not have a plural form:

✗ two blue dresses  ✓ one blue dress, two blue dresses

Forming adjectives from nouns/verbs ➤ Unit 106.1

2 Before nouns

⚠ Adjectives always come before a noun:

✗ a dress-blue  ✓ a blue dress

⚠ We can put two or more adjectives before a noun. We don’t usually use and between the adjectives:

✗ a beautiful and red dress  ✓ a beautiful red dress

We put opinion adjectives (e.g. beautiful, fantastic, friendly) BEFORE other adjectives:

a fantastic red dress, a friendly French student, a beautiful old painting

We put nationality adjectives (e.g. Spanish, Russian) AFTER most other adjectives:

an expensive Italian car, a young Russian student, a blue Chinese plate

We always put material words (e.g. cotton, silk) next to the noun:

a Chinese silk dress, some old cotton sheets, a red leather handbag

3 After verbs

We can use adjectives after the verb be:

That dress is beautiful. (= It is a beautiful dress.)

We can also use adjectives after verbs like appear, feel, look, taste and seem:

I feel happy today! That dress looks beautiful. Her new neighbours seem nice.

We use and between two adjectives after a verb:

That maths exam was long and difficult.
Practice

1 Write adjectives from the box under the pictures. Use two adjectives for each description.

Chinese  cotton  friendly  fur  old  red  Russian  wooden

0 an old wooden chair  1 a .................. shirt  2 a .................. hat  3 a .................. student

2 Use the words below to write sentences. Listen and check.

0 long boring book / (be) This book is long and boring.
1 beautiful suit / (look) ..........................................................
2 delicious salad / (taste) ..........................................................
3 interesting film / (look) ..........................................................
4 soft pullover / (feel) ..............................................................
5 new exciting project / (be) ....................................................
6 small dark apartment / (seem) ................................................

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the text with the words in brackets (). Listen and check.

In a recent questionnaire 60% of people said shopping was their
(0) ......................... favourite hobby. (hobby, favourite). They preferred it to going to
restaurants, playing sport or visiting friends. One reason may be the
(1) ......................... huge, number of shopping centres which are now open.
With (2) ......................... parking, free and long opening hours, shopping
at these places (3) ......................... easy, seems, enjoyable, and).
But 20% of people say they buy things on the Internet at least once a month.
The most popular things are (4) ......................... electronic, products) such
as DVD players and digital TVs. The Internet never closes, so shopping this way
(5) ......................... convenient, is for people who work long hours.

4 GRAMMAR IN USE There are six more mistakes in the advertisement. Find and correct them.

Carleon Discount Stores

PRICES CHEAP!

Buy some new clothes and you will fantastic look!
• black and wool suits £20!
• cotton white T-shirts £1.50!
• leather Italian shoes £25!
• Americans jeans £10!

OPEN FROM 9 A.M. – 10 P.M. SATURDAY AND SUNDAY.

And parking at our store free is!
26 Adjectives with -ed and -ing

Carlos and his grandfather are very excited. They are watching an exciting football match on TV. They are pleased their team is winning.

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-ed (OUR FEELINGS)</th>
<th>-ing (THE THING THAT CAUSES OUR FEELINGS)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We're excited.</td>
<td>The film is exciting. It's an exciting film.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm bored.</td>
<td>The test is boring. It's a boring test.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 -ed adjectives

We often use adjectives that end in -ed to say how people or animals feel:
Carlos and his grandfather are very excited.
There's nothing to do here – we're bored.
Tired children often behave badly.

3 -ing adjectives

We use adjectives that end in -ing to describe something that causes our feelings:
They are watching an exciting football match on TV. (the football match excites them)
The end of the film was very surprising. (the end of the film surprised me)
We've had a very tiring day. (the day made us tired)

We often use -ing adjectives to ask about something or to give an opinion:
Do you think English grammar is interesting?
Amanda's sister is really boring.

⚠️ We don't use -ing adjectives to talk about how we feel:
❌ I'm very interesting in sport.
 ✓ I'm very interested in sport.

Pronunciation ➤ 1.06
Practice

1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Choose the correct words in italics. \(\square\) 2.55 Listen and check.

**ANN** How was the football match?
**PED** Fantastic. It was really (0) excited / exciting We won!
**ANN** Really?
**PED** You seem (1) surprised / surprising!
**ANN** Well, yes. I am a bit. Anyway, I’m (2) pleased / pleasing you won.
**PED** What about you? How was your day?
**ANN** Oh, it was (3) bored / boring. I spent all day working on the new website.
**PED** But yesterday you said it was (4) interested / interesting!
**ANN** I know. But now I feel (5) bored / boring with it.
**PED** Well, I’m quite (6) tired / tiring now, I don’t feel like cooking.
      Shall we order a pizza or something? And watch Dracula on TV?
**ANN** Oh, no! I feel (7) frightening / frightened when I watch that kind of film.

2 Write adjectives from the box under the pictures.

excited / exciting frightened / frightening pleased / pleasing surprised / surprising tired / tiring

0 He feels .................
1 They are .................
2 The letter has some ................. news.
3 It was a very ................. film.
4 The race was .................
5 She’s .................

3 **GRAMMAR IN USE** There are three more mistakes in the email. Find and correct them. \(\square\) 2.56 Listen and check.

Subject: Don’t miss this!

I’ve just seen a brilliant film – The Hostel. Well, you know me, I love horror films! I think it’s the most frightened film I’ve ever seen. There was a huge queue, we had to wait for twenty-five minutes to get into the cinema – very boring! But it was worth it. In the middle of the movie my friend Jake screamed! And the end is really surprised. But I won’t tell you about it! By the way, how was your trip to Durham? Was it interested? I’m getting very excited about your visit here next month. I can’t wait! And Janice is very pleasing because she hasn’t seen you for a long time...

Go online for more practice
Types of adverb

Harry Royston repairs beautiful old watches in his free time. He works slowly and carefully because the watches are valuable.

1 Form

Adverbs describe how, when or where someone does something. There are many different types of adverbs, eg:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>manner (how)</th>
<th>quickly</th>
<th>slowly</th>
<th>carefully</th>
<th>well</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>frequency (how often)</td>
<td>often</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>never</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time (when)</td>
<td>today</td>
<td>soon</td>
<td>in his free time</td>
<td>last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place (where)</td>
<td>here</td>
<td>upstairs</td>
<td>in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction (which way)</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>right</td>
<td>straight on</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Harry works slowly and carefully. Teresa never works. Matthew didn’t work yesterday. Linda works in a bank. Turn right at the end of the street.

Adverbs of degree ➔ Unit 34

Most adverbs of manner add -ly to the adjective:

- careful ➔ carefully, slow ➔ slowly, perfect ➔ perfectly, bad ➔ badly

But adjectives ending in -y, change y to i and add -ly:

- easy ➔ easily, happy ➔ happily

⚠ The words friendly, lovely, silly and lonely end in -ly but they are adjectives, not adverbs. We can’t make them into adverbs, so we say ‘in a ... way’:

❌ She smiled at me friendly.
✓ She smiled at me in a friendly way.

2 Irregular adverbs

Fast, hard, late and early are adverbs and adjectives. We don’t add -ly to them:

Sven owns a fast car. (fast = adjective)

❌ He drives fastly.
✓ He drives fast. (fast = adverb)

⚠ Good is an adjective. The adverb for good is well:

❌ She plays tennis good.
✓ She plays tennis well.
Practice

1 Complete the sentences. Use the correct words and phrases from the box. 🎧 Listen and check.

always at the end carefully early fast in a friendly way in the bedroom last week never right slowly upstairs

0 My grandmother fell over last week. She hurt her leg so now she can only walk slowly.

1 I always get up so I am late for work.

2 Remember to answer the questions and stop writing of the test.

3 I went with the electrician and we looked at the broken light.

4 Our teacher is nice; she talks to us.

5 Go to the end of the road and turn at the traffic lights. If you walk, you'll get there in about five minutes.

2 Grammar in use Complete the story using a form of the words in brackets ()

Be careful, one of the words you need is not an adverb.

When he was a small boy, Zack loved cars. So, as soon as he was seventeen, he began taking driving lessons. He learned (0) quickly (quick) and became a (1) good driver. After ten lessons he took his driving test. During the test he drove (2) perfect and he passed it (3) easy. Zack's parents were very pleased and decided to buy him a car. Zack always drove (4) good and he usually drove (5) slow. But Zack had a problem. He always woke up (6) late in the mornings. He hated being late for college. Now he had a car, Zack was sure he was (7) never going to be late for college again. But, of course, the very first day he had his new car Zack was late again. So he got up (8) quick, rushed to his car and drove to college very (9) fast. But there was a police car on the road and the police officer stopped him for driving (10) bad. As a result, he lost his driving licence just one week after passing his test!

3 Change the adjectives to adverbs and write the sentences again. 🎧 Listen and check.

0 Clare is a slow driver. Clare drives slowly.

1 Michael is a hard worker.

2 My parents are frequent travellers.

3 Denise is a fast runner.

4 Antonio is a skilful painter.

5 My aunt is a quiet speaker.

6 Emelda and Maureen are brilliant cooks.

4 Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

0 I... fast. 2 I... badly. 4 I can... easily.

1 I... well. 3 I... late.
28 Adverbs and word order

Chrissie usually watches football on Saturdays. She shouts loudly when her team plays well.

1 After the verb
We usually put adverbs of manner (e.g. well, badly, quickly, slowly, quietly, loudly, easily, happily, carefully, perfectly) after the verb:
Chrissie shouts loudly when her team plays well.
If there is an object after the verb, we put the adverb after the object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>plays</td>
<td></td>
<td>well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>plays</td>
<td>football</td>
<td>well.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Before the verb
We use adverbs of frequency to say how often we do something:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>%</th>
<th>always</th>
<th>usually</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>not often</th>
<th>hardly ever</th>
<th>rarely</th>
<th>never</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We put these adverbs BEFORE present simple and past simple verbs:
I never eat toast for breakfast. She hardly ever plays tennis. We always walked to school.
But we put them AFTER:
• the verb be:
  She is always late for work. We are often very busy.
• an auxiliary verb or modal verb (e.g. have, will, can or must):
  I have never watched a football match. You can usually get tickets on the Internet.

3 At the end of the sentence
We usually put adverbs of place (e.g. here, there, at the café) and time (e.g. yesterday, on Saturday, immediately, last week, every day, twice a month) at the end of the sentence:
Do you have your lunch at the café? We go to the cinema twice a month.
Chrissie watches football on Saturdays.

Word order with more than one adverb ➤ Unit 72.3
Practice

1 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in *italics* in the text. 2.59 Listen and check.

In my free time I like playing sports and using the Internet. I (0) **play** *often / **often play** tennis at the weekend and I (1) **sometimes play / play sometimes** football on Tuesday evenings. My team (2) *wins never / never wins* and I don’t (3) **play well / well play**, but I enjoy it very much. I think I use the Internet every day — my computer (4) *is always / always is on!* I like websites like YouTube and Facebook. I can (5) **type quickly / quickly type** so it is easy for me to send lots of emails to my friends. I also like music. My Internet connection is really fast so I can download (6) **easily songs / songs easily**. Then I can listen to them on my iPod.

2 Look at the information about watching TV. Complete the sentences below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HOW OFTEN DO YOU WATCH TV?</th>
<th>WHEN?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>in the evenings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once a week</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at the weekends</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Cilla and Eduardo **watch TV once a week**.

1 David ...........................................................

2 Marion ...........................................................

3 Monty ...........................................................

4 Caroline .........................................................

5 Max ..............................................................

3 Put the adverbs in brackets () in the correct position in each sentence. 2.60 Listen and check.

**often**

0 I *watch TV in the evenings. (often)*

1 Does your best friend speak Spanish? (perfectly)

2 We go to the beach in the summer. (usually)

3 Hilary is late. (always)

4 Where do you go? (at the weekends)

5 When I play football I feel really happy. (well)

6 I have been to Australia. (never)

7 She was frightened so she opened the door. (slowly)

8 My family has lived on a farm. (always)

9 I talk when I’m excited. (loudly)

10 You should go to the dentist. (every six months)

4 Write true sentences about the hobbies in brackets (). Use an adverb in each sentence.

0 I *never play football* (play football)

1 I .......................................................... (sing songs I like)

2 I .......................................................... (read magazines)

3 I .......................................................... (play computer games)

4 I .......................................................... (write stories)

5 I .......................................................... (go to the cinema)

6 I .......................................................... (cook meals for friends)

◇ Go online for more practice
## Comparative adjectives (1)

### 1 Form

To make comparative adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>→</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most short adjectives (1 syllable)</td>
<td>add -er</td>
<td>small → smaller, young → younger, short → shorter, new → newer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjectives that end in -e</td>
<td>add -r</td>
<td>late → later, nice → nicer, wide → wider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjectives that end in vowel + consonant, e.g. -ig, -at, -ot, -in</td>
<td>add another consonant + -er</td>
<td>big → bigger, fat → fatter, hot → hotter, thin → thinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjectives that end in -y</td>
<td>change y to i and add -er</td>
<td>dry → drier, easy → easier, friendly → friendlier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For most adjectives with two syllables we use **more** + adjective:

*This new computer is **more useful** than my old one.*

*My mobile is **more modern** than Emily’s.*

For adjectives with three or four syllables we always use **more** + adjective:

*Modern computer games are **more exciting**. Gold is **more expensive** than silver.*

⚠️ We don’t add -er to these adjectives.

❌ Mobile phones are more useful than cameras. ✓ Mobile phones are **more useful** than cameras.

⚠️ We don’t use **more** with an adjective that is already comparative:

❌ Charlotte is more-taller than Susie. ✓ Charlotte is **taller** than Susie.

📢 Pronunciation ➤ 1.07

### 2 Use

We use comparative adjectives when we compare two people/things.

⚠️ We usually use **than** after comparative adjectives:

✓ Modern machines are **smaller than** old ones.

❌ Modern machines are smaller old ones. ❌ Modern machines are smaller of old ones.

⚠️ We use **me**, **her**, etc., not **I**, **she**, etc. after **than**:

Maria is taller than Anna. ❌ Maria is taller than she.

✓ Maria is taller than her.

But we can use **I**, **he**, **she**, etc. if we put **am/is/are** after the subject pronoun:

*Maria is taller than **she** is.*
Practice

1 Use the information to complete the sentences. Use the comparative form of an adjective from the box.

0 average temperature in July
London 17°C
Madrid 25°C

1 hotels4you.com
Cost of a one night stay in a double room with shower:
THE REGAL HOTEL $350.00
THE PARK HOTEL $85.00

2 In a recent survey British people chose their favourite drink – 56% voted for coffee and 44% voted for tea.

3 airport to central London
Heathrow 24km
Gatwick 45km

4 length of car
Toyota Auris 4.22m
Toyota Prius 4.45m

5 fantastic prices for paintings!
'Sunflowers' by Van Gogh sold for $40 million and 'Nymphs' by Monet sold for $37 million.

near expensive warm valuable long popular

0 Madrid ...is warmer than London.
1 The Regal Hotel ...is cheaper than the Park Hotel.
2 In the UK, coffee ...is more expensive than tea.
3 Heathrow Airport ...is closer than Gatwick Airport.
4 The Toyota Prius ...is longer than the Toyota Auris.
5 Sunflowers by Van Gogh ...is more valuable than Nymphs by Monet.

2 Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.

0 My brother is taller than (I am) me am.
1 I'm eighteen but my best friend is younger than me / I – she's seventeen.
2 Do you like Lucy? I think Mariela is nicer than she / her.
3 I don't like horror films; I think action films are more interesting than them / they.
4 Our neighbours are richer than us / we.
5 My uncle is forty-five but my aunt is older than he is / him is. She's forty-seven.

3 Write the sentences again so they are true. Use a different comparative adjective. Listen and check.

0 It's warmer in London than Madrid.

It's colder in London than Madrid.

1 The mobile phone is a newer invention than the iPod.

2 A car is faster than a jet plane.

3 Five-star hotels are cheaper than four-star hotels.

4 The Pacific Ocean is smaller than the Atlantic Ocean.

5 It's wetter in the summer than the winter.

Go online for more practice and a progress test
Comparative adjectives (2)

1 Comparatives without than
We can use comparative adjectives without than when it is clear what or who we are talking about:
The first exam was easy but the second was more difficult. (more difficult than the first exam)
She thinks the service is better and the prices are cheaper. (better and cheaper than shops)
Don’t take the car. It’s quicker to go by train.
I’m tall but my brother’s taller.

2 Irregular adjectives
Some comparative adjectives are irregular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>good</th>
<th>far</th>
<th>well (= healthy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>comparative adjective</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>further/farther</td>
<td>better</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

My exam results are worse than yours.
The Chinese restaurant is nice, but I think the food is better in the Italian one.
The flight to Seattle is longer because it’s further.
Jenny is better than she was before the operation. (healthier)

3 more and less
The opposite of more is less. We can use less with adjectives with two or more syllables:
Gold is more expensive than silver. (= Silver is less expensive than gold.)
Books are less exciting than films.

⚠️ We don’t use less with adjectives with only one syllable (e.g. old, tall, nice, young):
✘ My mother is less old than my father.
✔ My mother is younger than my father.

We can also use not as + adjective + as (e.g. not as old as) (Unit 32.1).

⚠️ We don’t use more or less with an adjective that is already a comparative adjective:
✘ People in Argentina are more friendlier than people here.
✔ People in Argentina are friendlier than people here.

⚠️ We don’t use more with irregular adjectives:
✘ I think television is more good than radio.
✔ I think television is better than radio.
1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the conversation with the correct words and phrases from the box. [2.63] Listen and check.

- better  easier  further  more expensive  nicer  worse

A  Where shall we eat tonight? The Indian restaurant?
B  No, I think the Chinese place is (0) _______better________.
A  I’m not sure. It’s (1) __________________ and I haven’t got much money.
B  Well, we can try the Italian place. It isn’t expensive, and it’s very nice.
A  Yes, I know it’s nice, but the Indian restaurant is (2) ____________________________.
B  But it’s not very close to us. It’s (3) _____________ than the Italian restaurant – on the other side of town. What about the burger place near the library?
A  Oh, no. That place is terrible. It’s (4) _______________________ than the others in every way!
B  It’s really difficult to decide! I know – let’s stay at home and phone for a pizza.
A  Great. That’s (5) ________________ than going out. We can eat in front of the TV and watch a DVD.

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Choose the correct words in *italics* in the email.

Subject: Optron Computers

Dear Mr Danby,

Thank you for your email asking for information on our two new laptop computers, the Optron X1 and the Optron X23. The X23 is £1,350, so it is (0) *more expensive* than the Optron X1, but it is (1) *powerfuller* / *more powerful* – it is (2) *faster* / *more fast* and it has a (3) *larger* / *more large* memory. I know that you want to carry the laptop with you when you travel so a light machine is (4) *more good* / *better* than a heavy one. The X1 is less (5) *heavy* / *heavier* than the X23, in fact it only weighs two kilos. You asked about the size of the screen. The X23’s screen is (6) *biger* / *bigger* so it will give a (7) *better* / *gooder* picture if you want to play computer games, and the games will be (8) *excitinger* / *more exciting*. The X1 is less (9) *expensive* / *expensiver*, but I think the X23 is (10) *more good* / *better* value for money.

3 Find the grammar mistakes in each sentence and correct them. [2.64] Listen and check.

0  New York is bigger ef Rome.  (than)
1  The River Nile is more ìong than the River Thames.  (than)
2  Meat is less healthier than vegetables.  (than)
3  Which is more worse – cold weather or rainy weather?  (than)
4  Leather shoes are more more than plastic shoes.  (than)
5  It’s more warmer in Spain than in England.  (than)
6  Life in the countryside is less excitinger than life in the city.  (than)
7  People say TV programmes are badder than they used to be.  (than)
8  I think Sally is more nicer than her husband.  (than)
9  Which is more far from London – Moscow or New York?  (than)
10  Harry took some medicine so he feels weller now.  (than)
31 Superlative adjectives

Lots of people enjoy going on roller coasters. Kingda Ka is the highest and the fastest. But many people think Eejanaika is the most exciting roller coaster in the world.

1 Form

To make superlative adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>→</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most short adjectives (1 syllable)</td>
<td>add -est</td>
<td>small → smallest, young → youngest, high → highest, fast → fastest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjectives that end in -e</td>
<td>add -st</td>
<td>late → latest, nice → nicest, wide → widest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjectives that end in vowel + consonant, e.g. -ig, -at, -ot, -in</td>
<td>add another consonant + -est</td>
<td>big → biggest, fat → fattest, hot → hottest, thin → thinnest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjectives that end in -y</td>
<td>change y to i and add -est</td>
<td>dry → driest, happy → happiest, early → earliest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling rules ➤ page 317

Pronunciation ➤ 1.08

For most adjectives with two or more syllables (e.g. useful, difficult, expensive) we use the most + adjective:

*Eejanaika is the most exciting roller coaster. My mobile phone is the most useful thing I own.*

The opposite of the most is the least. We usually use the least with adjectives with two or more syllables: *Excuse me. Which is the least expensive phone you sell?*

⚠ These adjectives have irregular superlative forms:

*bad → worst, good → best, far → farthest/furthest

⚠ He's the most good student in the class. ✓ He's the best student in the class.*

2 Use

We use superlative adjectives when we compare one person/thing with several others.

⚠ We use the before superlative adjectives:

*Kingda Ka is fastest roller coaster. ✓ Kingda Ka is the fastest roller coaster.*

⚠ After superlative adjectives we use in before the names of places and groups:

*Eejanaika is the most exciting roller coaster of the world. ✓ Eejanaika is the most exciting roller coaster in the world.*

We can also use my/your/his, etc. before superlative adjectives:

*Jenny is my oldest friend. What's your happiest memory?*

We often use superlative adjectives + I've ever ..., you've ever ..., etc. to talk about our experiences:

*That was the best book I've ever read. What's the most expensive thing you've ever bought?*
1 Write the missing words in the box. Then complete the sentences below. Use some of the words from the box. **2.65** Listen and check.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>fast</th>
<th>friendly</th>
<th>happy</th>
<th>late</th>
<th>dry</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>far</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>superlative</td>
<td>fastest</td>
<td>nicest</td>
<td>best</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complete these sentences.

0 That was the **worst** meal I’ve ever eaten. It was disgusting!
1 July is usually the **least** rainy month in my country. It never rains then.
2 Milo is the **most** popular student in my class. He talks to everybody.
3 Neptune is the **smallest** planet from the sun.
4 The **earliest** time you can arrive is six o’clock. We close the doors after that.

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Read the information about three British castles. Complete the questions with a superlative form of the adjectives in brackets (). Then answer the questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Dover Castle</th>
<th>Edinburgh Castle</th>
<th>Windsor Castle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BUILT</td>
<td>1050</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>1070</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIZE</td>
<td>175,000 sq m</td>
<td>140,000 sq m</td>
<td>45,000 sq m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMBER OF VISITORS</td>
<td>301,000</td>
<td>1,214,000</td>
<td>900,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EACH YEAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTRANCE CHARGE</td>
<td>£9.80</td>
<td>£11.00</td>
<td>£14.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 Which is **the most expensive** (expensive) castle to visit? **Windsor Castle**
1 Which is **the least old** (old) castle?
2 Which castle is **the most popular** (popular)?
3 Which castle is **the smallest** (small)?
4 Which castle is **the biggest** (big)?
5 Which castle has **the least expensive** (low) entrance charge?

3 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Choose the correct words in italics in the conversation. **2.66** Listen and check.

LOUIS So, Carol. Did you enjoy your holiday?
CAROL Yes. It was the **better** [best] holiday I’ve ever had!
LOUIS Really? What was the **most good** / **best** part?
CAROL Well, the hotel was fantastic, but the coast was really beautiful.
LOUIS And was the **most beautiful** / **bestest** place?
CAROL Definitely the beach. It was the **most warm** / **warmest** water I’ve ever swum in. And there were some good restaurants in the town. The Thai restaurant was **nicest** / **the nicest** one, although it was the **furthest** / **most far** from the hotel.
LOUIS Was that the best one (6) **in** / **of** the town?
CAROL Yes, and it was the **less** / **least** expensive one there! The Italian restaurant was the **most** / **more** expensive one, but it wasn’t very nice.

**Go online for more practice**
not as ... as, the same (... as)

1 not as + adjective + as
We use not as ... as to say that one thing is less difficult, interesting, expensive, etc. than another thing:

The blue jeans are £75.
The white jeans are £40.
The blue jeans aren't as cheap as the white jeans.
The white jeans aren't as expensive as the blue jeans.

Compare these examples. They have the same meaning:
Paris isn't as big as London. = London is bigger than Paris.
Spanish isn't as difficult as Arabic. = Arabic is more difficult than Spanish.
bigger, smaller, more difficult, less easy, etc. ➤ Units 29 and 30

2 the same + noun (+ as)
We use the same ... as to compare two things that are equal:
The black jeans are the same price as the blue ones.
My mobile phone is the same type as yours.

⚠️ We use nouns after the same (... as), not adjectives:
× The jeans are the same expensive.
✓ The jeans are the same price.

We can also say the same as + mine, yours, this one, that one, etc:
Jane's car is the same as mine. We both have Toyotas.
This bicycle is exactly the same as that one.

3 as + adverb + as
We can also use not as + adverb + as:
I don't wear jeans as often as Ben.
Danny doesn't play as well as Boris.

Pronunciation ➤ 1.09
Practice

1 Do sentences A and B have the same (S) or different (D) meanings? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>My sister isn’t as tall as me.</td>
<td>I’m taller than my sister.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I’m twenty-one. My sister is eighteen.</td>
<td>I’m not as old as my sister.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>The price of tea and coffee is the same.</td>
<td>Tea is not as expensive as coffee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I visit my grandfather once a month and I visit my cousins twice a month.</td>
<td>I don’t visit my grandfather as often as I visit my cousins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>American football isn’t as popular as soccer.</td>
<td>Soccer is less popular than American football.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Read the information. Then write sentences comparing the two apartments. Use *not as ... as* or *the same ... as* and the words in brackets (). Write your own opinions for sentences 5 and 6. **2.67 Listen and check.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Turley Street</th>
<th>Salford Road</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Distance from bus stop</td>
<td>100 metres</td>
<td>400 metres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price</td>
<td>£350 per month</td>
<td>£500 per month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>100 sq m</td>
<td>100 sq m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance from centre</td>
<td>6 km</td>
<td>2 km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age of building</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>1920</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 (near the bus stop) *Salford Road isn’t as near the bus stop as Turley Street.*

1 (expensive)

2 (size)

3 (far from the centre)

4 (new)

5 (beautiful) *I think*

6 (comfortable) *I think*

3 **GRAMMAR IN USE** The words in the box are missing from the conversation. Put them in the correct positions. **2.68 Listen and check.**

**Silvie** What do you think of these jeans?

**Claude** They aren’t as nice as the ones you bought last winter.

**Silvie** Really? I think they’re exactly the same as those.

**Claude** No. They’re a much darker colour.

**Silvie** Yes, perhaps you’re right.

**Claude** Did they cost the as the other pair?

**Silvie** No. They weren’t as expensive as those. I bought them in the sale.

**Claude** Do they have any Calvin Klein jeans in the sale?

**Silvie** No, but they have some that are nearly the same Calvin Klein jeans – they look like them but they’re cheaper.

**Claude** You mean they’re copies. I always think they look completely different from the real ones!

[Go online for more practice]
1 **too**
We use *too* + adjective if something is bigger or more than we want or like. We use *too* + adverb if something is faster, later, etc. than is good or safe.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>too + ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>too + ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>This jacket's too big.</em> (bigger than I want)</td>
<td><em>You'll be sick if you eat too quickly.</em> (faster than is good or safe)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>£75 is too expensive!</em> (more expensive than I want)</td>
<td><em>I got up too late and missed the bus.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**too much, too many ➤ Unit 9.2**

Compare *too* and *very*:

*It's very hot today.* (This is a fact.)

*It's too hot today.* (It's hotter than I want or like.)

2 **(not) enough**
If something is *enough*, it is the correct size, amount, speed, etc. for what we want:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE + enough</th>
<th>ADVERB + enough</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>This jacket isn't big enough.</em> (smaller than I want)</td>
<td><em>I can't understand the teacher.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are these jeans <em>long enough?</em></td>
<td>She doesn't speak <em>slowly enough.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He can learn to drive now. He's <em>old enough.</em></td>
<td>(= She speaks too quickly.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ **Our car isn't enough big for six people.**
✓ **Our car isn't *big enough* for six people.**

We can also use *(not) enough* before a plural or uncountable noun:

Do we have *enough plates* for fifteen people?  
Can you pay for this? I don't have *enough money*.

3 **too/not enough to do something**
We use *too/not enough* to do something to say why something isn't possible:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>too + ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>not + ADJECTIVE + enough</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>My sister can't vote because she's too young.</em></td>
<td><em>My sister's too young to vote.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>My sister isn't old enough to vote.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice

1 Match the sentences. Listen and check.

0 This mobile phone is too old.  A It isn’t big enough.
1 That table is too small.     B It isn’t cold enough.
2 The air conditioning is too warm. C It isn’t fast enough.
3 Your hair is too long.      D It isn’t light enough.
4 My suitcase is too heavy.   E It isn’t new enough.
5 Our car is too slow.        F It isn’t short enough.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the advertisement with too or enough.

Supersizestores.com Visit our website now.

Do you find that the clothes in the stores are always too small for you?
Perhaps the waist is too tight or the legs aren’t long enough.
Of course, there are shops that sell larger sizes, but people often find their designs aren’t fashionable enough. They don’t change their designs often enough, so there isn’t enough choice. And for many people their clothes are much expensive. Well, now your problems are over!

At Supersizestores.com we offer a range of fashionable clothes in extra large and extra tall sizes. Our range is wide enough to satisfy even the most fashionable customer!

3 Esther wants to buy a small dark blue jumper. She has €35 to spend. Write sentences with too or enough, and use the adjectives in brackets ( ).

0 A is too big (big)  1 A is too small (small)
1 B is too light (light)  2 B is too dark (dark)
2 C is too expensive (expensive)  3 C is too cheap (cheap)

4 Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use too or enough and the words in brackets ( ). Use short forms. Listen and check.

0 I don’t want to go in the garden because it’s cold. (cold)
   It’s too cold to go in the garden.
1 We can’t go into the theatre because the play has already started. (late)
   It’s too late to go into the theatre.
2 The baby can’t eat adult food because she is very young. (young)
   She’s too young to eat adult food.
3 He can’t rent a car because he is only seventeen. (old)
   He’s too young to rent a car.
4 I can’t carry this bag because it’s extremely heavy. (heavy)
   This bag is too heavy to carry.
5 I can’t use this bed because it’s uncomfortable. (comfortable)
   This bed is too uncomfortable to use.

Go online for more practice
34 Adverbs of degree

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>WEAKER</th>
<th>STRONGER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>with verbs</td>
<td>a bit little</td>
<td>a lot (very) much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with adjectives/adverbs</td>
<td>quite fairly</td>
<td>very really extremely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with comparative adjectives</td>
<td>a bit a little</td>
<td>much a lot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 With verbs

We use (very) much and a lot to make verbs stronger:
She loves her children very much.
Kristin complains a lot. (= She often complains.)

We use a little and a bit to make verbs weaker:
I can play the piano a little. (not very well)
It annoys me a bit. (= It annoys me but not a lot.)

We put these adverbs after the verb and object.
× I like very much skiing. ✓ I like skiing very much.

3 With adjectives/adverbs

We use really, very and extremely to make adjectives and adverbs stronger:
Those shoes are really beautiful.
Diego Maradona was a very good footballer.
My new car goes really fast.
She worked extremely hard before her exams.

We can use fairly or quite to make them weaker:
That meal was quite expensive.
My father drives quite slowly.
I speak Italian fairly well.

4 With comparative adjectives

To describe a big difference between things we use much or a lot:
Those shoes are a lot more expensive than most shoes.
Canada is much larger than England.

To describe a small difference between things we use a little or a bit:
Charlotte is a little taller than Susie.
DVDs are a bit more expensive than CDs.
Practice

1 Match the sentences A–F with the pictures.

0 .......................... 1 .......................... 2 .......................... 3 .......................... 4 .......................... 5 ..........................

A He's a bit taller than his sister.  B It's extremely hot.  C He only exercises a little.  D It's quite hot.  E He exercises a lot.  F He's much taller than his sister.

2 Match the two parts of the sentences.  Listen and check.

0 There was no snow last winter because the weather was quite
1 The heating isn't turned on so the house is fairly
2 We stayed in that hotel because it was quite
3 She didn't buy it because it was really
4 My Spanish isn't very good; I only speak
5 I like studying English


3 Write the sentences again with the words in brackets ().  Listen and check.

0 Cooking is more interesting than cleaning. (much)
   Cooking is much more interesting than cleaning.

1 Some Italian clothes are beautiful. (really)

2 The silk in the market is expensive. (quite)

3 Lisa can cook. (a little)

4 This winter is colder than last winter. (much)

5 The film was more exciting than the book. (a lot)

6 That exam was hard. (fairly)

7 Emelda loves her children. (very much)

8 We watch action films. (a lot)

4 Change the underlined phrases so the sentences are true for you.

0 I am a bit shorter than my mother.
1 My country is a little smaller than Scotland.
2 I am much older than my best friend.
3 In my country, going to the cinema is extremely expensive.
4 My home town is fairly small.
5 The winter is quite warm in my country.

Go online for more practice and a progress test
1. UNITS 25, 26, 29 AND 31
Choose the correct words in italics in the email.

Hi Alison,
I'm having a (0) time / fantastic / wonderful time on this climbing trip. Yesterday we climbed Heston Tor. It was really (1) exciting / excited! It's (2) highest / the highest mountain around here. Everybody is very (3) tiring / tired / exhausted / tired today so we're all resting. I've attached a photo I took yesterday - you can see my brother Jack on the right - he's wearing a (4) nylon blue / blue nylon jacket. And that's Anna in the middle - she's my (5) nice Scottish / Scottish nice friend. She's (6) older / more old than (7) / me and she's the (8) best / most good climber in the group. Everybody in the group (9) seems friendly / friendly seems and they are all very (10) interesting / interested. Tomorrow we are going to climb David's Rock. It's (11) dangerouer / more dangerous than the other mountains so we are all a little nervous. Our guide says the climb is (12) long difficult / long and difficult! But he says it's the (13) most exciting / excitingest mountain in the area. It's quite cold here so I'm glad I brought my (14) warm nice / nice warm jumper and my (15) thick cotton / cotton thick socks! Give my love to everyone at home.
Helen X

2. UNITS 27 AND 28
Use the words below to write questions and answers.

A. How's your new job going?
B. (0) well / it's going well

A. Are you busy at the moment?
B. (1) busy / always I am!

A. (2) you every day / work / do you work every day?
B. Yes, from Monday to Friday.

A. And what do you do there?
B. (3) my emails / I in the mornings / answer

A. What about the afternoons?
B. (4) often / I clients / meet

A. And what do you do with them?
B. (5) look usually at their tax documents / we

A. Do you ever visit your clients at their offices?
B. (6) do no, never / I that

A. Do you ever go out for lunch?
B. (7) go yes, sometimes to Starbucks / I

A. (8) work you in the evenings / do you work in the evenings?
B. No, I always go home at six o'clock.
3 UNITS 32, 33 AND 34  Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words.

0 I am taller than my brother. My brother isn't ........ as tall as ........ me.
1 I haven’t got enough money for that dress. That dress ......................... expensive for me.
2 I got 75 percent in the test and Dave got 75 percent. Dave's test result was
............................... mine.
3 Mr Grant is thirty-five. Mrs Grant is thirty-two. Mrs Grant ......................... old as her husband.
4 We need some more tickets. We haven’t got .........................
5 That jacket is too small for me. That jacket isn’t ................. for me.
6 I don’t play the guitar very well. I play ........................., little.
7 The burger is $4 and the tuna salad is $3.80. The tuna salad is ......................... cheaper
than the burger.
8 Carlos is too young to vote. Carlos can’t vote because he isn’t old .................

4 ALL UNITS  There are seven more mistakes in the advertisement. Find and correct them.

fantastic holiday
You will have a holiday ......................... at the
Sunset Beach Hotel

Our clients often describe us as

"the most good hotel on Miranda Beach"

Our facilities include a swimming pool large and a fitness centre.
We offer every afternoon exercise classes.
The Sunset Beach Hotel is more near to the town than any
other beach hotel, so you can explore the local area.
But if the weather is hot too for you, you can stay cool by
the pool (comfortable sun beds always are available) or you
can eat in one of our restaurants beautiful.

5 ALL UNITS  Complete the text with the correct phrases, A, B or C below.

PEOPLE HAVE ALWAYS loved games and puzzles. Until recently word games were (0) ........ type of puzzle, and games with numbers were much
(1) ........... Many people thought that number games were (2) ........... and not (3) ........... word games.
Sudoku is a new kind of number game. You have to
fill (4) ........... so that each row and column contains

the numbers 1 to 9. Howard Garns invented the
game in 1979. He (5) ........... Garns called the game
‘Number Place’. In the 1980s a (6) ........... gave the
game the name Sudoku.
Sudoku became very popular around the world.
Everyone can play it because it isn’t (7) ........... for
ordinary people and it’s a lot of fun!

0 A more popular B the most popular C most popular
1 A the less popular B popular less C less popular
2 A bored B boring C a boring
3 A as interesting than B more interesting as C as interesting as
4 A the squares carefully B careful the squares C carefully the squares
5 A an American architect was B was an architect American C was an American architect
6 A large Japanese company B company large Japanese C Japanese large company
7 A enough difficult B too difficult C difficult enough
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. I'm reading .......... at the moment.
   A a book interesting  B an interesting book  C a book is interesting
   ➤ Unit 25

2. Misha is wearing a .......... 
   A cotton green T-shirt  B T-shirt green cotton  C green cotton T-shirt
   ➤ Unit 25

3. The ice cream .......... 
   A tastes delicious  B delicious tastes  C delicious
   ➤ Unit 25

4. I never watch TV. I think it .......... 
   A boring is  B is boring  C is bored
   ➤ Unit 26

5. John's very .......... because it's his birthday tomorrow.
   A excited  B exciting  C excitement
   ➤ Unit 26

6. Make sure you answer these questions .......... 
   A careful  B carefuller  C carefully
   ➤ Unit 27

7. Lewis Hamilton can drive .......... 
   A good  B goodly  C well
   ➤ Unit 27

8. The children .......... in the garden.
   A hardly ever play  B play hardly ever  C hardly play ever
   ➤ Unit 28

9. Did you ..........? 
   A last week see the game  B see last week the game  C see the game last week
   ➤ Unit 28

10. The weather is usually .......... in London than in Edinburgh. 
    A dryer  B drier  C dryly
    ➤ Unit 29

11. Carlo's watch was .......... than Silvia's. 
    A expensiver  B more expensive  C expensive more
    ➤ Unit 29

12. I think beach holidays are .......... than skiing holidays. 
    A better  B good  C more good
    ➤ Unit 30

13. Mr Davidson is the .......... person in our street. 
    A more friendly  B friendliest  C friendlyest
    ➤ Unit 31

14. Who is .......... footballer in your team? 
    A the most good  B the better  C the best
    ➤ Unit 31

15. This exercise isn't as difficult .......... the last one. 
    A like B as C than
    ➤ Unit 32

    A much expensive  B expensively  C expensive
    ➤ Unit 32

17. Terry can't vote yet. He's fifteen so he's .......... 
    A young enough  B young too  C too young
    ➤ Unit 33

18. I don't like swimming in the sea. The water isn't .......... 
    A warm enough  B too warm  C enough warm
    ➤ Unit 33

19. I loved that film; it was .......... exciting. 
    A a bit  B a lot  C really
    ➤ Unit 34

20. I like ..........!
    A very much chocolate  B chocolate very much  C very chocolate much
    ➤ Unit 34
Before you start

1 Read the magazine article about Kate Winslet. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

Kate Winslet

Who is she?
Kate Winslet is one of Britain's most successful actresses. Her most famous film is Titanic with Leonardo DiCaprio. She's got two children, Mia and Joe. Kate has a house in the west of England.

What is she doing now?
Kate usually works in Europe but she is living in the United States at the moment. She's making a film in Hollywood – she likes the weather there, and Kate prefers films to theatre.

2 Now read the sentences and questions below about Leonardo DiCaprio. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 Leonardo's other name be / is Leo.
2 How old he is / is he?
3 He speak / speaks a little German because his mother is German-American.
4 He usually works / works usually in Hollywood.
5 Leonardo works / 's working with Kate Winslet again now.
6 Where is he living / lives he now?
7 He is loving / loves the weather in California.
8 He's got / have got one step-brother called Adam.
9 He has / have a house in Los Angeles.

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.
This is Kevin Spacey. He's an actor. But he isn't British, he's American. His shows are very popular.

1 Form

### POSITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am</th>
<th>I'm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>He's/She's/It's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>We're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>You're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>They're</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### NEGATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am not</th>
<th>I'm not</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>He's/She's/It's not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>We aren't/We're not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>You aren't/You're not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>They aren't/They're not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NATURAL ENGLISH** We use short forms (I'm, I'm not, You're, etc.) when we are speaking to someone and in informal writing.

**Pronunciation ➤ 1.10**

2 Use

We use the verb be

- to describe people and things:
  
  *This is my brother. We aren't teachers, we're students. My car is Japanese. My sisters are both married.*

- to talk about our feelings or ideas:
  
  *We're all tired and hungry. This book is boring. His shows are very popular.*

- to describe position and time:
  
  *My flat's close to the city centre. It's two o'clock.*

**Use be not have**

* *I have a cold.*

* *I have a cold.*

* *He has six years old.*

use + be ➤ Unit 75  it + be ➤ Unit 76.1
Practice

1  Write sentences with forms of be. Use the words below. Listen and check.

0  Angela not a student  
   Angela isn't a student.

1  My brother married

2  Our house near the bus stop

3  I very hungry

4  We not Canadian

5  The bank close to the station

6  I not an English teacher

7  It time for lunch now

8  Those magazines not very interesting

2  Read the information. Write sentences about these famous people.
   Use short forms where possible. Listen and check.

   comedian
   not American
   from Ontario, Canada
   not married
   1.71 metres tall
   very funny

   actors
   very rich
   American
   not from New York

0  Mike Myers is a  comedian.

1  He's

2

3

4

5

6  Jennifer Aniston and Courteney Cox

7

8

but

3  GRAMMAR IN USE  There are six more mistakes in the text. Find and correct them.

Michael Mason is my best friend. He's Australian and he am an actor.
He's a very good actor - but he not very famous. He's twenty-six and
he married. Michael and his wife not are very rich, but they is happy.
Michael's very friendly and funny. He a really nice person is!

4  Write about your best friend. Write three or four sentences like the examples in Exercise 3.
36 Questions with be

Who is he? He's Andrea Bocelli.

Is he British? No, he isn't. He's Italian.

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes / No Questions</th>
<th>Short Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am I</td>
<td>Yes, I am.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is he/she/it</td>
<td>Yes, he/she/it is. No, he/she/it isn't. No, he/she/it isn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are we late?</td>
<td>Yes, we are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you</td>
<td>Yes, you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are they</td>
<td>Yes, they are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wh-Questions</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where am I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who are you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is (s) your job?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How old is (s) your brother?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pronunciation ➤ 1.11

2 Use

We use be to ask about

- names, nationality, jobs and family:
  What's your name? Is Sandra Canadian? Are they doctors? Is she married?
- feelings:
  Are you hungry? How are you? Is she happy?
- position and time:
  Where is it? Is your house near here? What time is it? Am I late?

⚠️ In questions, we put the verb be before the subject of the sentence:

✗ You are hungry? ✓ Are you hungry?

✗ What is your job? ✓ What's your job?

3 Short answers

We usually use the short form of the verb in short answers with no:

Is he British? No, he isn't.

⚠️ We don't use the short form of the verb in short answers with yes:

✗ Yes, they're.

✓ Yes, they are.

⚠️ We use pronouns, not nouns, in short answers:

✗ Yes, my house is.

✓ Yes, it is.

✗ Are Carrie and Karl married?

✓ Yes, Carrie and Karl are.

✓ Yes, they are.
Practice

1 Write questions. Use the words below.

0 you / English / or / Scottish Are you English or Scottish?
00 where / your / house Where is your house?
1 Maria / a / student
2 your / brothers / married
3 where / the / post office
4 I / early
5 who / your / teacher
6 the / station / near / here

2 Grammar in use Complete the conversation with forms of be.

Listen and check.

A What a lovely family photo. (0) Are they your children?
B No, they (1) ........ They (2) ........ my sister's children.
A The girl (3) ........ pretty. How old (4) ........ she?
B She (5) ........ four.
A (6) ........ she at school?
B No, she (7) ........ She (8) ........ very young!
A Who (9) ........ the two people at the back?
B They (10) ........ my parents.

3 Write true short answers.

0 Are you American? No, I'm not.
1 Are you a student?
2 Are you Polish?
3 Are you married?
4 Are your parents teachers?
5 Is your house in a town?
6 Is Eminem Australian?
7 Are Mercedes cars German?
8 Is it winter now?

4 Complete the questions and give true answers. Write complete sentences.

Listen and check.

0 What is your surname?
My surname is Lopez.
1 What nationality are you?
2 How old is your brother/sister?
3 Where are your parents at the moment?
4 What is the name of your home town?
5 Who is your favourite singer?
37 Present simple (1)

I live in Los Angeles but my mother lives in the Mojave desert. She prefers the countryside.

1 Form

**POSITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/We/You/They</th>
<th>live</th>
<th>in São Paulo.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>lives</td>
<td>in the countryside.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We add -s or -es to the verb after he/she/it:
go → goes, teach → teaches, wash → washes, relax → relaxes

Sometimes the spelling changes:
carry → carries, fly → flies

**NEGATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/We/You/They</th>
<th>do not</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>big cities.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>does not</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>the countryside.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SHORT FORMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/We/You/They</th>
<th>don't live</th>
<th>here.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>doesn't live</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ After he/she/it, we use doesn’t:
✗ He don’t like cities. ✓ He doesn’t like cities.

Spelling rules for he, she, it forms ➤ page 316

Pronunciation ➤ 1.12

2 Use

We use the present simple

- for facts that are always true:
  Water boils at 100°C and freezes at 0°C. The Sun doesn’t go round the Earth. Some trees don’t lose their leaves in winter.

- for things that we don’t expect to change:
  I don’t live in the country; I live in the city.
  My sister doesn’t work in an office; she works in a hospital.

- for feelings (e.g. feel, hate, like, love, prefer, want):
  My grandfather likes the countryside. He doesn’t like the city. I prefer ballet to opera.

- for thoughts and ideas (e.g. agree, believe, know, mean, remember, think, understand):
  I think New York is exciting. ‘Yes, I agree.’ A red light means ‘Stop’. You don’t understand.

Verbs that don’t use the continuous form ➤ Unit 41.2
Practice Use the spelling rules to help you complete these exercises. ➤ page 316

1 Write the he/she/it form of these verbs below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ -s</th>
<th>+ -es</th>
<th>(-y) + -ies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>carries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>enjoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hurry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>relax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>watch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the sentences about famous people. Use the verbs in brackets () and short forms.

0 The actor Colin Farrell is Irish but he ............... works ............... in Hollywood. (not work, work)
1 Film star Alicia Silverstone ......................... meat; she's a vegetarian. (not eat)
2 Brad Pitt and Angelina Jolie ......................... in Hollywood but they ............... there. (work, not live)
3 Phil Collins is a famous musician but he ......................... painting and acting. (prefer)
4 The actor Russell Crowe also ......................... and ......................... the guitar in an Australian band. (sing, play)
5 Nicole Kidman ......................... fruit but she ......................... strawberries. (love, not eat)
6 Catherine Zeta-Jones ......................... chocolate or sweets. (not like)
7 Antonio Banderas ......................... from Spain but he ......................... films in Europe these days. (come, not make)
8 Businessman Bill Gates is a very rich man but he ......................... his children a lot of money. (not give)

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Read about Carmen Salandras. Complete the text with the correct verb forms. ➤2.79 Listen and check.

My name is Carmen Salandras. I come from Puerto Rico but I don’t live there now. I live in Florida. I work at a big hospital in Miami. It’s a fantastic job and I love it. Like a lot of people in Florida, I speak English and Spanish. I’m married and my husband’s name is Juan Antonio. We don’t live near the beach, we live in an apartment in the centre of the city. In my free time, I enjoy cooking – I try to cook healthy food for my family.

Carmen Salandras (0) ................ from Puerto Rico but she (1) ................ there now.
She (2) ................ in Florida. She (3) ................ at a big hospital in Miami. She (4) ............... her job. Carmen (5) ................ English and Spanish. She is married and her husband’s name is Juan Antonio. They (6) ................ near the beach, they live in an apartment in the centre of the city. In her free time, Carmen (7) ................ cooking and she (8) ............... to cook healthy food for her family.
1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes / No QUESTIONS</th>
<th>SHORT ANSWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do I/we/you/they work here?</td>
<td>Yes, I/we/you/they do. No, I/we/you/they do not (don’t).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does he/she/it work here?</td>
<td>Yes, he/she/it does. No, he/she/it does not (doesn’t).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wh- QUESTIONS</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When/What time</td>
<td>How often</td>
<td>do I/we/you/they get up?</td>
<td>come?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>does he/she/it do on Sundays?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ We don’t add -s to the main verb in questions and negatives.
✗ Where does he work? ✓ Where does he work?

2 Use

We use the present simple for things that happen regularly:
David goes to work by bus. The bus stops outside his house.
‘Do you drink a lot of coffee?’ ‘Yes, I do, but my parents only drink tea.’

When we talk about when or how often we do regular activities we can use
- time expressions (e.g. every day/evening/weekend, at the weekend, on Mondays/Sundays, once a week/month/year):
  Do you come here every day? I go on holiday once a year.

⚠️ Look at the word order:
✓ On Sundays, we go to our grandparents’ house for lunch.
✓ We go to our grandparents’ house for lunch on Sundays.
✗ We go on Sundays to our grandparents’ house for lunch.
- adverbs of frequency (e.g. never, often, always). We usually put these BEFORE the verb:
  We usually start at eight o’clock.
  ‘Do you drive to work?’ ‘No, we always take public transport. We never drive.’

⚠️ With the verb be we put the adverb AFTER the verb:
✗ She often is late. ✓ She’s often late.

Pronunciation ➤ 1.13
1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Choose the correct words in italics in the text.

**A DAY IN THE LIFE**

I (0) get up always / (always get up) at seven o’clock. My husband (1) work / works in a restaurant so he (2) get up / gets up much later.

I (3) don’t eat / doesn’t eat breakfast, I just drink a cup of coffee. I drive to the office and I (4) usually am / am usually at my desk by nine o’clock.

When I arrive, I (5) check / checks my email messages. After that, my assistant and I (6) visit / visits one of our buildings and (7) talks / talk to the builders. Then we (8) go / goes for lunch. We (9) doesn’t eat / don’t eat very much, just a salad or a sandwich. In the afternoon I work at the computer and my clients often (10) calls / call me on the phone.

I (11) finishes / finish work at six. In the evenings I like to relax by watching TV – I (12) work never / never work at home. But my husband (13) doesn’t finish / don’t finish before ten o’clock. So we (14) don’t see / doesn’t see each other very much!

---

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the conversation with the correct words from the box.

**Listen and check.**

A Do you (0) … watch … TV during the day?
B No, I (1) ………….; I work during the day.
A What about the evenings? Do you watch TV then?
B Yes, I (2) …………..
A What programmes (3) ………….. you like?
B I (4) …………. films and comedy shows best. But I (5) …………. watch the news – it’s boring.
A (6) …………. you watch TV on your own or with members of your family?
B Well, I (7) …………. watch TV with my sister, but not very often. She (8) …………. dramas and music programmes.
A (9) …………. she watch the news?
B No, she (10) …………. ……

3 Use the verbs below to write questions. Then write true answers. **Listen and check.**

0 what time / you / get up … What time do you get up? I (usually get up at) 7.30.
00 you / work / in an office … Do you work in an office? No, I’m a student.
1 what / you / have / for breakfast …
2 how often / you / watch TV …
3 you / visit / friends / at the weekend …
4 your family / go to the beach / in summer …
5 you / often / go to bed / late …
6 how often / your best friend / phone you …

---

Go online for more practice
1 Form

We form the present continuous with *am, is or are* + the -ing form of the main verb e.g. watching, going, eating.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>SHORT FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I</em></td>
<td>am watching TV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>He/She/It</em></td>
<td>is leaving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>We/You/They</em></td>
<td>are practising.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>SHORT FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I</em></td>
<td>am not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>He/She/It</em></td>
<td>is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>We/You/They</em></td>
<td>are not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes the spelling of the main verb changes, eg:

*take* → *taking*

*lie* → *lying*

*swim* → *swimming*

Spelling rules for -ing forms ➤ page 316

Pronunciation ➤ 1.14

2 Use

We use the present continuous

• to describe something that is happening while we are speaking:

  *Hurry up. The taxi’s waiting outside right now.*

  *Can you help me? I’m looking for the post office.*

  *James can’t come to the door – he’s having a bath.*

• to talk about something that is happening around now, for a limited period of time:

  *I’m using my brother’s computer today because mine isn’t working.*

  *We’re on holiday this week. We’re staying in a hotel near the beach.*

We often use time expressions (e.g. (right) now, at the moment, today, this week):

*This year we’re studying the history of the theatre.*
Practice  Use the spelling rules to help you complete these exercises. ➤ page 316

1 Write the continuous form of these verbs below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+-ing</th>
<th>double consonant + -ing</th>
<th>(-e) + -ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 What are they doing? Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures.
Use verbs from Exercise 1. ➤2.82 Listen and check.

0 Susy ...is running... in the park.
1 They ................... in the garden.
2 Jenny ................... a cake.
3 The children ................... on the sofa.
4 Pedro ................... in a river.
5 They ................... for a bus.

3 Complete the sentences. Use forms of the phrases in the box. ➤2.83 Listen and check.

play in the garden not have a lunch break eat in a restaurant today wear a pullover have a shower
not go to work today computer not work taxi wait outside not dance at the moment

0 Fernando can’t come to the phone because he ...is having a shower...
1 It’s cold today so I ..........................................................
2 Jane’s cooker isn’t working so she ..........................................
3 The weather is nice today so the children ..................................
4 Dave can’t send you an email because his ..................................
5 Carla has hurt her leg so she ..............................................
6 Hurry up! It’s time to leave. The ..........................................
7 We have a lot of work in the office today so we ..................................
8 It’s a bank holiday so most people ........................................

Go online for more practice and a progress test
## 1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes/No Questions</th>
<th>Short Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am</td>
<td>Yes, I am.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>Yes, he/she/it is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>Yes, we/you/they are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mesa/No Questions</th>
<th>Short Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am</td>
<td>Yes, I am.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>Yes, he/she/it is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>Yes, we/you/they are.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Wh-Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>doing?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>going?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why</td>
<td>running?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In questions, we put am/is/are before the subject of the sentence. We put the -ing form after the subject:

- **What** are you **studying** this term?
- Is she **listening** to the radio?

⚠️ ❌ Are waiting you for me?
⚠️ ❌ Waiting are you for me?
✓ Are you waiting for me?

We don't usually repeat the main verb when we answer questions:

- **Is** that man **phoning** the police?  ❌ Yes, he is phoning.  ✓ Yes, he is.
- ❌ No, he isn't phoning.

We don't use the short form of the verb in short answers with yes.

- Is she sleeping?  ❌ Yes, she is.
- ✓ Yes, she is.

## 2 Use

We often use the present continuous to talk about what is happening in pictures and photos:

- What are they doing?
- They're watching a film.

That's an interesting painting. Is that woman **writing** something?

No, she isn't. She's **reading** a letter.
1 a GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the text. Use the present continuous forms of the verbs in brackets ().  

It's a lovely summer afternoon in the park. Robert and Mick (0) are playing (play) football. Miranda (1) is listening (listen) to some music and Carlos (2) is running (run). My friends Isabel and Rashid (3) are having (have) a picnic – Isabel (4) is eating (eat) a sandwich and Rashid (5) is drinking (drink) a cola. Over there I can see my neighbours, Mr and Mrs Berenson – they (6) are taking (take) their dog for a walk.

b Now put the correct names by the letters in the picture.

A Isabel  B  C  D  E  F

2 Complete these questions and answers about the picture in Exercise 1.

0 Is Miranda (Listening) to music? Yes, she is.
1 Robert and Mick are playing tennis? No, they aren't.
2 Carlos is walking? No, he isn't.
3 What is Isabel doing? She is eating a sandwich.
4 What are Mr and Mrs Berenson doing? They are taking their dog for a walk.
5 Rashid is drinking a burger? No, he isn't.

3 Write the questions and short answers. Listen and check.

0 Is it raining today? No, it isn't.
1 Are you doing your homework? Yes,
2 Are you cooking lunch? No,
3 Are the children watching TV? Yes,
4 Are we waiting for somebody? No,
5 Are Elizabeth and her grandparents staying with her grandparents this week? Yes,

4 Write true answers.

0 What are you doing at the moment? I'm doing my homework.
1 What are you studying this year?
2 Where are you sitting right now?
3 What are you looking at?
### Present simple or present continuous?

#### 1 Use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Simple</th>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to talk about things we do regularly:</td>
<td>to talk about things that are happening at the time we are speaking:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carla dances for the Euro Ballet Company every evening.</td>
<td>Right now, Carla's dancing in Swan Lake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with time expressions: usually, often, every day, once a month</td>
<td>with time expressions: right now, at the moment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Simple</th>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to talk about permanent situations:</td>
<td>to talk about temporary situations:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I work for the Euro Ballet Company in London.</td>
<td>This summer I'm working in Australia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no time expressions</td>
<td>with time expressions: today, this week, at the moment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2 Verbs that don’t use the continuous form

⚠️ We don’t normally use the continuous with these verbs:

- **feeling verbs** (like, love, hate, prefer, need, want):
  - You: I am liking music.
  - ✔️ I like music.

- **thinking verbs** (agree, believe, forget, know, mean, remember, think, understand):
  - X My brother is agreeing with me.
  - ✔️ My brother agrees with me.

- **sense verbs** (hear, see, smell, taste): 
  - X That coffee is smelling delicious!
  - ✔️ That coffee smells delicious!

- **the verbs be, belong, contain, cost, own**:
  - X That bag isn’t belonging to me.
  - ✔️ That bag doesn’t belong to me.

The verb *think* has a different meaning in the present simple and the present continuous:  
What do you think of the show? (= What is your opinion?)
What are you thinking about? (= Tell me your thoughts now.)
Practice

1 Match the two parts of the sentences. | 2.86 Listen and check.

0 Davina's computer isn’t working so A she visits clients once a week.
1 Caroline misses her family so B she stays with her grandparents.
2 Lucy likes to be clean so C she’s staying at home today.
3 I’m afraid Maria can’t speak to you D she’s sending her emails from an right now; Internet café.
4 Melissa isn’t in the office today; E she’s having a bath.
5 As part of Anne’s job F she’s visiting some clients.
6 When Judy goes to the sea G she sends them emails every day.
7 Stephanie has a headache so H she has a bath every day.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the text.

BRUCE LAURENCE is being a young actor. He is very excited because right now he acts / is acting in a professional show for the first time. He loves / is loving the theatre and this is his first proper job. It’s 7:15 and he waits /’s waiting in his dressing room. His assistant puts /’s putting on his make-up and Bruce (5) practises / is practising his words.

Tonight’s show is at the Theatre Royal in Edinburgh. Bruce lives / is living in London but while he is in the show he stays / is staying at a small hotel in Edinburgh. It isn’t very comfortable but single rooms don’t cost / aren’t costing very much and two other actors stay / are staying at the same place. Bruce thinks / is thinking the show will be a big success.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation. Use forms of the words in brackets () and short forms. | 2.87 Listen and check.

CLARA Hi, Josie. How are things?

JOSIE Busy. We moved into our new flat last week.

CLARA That’s great. Where is it?

JOSIE Do you remember (you remember) the garage on Old Street? It’s next to that.

CLARA Oh, yes. I (know) that place. It’s quite old, isn’t it?

JOSIE Yes. So we’re in the middle of painting it at the moment.

CLARA (you use) professional painters?

JOSIE No, they (cost) too much. We (do) it all ourselves. It’s very hard work!

CLARA Well, I (not do) much at the moment. Would you like me to help?

JOSIE That’s kind of you but we (not need) any help really.

CLARA OK. How’s your little baby?

JOSIE Oh, she (be) fine. My mother (look after) her today.

Go online for more practice.
Gwyneth Paltrow's got two children. They've got a house in London.

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/We/You/They  've (have) got a garden.</td>
<td>I/We/You/They haven't (have not) got a garden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It  's (has) got</td>
<td>He/She/It hasn't (has not) got</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes/No QUESTIONS</th>
<th>SHORT ANSWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have</td>
<td>If/you/they got a garden?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has</td>
<td>he/she/it got a garden?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wh- QUESTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What kind of car have you got?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What colour hair has she got?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many children have they got?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NATURAL ENGLISH** We usually use the short forms of have got ('ve got/ 's got).

**Pronunciation ➤ 1.15**

2 Use

We use have got

- to talk about possessions (things that belong to you):
  
  I've got a good camera. He's got two cars. Have they got a lot of money?

- to talk about your family or friends:
  
  I've got two sisters. Has she got any friends at her new school?

- to describe what somebody looks like:
  
  I've got dark hair and brown eyes.

- to talk about illnesses:
  
  I've got a cold/headache/stomachache. Has the baby got a temperature?

× I got brown hair.
✓ I've got brown hair.
× He got a good job.
✓ He's got a good job.

*have got* and *have British/American English ➤ page 317*
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with a form of have got. Use short forms.

0 He hasn't got any hair. 1 She .......... blond hair. 2 They .......... an umbrella.

3 She ............... a headache. 4 We ............... a sports car. 5 I ............... any money.

2 Complete the questions. Use a form of have got and a word from the box. Then match the questions and answers. \(\text{2.88 Listen and check.}\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A-spiders</th>
<th>Bill Gates</th>
<th>James Bond</th>
<th>London</th>
<th>Juliette Binoche</th>
<th>you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

0 How many legs .......... has a spider got .......? A He's got five billion dollars.
1 How many airports ..........? B I've got a Nokia.
2 How much money ..........? C It's got eight.
3 What colour hair ..........? D It's got five.
4 What kind of car ..........? E He's got an Aston Martin.
5 What kind of phone ..........? F She's got dark hair.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE There are five more mistakes in this interview. Find and correct them. \(\text{2.89 Listen and check.}\)

A Excuse me. I'm doing a survey. Can I ask you some questions? A Really? How many have got you?
B Of course. A Have you got central heating in your house? B Well, I've got one and my flatmates has got two.
B No, we haven't got. A What about a washing machine? B No, we hasn't got one.
A Have you got a television? A And have you got a car?
B Yes. Actually, we've got more than one. B No, I don't got one.

4 Use the words below to write questions. Then write true short answers.

0 You / mobile phone?
1 you / any brothers or sisters?
2 your parents / jobs?
3 your teacher / a Rolls Royce?
4 your best friend / any pets?
5 you / a headache?
6 your mother / dark hair?

Have you got a mobile phone? Yes, I have.
1 **Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>NEUTRAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/We/You/They</td>
<td>have dark hair.</td>
<td>I/We/You/They don’t (do not) have any hair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>He/She/It doesn’t (does not) have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Yes/No Questions</strong></th>
<th><strong>Short Answers</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>I/we/you/they have a camera?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes, I/we/you/they do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>No, I/we/you/they don’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does</td>
<td>He/she/it have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes, he/she/it does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>No, he/she/it doesn’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Wh- Questions</strong></th>
<th>do</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>have?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What kind of car</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What colour hair</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>have?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 **have = have got**

We can use *have* in the same way as we use *have got* (► Unit 42.2)

- to talk about possessions:
  
  *Nicolas Cage has an island in the Caribbean. Do you have a lot of money? Switzerland doesn’t have a coast.*

- to talk about your friends or family:
  
  *Nicolas has a son. How many children do you have?*

- to describe what somebody looks like:
  
  *I have dark hair and brown eyes.*

- to talk about illnesses:
  
  *I have a cold/headache. Do you have a temperature?*

⚠️ *I have eighteen years old.* ✓ *I am eighteen years old.*

⚠️ *When have = have got, we don’t use it in continuous tenses:*

⚠️ *I’m having two sisters.* ✓ *I have two sisters.*

3 **have for doing things**

We also use *have* to talk about things we do. We cannot use *have got* in this way:

- a shower/a bath/a wash/a shave/a haircut
- breakfast/lunch/dinner/a meal/a snack/a drink/a cup of coffee
- fun/a good time/a party/a holiday/a celebration
- an argument/an accident/a bad time

We can use *have* for doing things in the present continuous or the present simple:

*Listen to that noise! The neighbours are having a party!* *I always have a good time at parties.*
Practice

1 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation with words from the box.

Listen and check.

\[\text{do (x3) does (x3) doesn't (x4) has (x2) have (x2) you (x3)}\]

OFFICER (0) \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. Da\ldots..} you have your tickets?
STEVEN I think my wife (1) \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. them.}
JACKIE Here they are.
OFFICER Thank you. (2) \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. you} (3) \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. any metal objects in your luggage?}
STEVEN No, we (4) \textcolor{red}{\ldots..}
OFFICER Are you sure, Sir? Do (5) \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. have a mobile phone or a laptop?}
JACKIE He (6) \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. a mobile phone.}
STEVEN Oh, yes. I forgot about that.
OFFICER Put it in the tray please, Sir. (7) \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. it have a battery?}
STEVEN No, it (8) \textcolor{red}{\ldots..}
OFFICER (9) \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. you} have anything else with metal?
STEVEN No. Oh, I (10) \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. some coins in my pockets.}
OFFICER OK. Please put those in the tray as well, Sir.

2 Look at the information about Nicolas Cage (on page 102).
Complete the questions and answers.

0 \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. Does} Nicolas Cage \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. live\ldots..} in Australia? No, he \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. doesn’t\ldots..}
1 \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. Nicolas Cage \ldots.. a castle in England? Yes, he} \textcolor{red}{\ldots..}
2 Where \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} he \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} a house? He \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} a house in Middleton.
3 How many bedrooms \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} his house \textcolor{red}{\ldots..}? It \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} twelve bedrooms.
4 \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} he \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} a daughter? No, he \textcolor{red}{\ldots..}. He \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} a son.
5 Nicolas Cage and his son \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} a good time together?
Yes, they \textcolor{red}{\ldots..}

3 Complete the sentences with a form of have and a word or phrase from the box.
Use short forms. Some sentences need a negative verb.

Listen and check.

\[\text{a headache fun a king a driving licence any brothers or sisters a temperature lunch any mountains a cup of coffee}\]

0 I \textcolor{red}{\ldots.. don’t have any brothers or sisters\ldots..}, I’m my parents’ only child.
1 I think she \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} – she’s very hot.
2 Holland is very flat – it \textcolor{red}{\ldots..}
3 This is a great party! We \textcolor{red}{\ldots..}!
4 When I \textcolor{red}{\ldots..}, I go and lie down.
5 Clare can’t drive because she \textcolor{red}{\ldots..}
6 I always \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} and a biscuit at eleven o’clock in the morning.
7 France has a president, so it \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} or queen.
8 The office is very busy today, so I \textcolor{red}{\ldots..} at my desk – just a sandwich.

Go online for more practice and a progress test
Review  MODULE 5

Use the spelling rules to help you complete these exercises. ➤ page 316

1 UNITS 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41 AND 42  Match the two parts of the sentences.

0  We always have          A  often listen to the radio.
1  Sally is having          B  stay with their grandparents in August.
2  I think I’ve              C  English magazines?
3  This week the children   D  got flu.
4  The children usually     E  a party again. It’s really noisy.
5  Be quiet. I              F  are staying with their grandparents.
6  On Sunday mornings I     G  am listening to the radio.
7  Are you reading         H  fun at Miranda’s parties.
8  How often do you read    I  a good book at the moment?

2 UNITS 35, 36, 39, 40, 41, 42 AND 43  Choose the correct words in italics in the telephone conversation. ➤ 3.03 Listen and check.

A  Good morning. University Accommodation Office.
B  Hi. I’d like to use the accommodation service.
A  OK. (0) Are / Be you a full-time student here?
B  Yes, (1) I’m / I am.
A  What (2) name have you / is your name?
B  Jason Brien.
A  Jason Brien. OK. And what course
   (3) do you study / are you studying this year?
B  History and politics.
A  Do you (4) have / have got your student number?
B  No, I’m afraid not.
A  Mmm. Let me check on the computer ...
   Yes. Here it is: 67567. OK. Now, (5) do / are you want
   accommodation for this year or for next year?
B  Next year.
A  And (6) are / is you in student accommodation now?
B  Yes, (7) I live / I’m living in the flats in George Street at
   the moment.
A  OK. (8) Have you / Do you have got a mobile phone?
B  Yes, but it (9) doesn’t / isn’t working.
A  Well, (10) got you / have you got an email address?
B  Yes, of course.

3 UNITS 35 AND 43  There are five more missing forms of be and three missing forms of have in this text. Put the missing verbs in the correct positions.

Pedro Almodovar is a famous Spanish film director.
His most famous films Talk to Her and Bad Education.
His films popular in Spain and many other countries
but they not in English; they in Spanish. Pedro grey
hair and brown eyes. He lives in Madrid and he not
married. He doesn’t any children but he a brother,
Agustin Almodovar.
4 ALL UNITS  Use the words below to write questions and answers. Use short forms.

0 Mike Myers / be / a famous singer?  
   No, he's a famous comedian.

0 Jennifer Aniston / live / in San Francisco?  
   No, she doesn't. She lives in Los Angeles.

1 Gwyneth Paltrow / have / six children?  
   No, she / not. She / has / two.

2 New York / be / the capital of the USA?  
   No, it / not. Washington / be / the capital.

3 London / have got / four airports?  
   No, it / have got / five.

4 you / watch / TV / at the moment?  
   No, I / not. I / do / an exercise.

5 Red Square and the Kremlin / be / in St Petersburg?  
   No, they / be / in Moscow.

6 your family / live / in a house?  
   No, we / not. We / live / in an apartment.

7 you / have got / a cold?  
   No, I / have got / headache.

5 ALL UNITS  Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words and short forms.

0 There are two bathrooms in my apartment.  
   My apartment has two bathrooms.

1 My daughter lives in Spain and my son lives in Portugal.  
   My children in different countries.

2 There are five English dictionaries in Harry's room.  
   Harry five English dictionaries.

3 My pen friend only speaks English.  
   My pen friend Italian or Spanish.

4 I can't find my key. Can you help me look for it?  
   Can you help me? I'm my key.

5 Armand and Justine don't come from France.  
   Armand and Justine French.

6 Jane usually stays with us but this week she is at her grandmother's.  
   Jane with her grandmother this week.

7 There are no theatres in my home town.  
   My home town any theatres.

8 What is their address?  
   Where live?
Test  MODULE 5

Present tenses

Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1  1 My friend .......... American.
   A not is  B are not  C isn't

2  The women in my family .......... very tall.
   A have  B are  C am

3 .......... hungry?
   A Have you  B Are you  C Do you have

4 What time .......... it?
   A is  B are  C has

5 Maria .......... the answer to that question.
   A know  B knows  C is know

6 Jane is a nurse; she .......... in a hospital.
   A works  B work  C working

7 Laptop computers .......... batteries.
   A are using  B uses  C use

8 My uncle .......... near here.
   A not lives  B doesn't lives  C doesn't live

9 .......... coffee in the mornings?
   A Do you drink  B Does you drinks  C Drink you

10 I .......... a big breakfast.
    A am having always  B always have  C have always

11 I'm afraid the baby .......... very well.
    A isn't sleeping  B not sleeps  C is sleeping not

12 My mobile isn't working so I .......... my sister's phone.
    A using  B 'm using  C use

13 What .......... right now?
    A do you do  B are doing you  C are you doing

14 Carol usually .......... to work but this week she is taking the bus.
    A is driving  B drives  C isn't driving

15 You are wrong. I .......... with you.
    A don't agree  B 'm not agreeing  C 'm not agree

16 .......... the tickets and passports?
    A Got you  B Have you got  C Do you have got

17 Dave isn't very well; he .......... a bad cold.
    A is having  B 's got  C 've got

18 My parents .......... a car.
    A don't have  B do have not  C have not

19 Isabel .......... dark hair and brown eyes.
    A is  B has  C is having

20 Every morning I .......... before breakfast.
    A make shower  B am showering  C have a shower

Unit 35
Unit 35
Unit 36
Unit 36
Unit 37
Unit 37
Unit 37
Unit 37
Unit 38
Unit 38
Unit 38
Unit 39
Unit 39
Unit 40
Unit 40
Unit 41
Unit 41
Unit 42
Unit 42
Unit 43
Unit 43
Unit 43
Past tenses

Before you start

1 Read about James Dean. Look at the **highlighted** grammar examples.

STARS WHO DIED YOUNG:
**James Dean**

James Dean died in a terrible car accident in 1955. He **was** only twenty-four when he died but he was already a big Hollywood star. Dean **loved** sports cars and he **used to drive** very fast – he **didn't like** slow cars!

On 30 September 1955, Dean left Los Angeles in his Porsche sports car. He stopped at Salinas and then **continued** towards Palm Springs. He **was driving** west on US Highway 466 when another car crashed into him at a junction. He **wasn't wearing** a seat belt and when the crash happened, he **died** immediately.

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in *italics*. The **highlighted** grammar examples will help you.

   1. My grandfather **was** / **were** a student in the 1950s.
   2. He **loves** / **loved** his years at university. He studied physics.
   3. But he didn't **like** / **liked** physics so he changed to chemistry.
   4. He **finished university** and then he **lived** / **living** in London.
   5. He **was working** / **worked** in London when he met his wife.
   6. He **wasn't** / **didn't** earning much money when he married my grandmother.
   7. When my father was born, they **moved** / **were moving** to the country.
   8. I **used** / **use** to visit him every summer when I was young.

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

   1. I **was** 2. **loved** 3. **like** 4. **lived** 5. **was working** 6. **wasn't** 7. **moved** 8. **use**
Deborah Kerr and Ingrid Bergman were film stars in the 1950s, but they weren’t American. Deborah Kerr was British and Ingrid Bergman was Swedish.

1 Form

We make the past tense of the verb be with was and were:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/He/She/It</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>French.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We/You/They</td>
<td>were</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are no short forms of was and were in positive sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>SHORT FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/He/She/It</td>
<td>was not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We/You/They</td>
<td>were not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NATURAL ENGLISH** We use the short forms wasn’t and weren’t when we are speaking to someone and in informal writing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
<th>SHORT ANSWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Was I/he/she/it there?</td>
<td>Yes, I/he/she/it was. No, I/he/she/it wasn’t (was not).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Were we/you/they there?</td>
<td>Yes, we/you/they were. No, we/you/they weren’t (were not).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where were you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much was it?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What was the name of the film?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pronunciation** ➤ 1.16, 1.17

2 Use

We use the past simple tense of be to talk about people and situations in the past. We often use dates and times with was and were:

Deborah Kerr and Ingrid Bergman were film stars in the 1950s.

Was he in the beginners’ class last year?

It wasn’t very cold in December.

Compare was/were with is/are:

The weather was hot yesterday but it’s cooler today.

1920s films were in black and white but now most films are in colour.

Present simple of be ➤ Unit 35  To talk about actions in the past ➤ Unit 47
Practice

1 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the text.

Leslie Howard
Leslie Howard (0) **is** (was) a famous film star in the 1930s in Hollywood. But he (1) **wasn’t** / **didn’t** American – he (2) **were** / **was** British. In those days there (3) **not be** / **weren’t** a lot of British actors in Hollywood, most of the film stars (4) **was** / **were** American. Leslie Howard (5) **be** / **was** a very good actor and his films (6) **was** / **were** very successful, but he (7) **wasn’t** / **weren’t** happy in Hollywood and he went back to England. His most famous film (8) **did** / **was** ‘Gone With The Wind’ in 1939.

2 Write questions and short answers. [3:04] Listen and check.

0 Thomas Edison / a famous inventor? (✓)
   Was Thomas Edison a famous inventor? Yes, he was.

1 Christopher Columbus / Spanish? (x)

2 Grace Kelly / a famous scientist? (x)

3 Gustave Eiffel / French engineer? (✓)

4 Michelangelo and Raphael / film directors? (x)

5 the Wright brothers / American? (✓)

6 John F Kennedy and Winston Churchill / actors (x)

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversations with was, were, wasn’t or weren’t and the word(s) in brackets () . [3:05] Listen and check.

1 A Where (0) ............... **were, were you** ............... last night? (you)
   B (1) ............... at that new Chinese restaurant in Dover Street. (I)
   A (2) ............... good? (it)
   B No, (3) ............... terrible. (the food)

2 A (4) ............... a doctor? (your grandfather)
   B No, (5) ............... He was a dentist. (he)
   A (6) ............... successful? (he)
   B Yes, (7) ............... very rich. (he)

3 A (8) ............... at home yesterday morning? (you)
   B No, (9) ............... at home – we were at the supermarket. (we)
   A (10) ............... with you? (the children)
   B No, (11) ............... with our neighbours. (they)

Go online for more practice
45 Past simple (1)

Daniel Craig made his first James Bond film in 2006.

1 Form
We add -ed to most verbs to make the past simple:
watch → watched, finish → finished

Study these spellings:
die → died, live → lived, like → liked
stop → stopped, plan → planned, travel → travelled
carry → carried, study → studied

Spelling rules for regular verbs ➤ page 316

The pronunciation of the -ed ending depends on the sound that comes before it.

Pronunciation ➤ 1.18

Some verbs are irregular. They do not form the past simple with -ed:

buy → bought, do → did, have (got) → had (got),
go → went, hit → hit, leave → left,
make → made, put → put, say → said, take → took,
see → saw, tell → told, win → won

Irregular verbs ➤ page 314

2 Use
We use the past simple to talk about
• a single finished action in the past:
  I went to the dentist yesterday.
  I passed my exam last week.
• a repeated action in the past:
  I called your mobile five times yesterday.

We often use time expressions (e.g. yesterday, in 2002, last year) to say when something happened:

| Daniel Craig made his first Bond film | in 2006. |
| I started work                       | last month. |
| It rained all day                    | yesterday. |
| My English course started            | two months ago. (two months before now) |

We can also use when + past simple:
My father played football when he was young.
When she left college, Isabel had no money.
Practice  Use the spelling rules to help you complete these exercises.  ➤ page 316

1 In each group, one past form is made in a different way from the others. Find the ones that are different.

0 talked asked **made** passed  3 died smiled phoned cried
1 walked played went visited  4 watched told took had
2 stopped robbed planned listened  5 carried worried studied enjoyed

2 Write the past form of the verbs in the box below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ -ed</th>
<th>repeat the consonant and add -ed</th>
<th>+ -d</th>
<th>(-y) + -ied</th>
<th>irregular verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>happened</td>
<td>robbed</td>
<td>phoned</td>
<td>hurried</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose past forms from Exercise 2 to complete the text.

**DANIEL CRAIG – the new James Bond**

Daniel Craig was born in Chester, England in 1968. When he was young, he (0) **lived** in the Wirral, near Liverpool. At school he (1) **played** sport and he was in several teams. When he was a child, he (2) **watched** Star Trek on television and he says it is his ambition to appear in a Star Trek film. He (3) **visited** London when he was sixteen and joined the National Youth Theatre. He then (4) **acted** at the Guildhall School of Music and Drama. He (5) **made** his first film for the BBC in 1996 – Our Friends in the North. In 2006 he got the part of James Bond. Many people were surprised when this (6) **happened**, because Craig has blond hair and all the other actors who have played Bond have dark hair.

4 Complete these sentences. Put the verbs in brackets () in the past tense. Then put the underlined words in the correct position. ➤ 3:07 Listen and check.

0 Jane (start) a new job last month. **Jane started a new job last month.**

1 I (play) football all the time I was young. **when**

2 Europeans (see) potatoes for the first time about five hundred years. **ago**

3 Somebody (rob) our local bank Wednesday. **on**

4 My father (have) an American motorbike he was young. **when**

5 April I (win) a bicycle in a magazine competition. **in**

6 Six months my brother (stop) smoking. **ago**

Go online for more practice
46 Past simple (2)

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>Yes/No QUESTIONS</th>
<th>SHORT ANSWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/He/She/It/We/You/They did not (didn’t) arrive.</td>
<td>Did I/He/She/It/We/You/They arrive?</td>
<td>Yes, I/He/She/It/We/You/They did. No, I/He/She/It/We/You/They didn’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WH-QUESTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>on Saturday?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>for dinner?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>the meal</td>
<td>cost?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ What you **did** on Saturday?
✓ What **did** you **do** on Saturday?

2 Use

We use the past simple

- when one thing happens after another in the past:
  
  We **arrived** at the airport at eleven o'clock and **took** a taxi to the hotel.
  Then we **went** to the café and **had** a drink, but we **didn't eat** anything.

- to talk about a situation that finished in the past:
  
  I **lived** with my grandparents last summer.
  Did men **have** long hair in the 1960s?
  MP3 players **didn't exist** when I was a child.

Linking words for describing events in the past ➤ Unit 95.1

3 Words we use with the past simple

- We use **then** to say that one action happened after another one:
  
  I **finished school** in 2006. **Then** I **went to university**.
  'And what **did you do then**?' (after university)

- We use **from** ... **to** to say when a past situation started and finished:
  
  James Dean **lived from** 1931 **to** 1955.
  I **waited for you from** eight o'clock **to** half past nine!

- We use **for** + ten minutes, two hours, a week, etc. to say how long a past situation lasted:
  
  Daniela stayed with her cousins **for two weeks** last summer.

More about:

from ➤ Unit 21.3  for ➤ Unit 22.2
Practice

1 Use the words below to write questions and short answers.

0 die / President Kennedy / 1963? (✓) Did President Kennedy die in 1963? Yes, he did.

1 fly / Neil Armstrong / to Mars? (✗)

2 win / Tony Curtis / an Oscar? (✗)

3 invent / Alexander Graham Bell / the telephone? (✓)

4 paint / Michelangelo / the Mona Lisa? (✗)

5 write / Ian Fleming / the James Bond books? (✓)

6 exist / computers / in the 1990s? (✓)

2 Grammar in use There are five more mistakes in the conversation. Find and correct them.

Listen and check.

TOM Did you went to the cinema yesterday? 

SILVIA Yes, we do.

TOM What did you saw?

SILVIA We didn’t saw anything.

TOM What do you mean?

SILVIA Well. There was a queue when we got to the cinema, so we don’t wait.

TOM So, what did you done?

SILVIA We went to Video City and rented a DVD.

3 Grammar in use Look at the pictures. Then describe what Janice did yesterday evening. Use the words and phrases in the box with the verbs in the past simple.

Listen and check.

brush her teeth go home on the bus go to bed at have a shower

make a snack send some emails watch television from and then then

Janice went home on the bus at six o’clock. She

______________________________
______________________________
______________________________
______________________________

Go online for more practice and a progress test
Past continuous

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/He/She/It was working.</td>
<td>I/He/She/It was not (wasn’t) working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We/You/They were working.</td>
<td>We/You/They were not (weren’t) working.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**QUESTIONS** | **SHORT ANSWERS**
---|---
Was I/he/she/it working? | Yes, I/he/she/it was. No, we/you/they weren’t.
Were we/you/they working? | Yes, we/you/they were. No, we/you/they weren’t.

We form the past continuous with was/were + the -ing form of the verb.

Spelling rules for -ing forms ➤ page 316

2 Use

- to describe an action at or around a time in the past:
  
  At seven o’clock Marek was making the dinner and Isabella was putting the children to bed. 
  I was watching TV at nine o’clock.

- The action started before nine o’clock and can continue after it.

- for temporary situations in the past:
  Sally was living in Paris when she had her first baby.

- to describe a scene in the past, especially when you are telling a story:
  When we arrived at the beach, the sun was shining.
  They were cleaning the swimming pool when we got to the hotel.

- to describe something you did until an event interrupted you and stopped you:
  I was watching TV when the phone rang.

  James Dean was driving a Porsche when he died. 
  Gerald was playing football when he hurt his arm.

⚠️ We don’t usually use verbs, such as like, see, hear, think, agree in the past continuous.

Verbs that don’t use the continuous form ➤ Unit 41.2
1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the text. Use past continuous forms of the verbs in brackets () and short forms. 3.10 Listen and check.

A few years ago we (0) (live) in France at the time of the Cannes film festival. My wife (00) (not work) that weekend so we decided to drive to Cannes to see some of the new films. The sun (1) (shine) when we arrived and the town looked beautiful. It was very busy – lots of people (2) (walk) in the streets. But it wasn’t very hot that day so people (3) (not sunbathe) on the beach. We got to our hotel and went to the restaurant. We had a big surprise – Juliette Binoche (4) (sit) at the back of the restaurant! But she (5) (not have) lunch, she (6) (talk) to some other famous film stars. It was so exciting!

2 Complete the questions and short answers below. Use information from Exercise 1. 3.11 Listen and check.

0 Was the sun shining when they arrived? – Yes, it was.
1 lots of people (in the streets) – Yes, they were.
2 people (on the beach) – No, they weren’t.
3 Who at the back of the restaurant? – Juliette Binoche
4 she lunch? – No, she wasn’t.

3 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Last night there was a robbery at the Denmore Hotel. The police want to know what everybody was doing at five past eight. Look at the photos from the hotel cameras. Read all the questions before you answer them.

0 Was Mr Denby carrying some suitcases? *No, he wasn’t. He was swimming in the pool.*
1 Was Steve Burton eating in the restaurant?
2 Were Mr and Mrs Grant paying the bill?
3 Was Maria swimming in the pool?
4 Were Alfredo and Alex using the Internet?
5 Was Marco cooking in the kitchen?
Past simple or past continuous?

At the end of the film the bridge collapsed while the truck was crossing it.

1 Use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST SIMPLE</th>
<th>PAST CONTINUOUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to describe one or more finished actions in the past:</td>
<td>to describe an unfinished action at and around a time in the past:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We arrived at the hotel at three o'clock and went to our room.</td>
<td>When we arrived at the hotel, the maid was cleaning our room. (The cleaning was not finished when we arrived.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I called you about four times yesterday afternoon.</td>
<td>I couldn’t answer the phone because I was speaking to some clients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when one action happened after another:</td>
<td>to describe something you were doing at the time when another thing happened:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When Isabel came, we watched a DVD. (= Isabel came and then we watched a DVD.)</td>
<td>When Isabel came, we were watching a DVD. (= We were watching a DVD at the time Isabel came.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 when and while

We can use either when or while before the past continuous:

The bridge collapsed when/while the truck was crossing it.
The post came when/while I was having my breakfast.

⚠️ We don’t use while before the past simple, but we can use when:

❌ While the post came I was having my breakfast.
✔️ When the post came, I was having my breakfast.
Practice

1 Choose the correct words in italics. [3.12] Listen and check.

0 After I brushed my teeth I went / was going to bed.
1 I went / was going to the dentist five times last year.
2 My computer broke down / was breaking down yesterday.
3 Hilary fell on the ice last winter and broke / was breaking her arm.
4 We were relaxing in the garden when / while we suddenly heard a loud noise.
5 Karl didn’t hear the doorbell because he listened / was listening to his iPod.
6 After I left university, I worked in a bank and then I moved / was moving to an insurance company.
7 My cousin couldn’t visit us in August because she did / was doing a summer course.
8 I was having a shower when / while the phone rang.

2 Match the sentences 1 and 2 with A and B.

A We started looking at the photos before my father arrived.
B My father brought the photos with him.

1 1 When my father arrived, we looked at his photos.
2 When my father arrived, we were looking at his photos.

1 1 My aunt worked for Mr O’Reilly.
2 My aunt was working for Mr O’Reilly when she heard the news.

1 1 I was having a party when she told me the news.
2 When she told me the news I had a party.

1 1 Paul travelled a lot in his last job.
2 Paul was travelling when the accident happened.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the text. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets ( ). [3.13] Listen and check.

The sinking of the TITANIC

ON THE NIGHT of 14 April 1912 the cruise ship Titanic  (0) was  (be) in the middle of its first journey between England and New York. It (1) travelled  (travel) across the north Atlantic, south of Greenland. As usual, a sailor (2) watched  (watch) the sea in front of the ship; he (3) looked  (look) for icebergs. But it was dark and there was no moon, so he couldn’t see anything. Suddenly, at exactly 11.40, the ship (4) hit  (hit) a huge iceberg. The ship quickly began to sink. At the time of the accident many of the passengers (5) slept  (sleep). The sailors (6) told  (tell) everybody to leave the ship, but there (7) were  (not be) enough boats for all the people. In the end more than 1,500 people (8) died  (die).
49 used to

Hollywood actor Russell Crowe used to work in a restaurant in Sydney.

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/He/She/It/We/You/They used to work</td>
<td>did not (didn’t) use to work in a shop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**QUESTIONS**

Did I/he/she/it/we/you/they use to work here?

**SHORT ANSWERS**

Yes, (he) did. No, (we) didn’t.

⚠️ There is no present form of used to:

✗ I use to go to work by bus.

✓ I usually go to work by bus.

2 Use

We use used to

- for actions that happened regularly in the past but do not happen now:
  
  People used to write a lot of letters. (but now they send emails)

- to say how often we did things in the past (with always, once a week, every year, etc.):
  
  I always used to swim before breakfast.
  
  We used to go to the beach every summer.

- for past situations that are different now:
  
  Russell Crowe used to be a waiter. (but now he is an actor)
  
  My parents didn’t use to live in the city. (but now they live in the city)
  
  When I was a child I used to have a pet rabbit.
  
  Where did you use to go on holiday when you were young?

We pronounce the s in used to as /s/ not /z/. We do not pronounce the final d: /justə/.

Facebook Pronunciation ➤ 1.19

3 Past simple or used to?

We use the past simple, NOT used to

- for single actions in the past:
  
  ✗ I used to have a driving lesson last week.
  
  ✓ I had a driving lesson last week. (a single action = past simple)

- for repeated actions in the past with a number:
  
  ✗ I used to have a driving lesson twice last week.
  
  ✓ I had a driving lesson twice last week. (a repeated action = past simple)

- to talk about a period of time with for:
  
  ✗ He used to be in the army for two years.
  
  ✓ He was in the army for two years.
Practice

1 Read the information. Then complete the answers below.

0 How are films different? Films used to be in black and white but now they are in colour.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>IN THE PAST</th>
<th>NOW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 films</td>
<td>in black and white</td>
<td>in colour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 cameras</td>
<td>big and heavy</td>
<td>small and light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 phones</td>
<td>attached to wires</td>
<td>mobile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 transport</td>
<td>ride horses</td>
<td>drive cars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 work</td>
<td>work on farms</td>
<td>work in factories and offices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 children</td>
<td>finish school at 12</td>
<td>finish school at 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 location</td>
<td>live in the country</td>
<td>live in towns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 entertainment</td>
<td>go to the cinema</td>
<td>watch TV and DVDs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 What about cameras? Cameras .................................................................
2 What about phones? Phones .................................................................
3 How is transport different? People .....................................................
4 Do people work in the same places as in the past?
   No, most people .................................................................
5 What about schools? Children ............................................................
6 Do people live in the same places as in the past?
   No, most people .................................................................
7 What about entertainment? People .....................................................

2 Find the mistakes in the sentences and correct them. Now listen and check.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Were people use to smoke inside cinemas in the 1950s?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Films</td>
<td>didn’t used to have sound but now they do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Did</td>
<td>use to be cameras very expensive?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Harrison Ford</td>
<td>used to being a carpenter before he became a film star.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Glenda Jackson</td>
<td>use to be a film actress but now she is a politician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Did</td>
<td>Bruce Willis used to have a lot of hair?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 It</td>
<td>wasn’t use to be expensive to go to the cinema but now it is.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Grammar in use Choose the correct words in italics in the text. Listen and check.

The politician who used to be a film star

Arnold Schwarzenegger's life is very different today. He (0) use / (used) to be an actor but now he is a politician. These days he lives in California but he (1) didn’t live / didn’t use to live there, he used to (2) live / living in Austria. He (3) had / use to have an Austrian passport for many years but he (4) got / used to get an American passport in 1983 when he (5) became / used to become a US citizen.

When he was young he (6) wasn’t use to be / didn’t use to be interested in politics — his main interest was exercise and he (7) used to spend / used spend hours in the gym every day, building his muscles. He was very successful and he (8) won / used to win the Mr Universe competition five times.

Go online for more practice and a progress test
1 UNITS 44, 45 AND 46 Complete the text with past simple forms of the verbs in brackets () and no short forms.

**Alfred Hitchcock**

**ALFRED HITCHCOCK** (be) one of the most famous and successful film directors of the 20th century. He was born in London in 1899 and (die) in Los Angeles in 1990. Hitchcock (begin) his career at Gainsborough Studios in London in 1920. In those days films (not have) sound and Hitchcock (be) a director; he (be) a designer. But Hitchcock (do) a good job and they (ask) him to direct a film in 1925.

Hitchcock (make) his first film in Germany. He (use) a lot of interesting ideas from German cinema in this film. After that he (direct) many films in England. But at the end of the 1930s he (move) to Hollywood to make his first American film. That film was called Rebecca and it (win) the best film Oscar in 1940. After that success he (direct) many more movies in Hollywood, including Psycho, Rear Window and The Birds, but he (not win) any more Oscars. Hitchcock (become) famous because his films were very exciting and sometimes frightening.

2 UNITS 47, 48 AND 49 Choose the correct words in italics in the conversation.

Listen and check.

**ALAN** Hi, Sadie. What's wrong with your arm?

**SADIE** Oh, I (burnt) was burning it while I (cooked) was cooking yesterday.

**ALAN** Does it hurt?

**SADIE** Not really. I (bought) was buying some special cream at the chemist's. That helps.

**ALAN** Mike usually does the cooking in your house, doesn't he?

**SADIE** Well, he (used to do) was doing it, but these days he's too busy.

**ALAN** His new job?

**SADIE** Yes. He (wasn't) didn't use to work full-time, but now he has to work until seven every evening.

**ALAN** So do you have to do everything in the house?

**SADIE** Yes. He (started) was starting the new job about two weeks ago, so now I'm really tired!

**ALAN** I'm sorry to hear that. But (had) did you have time to go to the music festival on Sunday?

**SADIE** Yes, I (go) did. But when we (got) were getting there, it (used to rain) was raining.

**ALAN** So what did you (do) done?

**SADIE** It (was) were OK. They (had) used to have a big tent and all the bands played in there.
3 UNIT 49  Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words and short forms.

0 Jake lived in the Far East when he was young.
   Jake .......... used to live ........... in the Far East.
1 Long flights used to be expensive.
   Long flights ....................... to be cheap.
2 I had short hair when I was young.
   I ....................... to have long hair.
3 Was Sweden a republic in the 19th century?
   Did Sweden ......................... a republic?
4 Most people didn’t have cars before 1900.
   Before 1900, most people ....................... to have cars.

4 ALL UNITS  There are four more mistakes in the text. Find and correct them.

When I was a child, there were only a few TV channels and the programmes were in black and white. So I used to love going to the cinema. The colour pictures were very exciting. We were used to eat sweets and drink lemonade while we are watching the films. But my parents stopped taking us to the cinema when I was twelve because they used to buy a colour TV.

5 ALL UNITS  Complete the text with the correct words or phrases, A, B or C below.

--- CINEMA ---

- Early history
   The first movies were made in the United States, France and Britain in the late 19th century. In the early days films (0) ........... very new and you used to look at strange machines to see them. But in 1905 the first cinema (1) .......... in Pittsburgh, USA. This was possible because Thomas Edison and the Lumière brothers (2) .......... film projectors – that make films appear on screens.

- Silent movies
   The early films (3) ........... sound. Cinema owners (4) ........... silence while the film (5) .......... so they employed musicians to play the piano during the film. Some large cinemas even (6) ........... bands. To help people understand what was happening, directors (7) .......... words on the screen called 'intertitles'. The most popular films (8) ........... comedies and there were many famous stars.

0  A was  B did (C) were
1  A opened  B was opening  C used to open
2  A used to invent  B invented  C did already invent
3  A didn’t have  B hadn’t  C didn’t had
4  A not wanted  B didn’t wanted  C didn’t want
5  A was playing  B didn’t play  C were played
6  A were having  B had  C having
7  A did put  B used to put  C use to put
8  A were  B were being  C was

Go online for more review exercises
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. George Washington .......... the first president of the USA.
   A was B were C be

2. .......... your grandparents Polish?
   A Was B Did C Were

3. The children .......... at school yesterday.
   A wasn’t B weren’t C didn’t be

4. My watch .......... working yesterday; it needs a new battery.
   A stoped B stop C stopped

5. I .......... my little sister to the zoo last Saturday.
   A take B took C taked

6. My sister started her first job .......... 
   A has two months B two months ago C ago two months

7. The letter isn’t here because the post .......... this morning.
   A didn’t arrived B didn’t arrives C didn’t arrive

8. .......... to Rebecca’s party last night?
   A Did you go B Went you C Did you went

9. Those shops are new; they .......... here ten years ago.
   A did not be B weren’t C wasn’t

10. We .......... dinner at eight o’clock last night.
    A were eating B was eating C did eating

11. I .......... living there in October.
    A weren’t B didn’t C wasn’t

12. When we got there, it was cold but it .......... 
    A wasn’t raining B not rain C rained

13. The children were having breakfast when the postman .......... 
    A did arrive B was arriving C arrived

14. Jeremy .......... his car to the garage six times last year.
    A took B taking C was taking

15. We ran to the station and .......... the first train we saw.
    A were getting on B got on C was getting on

16. I got a text message while I .......... for the bus.
    A was waiting B waited C were waiting

17. When I was a child I .......... stay up late.
    A didn’t used to B used to not C didn’t use to

18. .......... go to the same school as my sister?
    A Did you use to B Did you used to C Did use you

19. My best friend .......... to a fantastic concert last Saturday.
    A was going B used to go C went

20. My aunt .......... in an international bank for fifteen years.
    A use to work B worked C used to work

➤ Unit 44
➤ Unit 44
➤ Unit 44
➤ Unit 45
➤ Unit 45
➤ Unit 45
➤ Unit 45
➤ Unit 46
➤ Unit 46
➤ Unit 46
➤ Unit 47
➤ Unit 47
➤ Unit 47
➤ Unit 48
➤ Unit 48
➤ Unit 48
➤ Unit 49
➤ Unit 49
➤ Unit 49
➤ Unit 49

Go online for a full exit test
Present perfect

Before you start

1 Read the letter. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

ABBOTTS
HEALTH & FITNESS CLUB

Dear member

We’ve now finished our work on the new ABBOTTS –
the difference is amazing! Six weeks ago we closed the
club, and since then we’ve been working hard to improve
all the public areas. We’ve added several new machines
to the gym and we’ve increased the length of the
swimming pool to 25 metres.

Many of you have been members of our club for
several years – to thank you for staying with us, we have
reduced gym, pool and class prices for you.

And we have some new classes! Have you ever tried judo?
Now’s your chance!

If you haven’t visited our new website yet, go to
www.abbotts.co.uk.

2 Now read the conversation. Choose the correct words in italics.
The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

CARLA Look, Abbotts is opening again. (1) Have you ever been / Were you there?  ➤ Unit 50
KIM Yes, and it wasn’t very good.
CARLA But (2) they improved / they’ve improved the club. It looks fantastic!
KIM Really? Have they got a sauna now?
CARLA Yes, they’ve got one, but they haven’t opened it (3) yet / already.
KIM Are you going to join the new Abbotts?
CARLA I’m already a member actually – (4) I’ve been / I am a member for months.  ➤ Unit 53
KIM Oh, right. (5) I’ve joined / I joined a different health club about three
years ago and only went twice!
CARLA I think that often happens. Why don’t we go now? You can have a
look at it.
KIM I don’t think so. (6) I’m studying / I’ve been studying hard all day. I’m tired.  ➤ Unit 55
CARLA Well, I’ve (7) cleaned / been cleaning six houses today, but I’d like to go!  ➤ Unit 56

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

4 I’ve been 5 I’ve joined 6 I’ve been studying
3 I’ve improved 2 they’ve improved 1 have you ever been
1 Form
We form the present perfect with have + the past participle form of the verb. The regular past participle ends in -ed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/We/You/They</td>
<td>have ('ve)</td>
<td>have not (haven't)</td>
<td>finished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>has ('s)</td>
<td>has not (hasn't)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes/No QUESTIONS</th>
<th>SHORT ANSWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have</td>
<td>Yes, I/we/you/they have. No, I/we/you/they haven't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>finished?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has</td>
<td>Yes, he/she/it has. No, he/she/it hasn't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Irregular past participles (e.g. gone, stolen) ➔ page 314

2 Use
We use the present perfect to talk about past experiences in our lives. It is not important when they happened:
John has worked in several gyms. I've travelled a lot.

We can use before, once, twice, several times, etc. to say how often:
I haven't visited the gym before but I've stayed at this hotel several times.
My parents have visited the United States once.

We often use ever to ask about past experiences. It means 'in your life':
'Have you ever played golf?' ‘Yes, several times.’
'Has she ever tasted Japanese food?' ‘Only once.’

We use never in negative sentences. It means 'not in your life':
I've never played golf. She's never cooked Italian food.

⚠ We put ever and never BEFORE the past participle:
X 'Have you stayed ever in a Hilton Hotel?'
✓ ‘Have you ever stayed in a Hilton hotel?’
X 'I've stayed never in any hotels!'
✓ ‘I've never stayed in any hotels!’

3 Superlatives
We often use the present perfect with superlative adjectives (➡ Unit 31):
That was the best food I've ever tasted!
Practice  All the past participles in these exercises are regular.

1 Choose the correct words in italics. • 3.17 Listen and check.
0 I [have/ has] worked in several different companies.
1 They haven’t [live/ lived] in the city before now.
2 Have you [played/ play] baseball before?
3 ‘Have you finished your homework?’ ‘Yes, I do / have.’
4 We [have/ did] watched all of Quentin Tarantino’s films.
5 ‘Has Maria called the shop?’ ‘No, she hasn’t / haven’t.’
6 The cat has [have] never tasted real steak before!

2 GRAMMAR IN USE  Read the advertisement and the email.
Then complete them with words from the box.

ever has have have haven’t stayed visited

HOME to HOME
the special holiday experience

Have you (0) ……ever…….. wanted to experience real Spanish life?
(1) …………, you always wanted to be more than a tourist in a hotel?

WELL, HOW ABOUT A HOUSE EXCHANGE?
We organise exchanges of two to four weeks - you live in a Spanish family
house here in Spain, and the Spanish family lives in your house in the UK.
Contact us for more information.

Dear Sir / Madam,
I’m writing about your advert for a ‘house exchange’. My family and I have
(2) ………….. Spain on holiday many times but we’ve only (3) …………. in
hotels before so we (4) ………….. experienced ‘real Spanish life’. We
would like a house for four weeks in the south of Spain. My daughter is learning
Spanish at school but she (5) ………….. never talked to Spanish people, so
four weeks in the country will be perfect for her.
We (6) ………….. never invited other people to live in our house, so could
you tell me …

3 Write the words in the correct order to make questions. Then write true answers.
• 3.18 Listen and check.
0 you visited Have another country ever ?
  Have you ever visited another country? Yes, I have. I’ve visited the USA.

1 Have worked ever in a shop you ?

2 watched ever film the best you have What’s ?

3 your parents Have lived in a foreign country ever ?

4 ever you stayed in Have a luxury hotel ?

5 you the most interesting What’s tasted have food ever ?
Present perfect with present results

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGULAR VERBS</th>
<th>IRREGULAR VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>infinitive</td>
<td>visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>visited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>played</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wanted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past participles are either regular (infinitive + -ed) or irregular.

Spelling rules ➤ page 316   Irregular past participles ➤ page 314

2 Use

We use the present perfect

• to talk about things that happened a short time ago and that have a result now:
  I've broken my leg. (It's broken now.)
  Your sister has arrived. (She's here now.)
  The post has come. (There's a letter for you.)
  They've gone out. (They aren’t here.)

With the past simple, the results are also in the past:
  I broke my leg last year and didn't play football from August to October.
  My sister arrived late and missed the beginning of the film.

• to introduce new information:
  'Julian has passed his driving test.' 'Oh, that's good news!'
  The US President has arrived in London.

When we give more details about these events, we use the past simple:
  Julian has passed his driving test. He took it yesterday.
  The US President has arrived in London. He flew here from Washington last night.

3 been and gone

Been is the past participle of be. Gone is the past participle of go:
  I've been tired all day. (And I’m still tired now.)
  Fran has gone to the doctor's. (And she's still there now.)

But we use been as the past participle of go when it means 'has gone and come back':
  My parents have been to New Zealand. (They have visited it in the past and have returned.)
  My parents have gone to New Zealand on holiday. (They are there now.)
**Practice**

1 Write the past participles of these verbs. Use the list on page 314 to help you.

- 0 break __________
- 1 take __________
- 2 go __________
- 3 buy __________
- 4 have __________
- 5 be __________
- 6 eat __________
- 7 run __________
- 8 lose __________
- 9 read __________
- 10 see __________

2 Complete these conversations with participles from Exercise 1. **Listen and check.**

- 0 A Hi, you look happy!
  
  B Yes, we’ve just __________ on holiday. We had a great time!

- 1 A What’s wrong with Jake? He wasn’t at school today.
  
  B Well, he’s __________ some bad food, I think. He feels ill and he’s __________ to bed!

- 2 A Jenny’s unhappy because she’s __________ her bike.
  
  B I know. Don’t tell her yet, but I’ve __________ her a new one.

- 3 A How good are your computer skills?
  
  B Well, I’ve __________ several lessons and I’ve __________ two exams.

- 4 A Hi, Sam, it’s me. Is something wrong? You weren’t at the gym yesterday.
  
  B Yes, I’ve __________ my leg, I’m afraid.

3 Match the sentences with the pictures. Then complete them with the verbs in brackets ().

- A I __________ to the dentist. (go)
- B I can’t take the exam.
- C I’m really tired!
- D Where is it?
- E I feel sick.
- F My mouth hurts.
- **Listen and check.**

- 0 I __________ to the dentist. (go)
- 1 Harry __________ his arm. (break)
- 2 Pat __________ the door. (paint)
- 3 I __________ ten kilometres. (run)
- 4 Louisa __________ her pen. (lose)
- 5 Alex __________ too much! (eat)
- 6 That looks better.

4 Write two sentences for each set of words below.

- 0 famous footballer / buy / a royal palace / pay £2 million for it
  
  A famous footballer has bought a royal palace. He paid £2 million for it.

- 1 US President / arrive / in Moscow / plane / land / two hours ago

- 2 TV star David Walliams / swim / English Channel for charity / take eleven hours

- 3 J K Rowling / write / a new book / finish it / twenty-four hours ago

**Go online for more practice**
Present perfect with just, already, yet

1 just
We use just with the present perfect to talk about things that happened a short time ago:
The plane has just landed. (a few minutes ago)
The play has just started — you can’t go in now.

We put just before the past participle:
X The match has finished just.
X The match just has finished.
✓ The match has just finished.

2 already, yet
We can use already and yet with the present perfect.
• Already means ‘before now’. We use it in positive sentences when something happens before you expect it:
  You’ve missed the match. It’s already finished.
We usually put already before the past participle:
  Graham’s train has already arrived.
  You don’t need to wash the dishes. I’ve already done them.

• Yet means ‘by now’. We use it in questions to ask about something we are expecting to happen:
  Has the six o’clock train arrived yet? It’s five past six and I haven’t seen it.
We also use yet in negative sentences when we expected something to happen before now:
  Our burgers haven’t come yet. We ordered them nearly half an hour ago!
We usually put yet at the end of a question or negative statement:
  Has the match finished yet? I haven’t read this book yet.

We don’t use yet in positive sentences or already in negative sentences:
X I’ve paid for the meal yet. ✓ I’ve already paid for the meal.
X The parcel hasn’t arrived already. ✓ The parcel hasn’t arrived yet.
Practice

1 Write a sentence after each statement. Use just + the present perfect form of the verbs in brackets (). Use short forms. ✽3.21 Listen and check.

0  Her hair's wet. (wash) She's just washed her hair.
1  He hasn't got any money. (spend) He's ..........................................
2  There's no one at home. (leave) They ..........................................
3  There aren't any crisps left. (eat) I ..........................................
4  They're giving him a prize. (win) He ..........................................
5  She's watching TV now. (turn on) She ..........................................
6  Lorenzo is here now. (arrive) He ..........................................

2 Write the words again in the correct order. ✽3.22 Listen and check.

0 has landed yet plane Their not
1 fed cat I already have the
2 Have phone bill the you yet paid ?
3 arrived post The just has
4 We yet had any not have news
5 already shopping done I the have all
6 Keira yet Has new job her started ?

Their plane has not landed yet.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Write just, already or yet in the text below.

Paula Radcliffe

WITH SEVERAL EUROPEAN and World records, Paula Radcliffe has already achieved a lot in long-distance running. It's true that she hasn't won an Olympic race yet, but she has won almost everything else, including the 5,000 metres at the Commonwealth Games and the 10,000 metres at the European events. But she is most famous for the longest race - the marathon. She has won the London Marathon three times. She had a baby earlier this year and has returned to competitions - only a month ago - but she has won an important race, the New York Marathon. Is she the greatest ever female long-distance runner? Well, perhaps she hasn't proved that yet, but she has become one of the most popular sportswomen in the United Kingdom.

4 Write three sentences about what you have done or not done today.

1  What have you just done? I've just ..........................................
2  What have you already done? ..........................................
3  What haven't you done yet? ..........................................

Go online for more practice
1 for/since
We use the present perfect with for or since to talk about situations that started in the past and continue now:

> John has worked here for five years.
> John has worked here since he left school.

For and since both answer the question How long?
'How long have you worked here?' 'For five years.'
'How long have you known Sami?' 'Since 2000.'

| Use for + a period of time | five minutes, an hour, two weeks, for years, a long time, etc. | Sami's been my best friend for many years. |
| Use since + an exact time, day, date or event | five o'clock, Monday, March, he left school | Sami's been my best friend since 2000. Sami's been my best friend since we started school. |

⚠️ I know Alan for thirty years. ✓ I've known Alan for thirty years.

Present perfect continuous ➤ Unit 55

2 this morning, this week, etc.
We use the present perfect with time expressions (e.g. today, this morning, this week, this year) when the time is still continuing:
Have you seen Jan this morning? (It is still morning.)
I've worked forty hours this week. (The week has not finished.)

Compare the present perfect and past simple
• present perfect:
  I've made several phone calls this morning. (It is still morning.)
• past simple:
  I made several phone calls this morning.
  (It is now afternoon/evening – the morning has finished.)

⚠️ After when or what time in questions, we use the past simple not the present perfect:
✗ When have you bought your car? ✓ When did you buy your car?
✗ What time have you arrived? ✓ What time did you arrive?
Practice

1 Write for or since below.

0 .......................... for ...... about 200 years
00 .......................... since ......... 1810
1 .......................... 1987
2 .......................... ten minutes
3 .......................... quarter past three
4 .......................... one year
5 .......................... July
6 .......................... I was eighteen
7 .......................... nearly three months
8 .......................... about twenty-five years

2 Complete each sentence in two ways. Use the phrases from Exercise 1.

0 They built that school a long time ago.
   It’s been there for about 200 years / since 1810.
1 It’s 3.25 and I’ve been at the dentist’s / 
2 My parents have been married / 
3 I’m nineteen. I started college when I was eighteen.
   I’ve been at college / 
4 It’s October and the weather has been lovely / 

3 Match the two parts of the sentences. Listen and check.

0 I haven’t heard from my sister this A we had that meal at the airport.
1 This film’s so long! It’s already B my holiday – two weeks by the beach!
2 We haven’t felt very well since C two hours and there’s still another
3 I haven’t seen my parents for hour to go.
4 I’m really sorry but I’ve been D morning and I haven’t finished
5 I’ve felt more relaxed since E week, but she usually phones on Fridays.
   very busy this F two months because they live abroad now.

4 GRAMMAR IN USE For 1–6, write the present perfect or the past simple of the verbs in brackets (). For A–D, write for, since or How long. Listen and check.

DOCTOR (0) How long ... have you had this cold?

PATIENT Well, I (00) have had (have) it for nearly two weeks, but I’ve had a cough for longer.

DOCTOR How long have you had that?

PATIENT I’ve had it (A) October, so more than a month. The thing is,
   I (1) have (have) about five colds (B) the spring.

DOCTOR That is a lot. (2) (you / have) a lot of colds last year, too?

PATIENT No, not really. I think I (3) have (have) only two all last year.

DOCTOR Mmm, (4) (you / change) anything about your life this year?

PATIENT Well, yes, my job. I work in a gym now. I’m a fitness trainer.

DOCTOR I see. (C) have you worked there?

PATIENT I (5) (start) the job in March, so I’ve been there (D) eight months. We’ve had a few customers with colds I suppose ...

DOCTOR I see. And what was your job before?

PATIENT I was a gardener. I worked by myself.

DOCTOR Well, that’s it. You (6) spend a lot of time close to people with colds, and you’ve caught their colds. Now, I think you should ...

Go online for more practice and a progress test

131
## Present perfect or past simple?

### Use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to talk now about finished actions in the past, when we don’t know the time or it isn’t important:</td>
<td>to talk now about finished actions that happened at a definite time in the past:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I’ve been to that beach before.</em></td>
<td><em>I went to that beach last summer.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>James has worked at the gym for two years.</em></td>
<td><em>James worked at the gym for two years.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>= He is working there now.</td>
<td>= He isn’t working there now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to talk about one or more finished actions in a time period that is still continuing:</td>
<td>to talk about finished actions in a time period that is past:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>We’ve had three yoga lessons this month.</em></td>
<td><em>We had three yoga lessons in July.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>this month</em></td>
<td><em>July – August</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with time expressions: ever, never, just, yet, already, since, for, this week/month/year</td>
<td>with time expressions: yesterday, in the summer/June/2007, ago, last week/month/year, for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ It is sometimes difficult to hear /v/ in *I’ve, we’ve, you’ve, they’ve* and /s/ in *he’s* and *she’s*.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I finished work.</em></td>
<td><em>I’ve finished work.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>He started early.</em></td>
<td><em>He’s started early.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>We carried the bags.</em></td>
<td><em>We’ve carried the bags.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The other words around the verb can usually help you to understand which form you hear:  
*I finished work an hour ago.*  
*I’ve finished my work.*
Practice

1 Match each sentence 1–4 with A or B.

0 Emma has lived with us for two years.
   A She’s still living with us.
   B She doesn’t live with us anymore.

1 Kieran lived in Tokyo for six months.
   A He still lives there.
   B He doesn’t live there now.

2 I didn’t go to the Tutankhamun exhibition when it was on.
   A It’s finished and I missed it.
   B I am planning to visit it soon.

3 I haven’t seen Alex this morning.
   A It’s too late to see him now.
   B I hope I will see him before the morning ends.

4 Lucy has been to Toronto.
   A She’s still in Toronto.
   B She went there for a holiday in 2007.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the text. 3.25 Listen and check.

ACTION TOURS is a small, friendly company and we (0) **have provided** provided many different specialist activity holidays for people since we started. We (1) **have begun** began in 2006 with only two types of holiday, but we (2) **have grown** grew every year since then and can now offer a wide range of tours.

Our most popular holidays are skiing and cycling. Our main ski trainer, Jules, (3) **has taught** taught skiing for nearly twenty years. Suraya is our cycling tour leader—she (4) **has taken** took part in the National Championships three times and she (5) **has finished** finished fifth last year.

This year we (6) **have organised** organised over twenty activity holidays—already more than we (7) **have done** did last year, when we (8) **have provided** provided a total of eighteen. Take a look at our website ... 

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation. Use the verbs in the correct tense. 3.26 Listen and check.

OFFICIAL  Here are the details. Now, (0) **have you entered** (you / enter) a long-distance swimming race before?

DARRYL  Yes, (1) .................................. (I / have). (2) ......................... (I / do) two.

OFFICIAL  When (3) .................................. (you / do) those?

DARRYL  In 2005 and 2008.

OFFICIAL  And (4) .................................. (you / complete) both of them?

DARRYL  Yes, (5) ................................. (I / do). I (6) ......................... (finish) them both easily.

OFFICIAL  Good. Now, let’s talk about your training for this race ...

4 Use the words below to write information about yourself.

1 join a club? / kind of club? / member since? / why join?
   I’ve joined a tennis club. I’ve been a member since July. I joined it because I love tennis!

2 go on an activity holiday? / kind of holiday? / when? / where to?

3 ever visited a foreign country? / how many? / where?
Present perfect continuous

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>+ been + -ing verb</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>+ been + -ing verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/We/You/They</td>
<td>have (ve)</td>
<td>been waiting.</td>
<td>have not (haven’t)</td>
<td>been waiting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>has (‘s)</td>
<td></td>
<td>has not (hasn’t)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
<th>SHORT ANSWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have</td>
<td>I/we/you/they have been waiting? Yes, I/we/you/they have. No, I/we/you/they haven’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has</td>
<td>he/she/it has been waiting? Yes, he/she/it has. No, he/she/it hasn’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We form the present perfect continuous with have + been + the -ing form of the verb.

2 Use

We use the present perfect continuous to talk about an action or situation that started in the past and is still happening now. We often use for and since with the present perfect continuous:

I’ve been waiting in this queue for three hours!

It is different from the present perfect because we usually use the continuous for a temporary action or situation, not for a situation that we think is permanent.

Compare:

present continuous → present perfect continuous (temporary)
I’m training for the race. I’ve been training for it for six months.
Are you waiting for the bus? Yes, I’ve been waiting for it for an hour/since three o’clock.

present simple → present perfect (permanent)
I live in Istanbul. I’ve lived there for twenty years.
‘Do you know Alan?’ ‘Yes, I’ve known him all my life.’

We often use the present perfect continuous to explain a present situation:

‘They look tired.’ ‘Well, they’ve been running for more than two hours.’
‘Your Spanish is good.’ ‘Thanks, I’ve been studying it for two years now.’

✗ I live here for five months. ✓ I’ve been living here for five months.

| Pronunciation ➤ 1.21 |
Practice

1 Use the words below to write sentences. Use the present perfect continuous and short forms.

0 I / drive / for three hours .................................................. I've been driving for three hours.
1 We / wait / since two o'clock ...................................................
2 Carola / not / sleep / well ......................................................
3 you / revise / for your exam? ..................................................
4 They / build / a new gym ......................................................
5 How long / he / work there? ..................................................
6 You / not / listen / to me! ......................................................

2 Look at the pictures. Complete the conversations with verbs from the box. Use short forms.

cook shop talk travel wait work

0 'We haven't seen Michael for some time.'
   'No, he ..........................................................'

1 'The kitchen's a bit untidy!'
   'Mmm, I ...................................................... all afternoon.'

2 'You look really tired.'
   'I ...................................................... all night.'

3 'The buses are terrible these days, aren't they?'
   'Yes, I .................................................. for forty minutes.'

4 'Can I have some money for the cinema?'
   'Sorry, I ................................................... I haven't got any!'

5 'You've been on the phone for hours!'
   'I ...................................................... to my friends.'

3 Write sentences about the situations. Use the present perfect continuous and for/since.

Listen and check.

0 They started playing tennis at two o'clock.
   It's now five-thirty and they're still playing the same game! (since)
   They've been playing the same game of tennis since two o'clock.

1 I started learning Chinese when I was fifteen. Now I'm seventeen. (for)

2 Our friends came to stay with us on Sunday, and they're still here. (since)

3 It started raining yesterday afternoon and it still hasn't stopped. (since)

4 Graham started looking for a new job six months ago. He still hasn't found one. (for)
Present perfect or present perfect continuous?

1 General uses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT PERFECT</th>
<th>PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>for an action that happened a short time ago and has a result now: He's broken his leg (and can't play football today).</td>
<td>to explain a present situation: He's muddy because he's been playing football.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for a finished action in the past, to answer How much/many?: We've played six games.</td>
<td>for an action that is still continuing or has just finished, to answer How long?: We've been playing since nine o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for a situation that is still continuing, and that we think is permanent, usually with for or since: The castle has stood here for 800 years.</td>
<td>for a situation that is still continuing, and that we think is temporary, usually with for or since: I've been standing in this queue for forty minutes!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Uses with some verbs

We can use some verbs (e.g. live, work, teach, study with for or since) in the present perfect or present perfect continuous. They mean almost the same:
We've lived in this house since we got married.
or We've been living in this house since we got married.

Philip has taught geography at Durham University for fifteen years.
or Philip has been teaching geography at Durham University for fifteen years.

We don't use the present perfect continuous with some verbs (e.g. understand, know, want, be). We use the present perfect:
X Carly has been knowing Jason for two years.
✓ Carly has known Jason for two years.
X I've been being much happier recently.
✓ I've been much happier recently.

Verbs that don't use the continuous form ➤ Unit 41.2
Practice

1 Match the question to the correct answer, A or B. For one question, both answers are correct. 

0 Where's the bus?  A No idea. We've waited for over an hour!  B No idea. We've been waiting for over an hour!

1 These cookies are delicious! Do you make them yourself?  A Yes, I've made about 50 of them today!  B Yes, I've been making about 50 of them today!

2 Where does your brother live? A In New York at the moment. He's lived there for nearly two months.  B In New York at the moment. He's been living there for nearly two months.

3 Have you met Teresa?  A Yes, we've known each other all our lives.  B Yes, we've been knowing each other all our lives.

4 What's wrong with your feet? A They're really sore. I've walked all day.  B They're really sore. I've been walking all day.

5 Was this an Oxfam charity event? A Yes, I've just walked 20 kilometres to raise money.  B Yes, I've just been walking 20 kilometres to raise money.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the interview. 

I'm terribly sorry I'm late, Ms Drake. Have you (0) been / been being here long?  My train was late.

OK, let's start. Why do you want to work with Camp America next summer?  I've just (2) finished / been finishing a course in sports science and since then I've (3) looked / been looking for a job with young people. And I've always (4) wanted / been wanting to go to the United States, so this is a perfect opportunity.

Right. Have you (5) had / been having any experience of this sort of work?  Not exactly, but I have three younger brothers, and I've (6) looked / been looking after them a lot in the past.

That sounds good. Now, have you (7) chosen / been choosing your main sport?  To teach, you mean? Yes, I'm a good cyclist, but I think my best sport is swimming.

That's fine, Ms Drake. I think you've (8) told / been telling me everything ...

3 Complete the conversations with verbs from the box. Use the present perfect or present perfect continuous and short forms.

call make play put read swim think

0 A Your hair's wet.  B Yes, I've been swimming in the lake.

1 A What's wrong? You look very sad.  B I ................. about my pet rabbit. It died yesterday.

2 A Have you heard from Sara?  B No, I ................. her twice today – there's no answer.

3 A Where's the car?  B It's OK. I ................. it in the garage.

4 A Why are the children so tired?  B They ................. with their cousins all day.

5 A Would you like to read this book?  B Thanks, but I ................. it before.

6 A Mmm, lovely smell!  B Yes, Phil ................. cakes all morning.

Go online for more practice and a progress test.
Review MODULE 7

Use the irregular verb list to help you complete these exercises. ➤ page 314

1 UNITS 50, 51 AND 54 Choose the correct form in italics in the conversations.

1 A I'm afraid I broke / ve broken the DVD player.
   B Oh, no! What has happened / happened?
   A I dropped / ve dropped it.
2 A I've just had / have a call from Shona.
   B Is everything OK?
   A Yes. Her plane has landed / landed early
   and she got the eleven o'clock train, so
   she'll be home soon.
3 A What's the most difficult exam you ever took / ve ever taken?
   B That's easy! My driving test.
   A When have you taken / did you take it?
   B A long time ago, when I was / ve been twen-

2 UNITS 51 AND 52 Complete the text with the words in brackets ( ). Use the present perfect without short forms.

Spurs sign Croatian Modric
TOTTENHAM HOTSPUR (0) have just announced (just / announce) that TOTTENHAM HOTSPUR (0) have just announced (just / announce) that
(1) ........................................... (they / agree) to pay over 20 million euros for
Croatian Luka Modric. The 22-year-old joined Dinamo Zagreb in 2005, and
played his first international match a year later.
(2) .................................................. (He / already / play) over 20 matches
for Croatia, and was part of the team that beat England in the race for Euro
2008. Modric (3) ........................................... (recently / have) talks with other
teams, for example Newcastle and Barcelona, but Spurs
(4) ........................................... (beat) the others to an agreement. Spurs
(5) .................................................. (agree) the contract with the player; but
(6) .......................................................... (they / not / sign / it / yet) because
Modric needs permission to work in the UK.

3 UNITS 53, 54, 55 AND 56 Choose words and phrases from the box to complete the conversation. There are four extra phrases. ➤ page 311 Listen and check.

been painting chose painting didn’t do haven’t have you been choosing have you chosen have you been doing ’s been helping ’s been studying ’ve chosen helped

A What (0) have you been doing ? There’s paint everywhere!
B I’ve (1) ........................................... Look, I’ve (2) ........................................... three walls in the living room.
A But they’re pink! Who (3) ........................................... that awful colour?
B I did. And I (4) ........................................... these colours for the bedrooms, too.

   Look – what do you think?
A Oh, dear, they’re ... Hey! Is that Justin in the other room? Why isn’t he at school?
B Because (5) he ........................................... me since lunchtime.
A But he should be at school.
B No, they’ve got some time to study at home before their exams.
(6) He ........................................... really hard all week, so he needed a break from it.
A I see. What about the bathroom, (7) ........................................... the colour for that, too?
B No, I (8) ........................................... Maybe you’d like to choose that one?
Complete the text with the correct word or phrase, A, B or C below.

LEWIS HAMILTON WAS born in January 1985 in a town in the south of England. He (0) ........... cars of one type or another since he was eight years old, and he (1) ........... since then that one day he’ll be a success.

The motor racing team McLaren noticed him when he was a young teenager, and he (2) ........... part of their young driver programme when he was thirteen. Since then he (3) ........... for McLaren teams.

Hamilton (4) ..........., successful in all the main motorsport events, including the Formula 1 World Championship. He (5) ..........., that in 2008. He (6) ..........., a lot of special motorsport prizes – he (7) ..........., three at the end of his first year in Formula 1. Hamilton moved from the UK to Switzerland in 2007 and he (8) ........... there since then.

Write a sentence about each situation. Use the past simple, present perfect or present perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets ()

0 Harry started his essay at 5.30. It’s now 11.30 and he still hasn’t finished it. (write)
Harry’s been writing his essay for six hours. / Harry’s been writing his essay since 5.30...

1 Becky moved to Milan in 2006, and she came back to England in 2008. (live)

2 Irina visited Athens in 2008 and 2009. She wants to go back there. (be)

3 Jack starts work at 8.30. It’s 9.30 now and Jack isn’t at work. (arrive)

4 I started cleaning the house two hours ago and I haven’t finished it yet. (clean)

5 Ginny’s been driving for a month. Her driving test was four weeks ago. (pass)

6 Adrian bought his car in November. It’s now June. (have)

Find the mistakes in the sentences and correct them.

0 Selina hurt her arm and can’t play tennis tonight.
1 Kevin has just been to the doctor’s. I don’t know when he’ll be back.
2 Sit down – you don’t need to do the dishes. I’ve done them yet.
3 Brian and Sally are married for thirty years and they have thirteen grandchildren.
4 Is the dentist free yet? I’ve been waiting since an hour.
5 I’ve been having three job interviews this week.
6 Mario doesn’t speak much English – he’s only learning it for six weeks.
Emma: Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. Kerry never stayed in a hotel.
   A is  B was  C has

2. They by sea several times this year.
   A travelled  B have travelled  C is travelled

3. Have you the British Museum in London?
   A ever visited  B ever visit  C never visit

4. That's the biggest cat !
   A see  B have ever seen  C saw

5. Carl says he's never Indian food.
   A ate  B eats  C eaten

6. Louisa has to the shops. She isn't back yet.
   A gone  B been  C went

7. Hey! the competition! I've just had a letter in the post!
   A won  B 've won  C win

8. Two trains have crashed near London. They each other at 150 kph.
   A have hit  B were hitting  C hit

9. Don't feed the dog. I've
   A done it yet  B already done it  C done already it

10. 'Is Mary here?' 'No, she .'
    A hasn't arrived yet  B yet hasn't arrived  C has arrived yet

11. Oliver hasn't seen his daughter .
    A since two years  B two years ago  C for two years

12. 'Do you know Portugal?' 'Well, we to Lisbon.
    We went there last year.'
    A went  B 've been  C 've gone

13. on a farm during the summer last year.
    A worked  B have worked  C work

14. Have you had breakfast ?
    A yesterday  B an hour ago  C this morning

15. We've been in this house for six months.
    A lived  B living  C live

16. The weather's awful. It all morning, and it's still raining.
    A rained  B 's raining  C 's been raining

17. English for five years so I'm in the advanced class now.
    A study  B 've been studying  C 'm studying

18. I have to finish my history homework! I all evening but it's
    A 'm writing  B 've written  C 've been writing

19. you five times to clean your room! Now do it!
    A 've asked  B ask  C 've been asking

20. Come back, Beth! You your mobile phone.
    A 've forgotten  B 've been forgetting  C forget
Before you start

1 Read the telephone conversation. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

MANAGER I'm in a traffic jam so I think I'm going to be late for work. Have I got a lot of appointments this morning?

SECRETARY Yes. You're seeing the sales director at ten o'clock.

MANAGER I don't think I'll be there in time.

SECRETARY OK. I'll phone him and change the appointment.

MANAGER What about the marketing meeting?

SECRETARY It's at eleven-thirty and everyone's having lunch afterwards.

MANAGER OK. Is there anything else?

SECRETARY Yes. The managing director wants to see you.

MANAGER OK. I'll phone him when I get to the office. What about the problem with my laptop computer?

SECRETARY Don't worry. I'm going to see the technician tomorrow.

Monday 12 April
8.00 9.00 10.00
sales director
marketing meeting
lunch with marketing team

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 The sky is very dark. I think it's raining / going to rain later.
2 'What are your plans for the weekend?'
   'I'll see / I'm going to see my cousins in Cambridge.'
3 'It's very dark in here.'
   'OK. I'll / I'm going to turn on the light.'
4 Sorry, Clare. I don't think I'll / think I will not have time to see you today.
5 Hurry up! The meeting will be / is at 11.00 and it's already 10.55.
6 We want to be in town early tomorrow so we're taking / we take the early train to London Bridge.
7 I'll phone you when I get / will get to the airport.
8 I've got the tickets. We'll sit / 're sitting in the front row!

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

Unit 57
Unit 57
Unit 58
Unit 58
Unit 59
Unit 59
Unit 59
Unit 60

Go online for a full diagnostic test

141
### 1 Form

**POSITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am (‘m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>is (‘s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We/You/They</td>
<td>are (‘re)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NEGATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am not (‘m not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>is not (isn’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We/You/They</td>
<td>are not (aren’t)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**QUESTIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>we/you/they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SHORT ANSWERS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am</td>
<td>Yes, I am.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Yes, he/she/it is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>Yes, we/you/they are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m not</td>
<td>No, I’m not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isn’t</td>
<td>No, he/she/it isn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aren’t</td>
<td>No, we/you/they aren’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Future plans

We use *going to* to talk about our future plans:

- I’m going to apply for a new job.
- Carol isn’t going to be at the meeting.
- Are you going to come to the party?

We often use time expressions (e.g. tomorrow, next week, on Monday) with *going to*:

- I’m going to see Manchester United on Saturday.
- They’re not going to have a summer holiday this year.
- What are you going to do this evening?

**NATURAL ENGLISH** It is possible to use *going to + go/come*:

- I’m going to go shopping this afternoon.

But the present continuous (► Unit 59) is more common:

- I’m going shopping this afternoon.
- I’m coming to London on Tuesday.

### 3 Things we expect to happen

We also use *going to* to talk about things we expect to happen in the future because of something we know or can see NOW:

- I’m not going to finish this copying by three o’clock! (because it’s 2.51 and there’s a lot to do)
- I’m going to be late for work. (because I’m in a traffic jam now)
- It’s going to rain. (because the sky is dark and full of clouds now)

**Future with will ► Unit 58**

In informal conversation and in songs we often pronounce *going to* as ‘gonna’ /gənə/.
Practice

1. Complete the sentences with a form of going to and a verb from the box. Use short forms.

**Listen and check.**

- be
- break down
- eat
- hit

0. ‘When I grow up, I’m going to be... a singer.’
1. ‘Watch out! We’re going to... that tree!’
2. ‘I’m going to... here – it’s too expensive.’
3. ‘Everyone uses this photocopier – it’s going to...’

2. Write the words in the correct order. **Listen and check.**

0. going to are see that new film you? _Are you going to see that new film?_
1. not at anything the shops going to buy today I’m
2. visit us your sister is going to next weekend?
3. the exam take the children going to aren’t this year
4. they our party are going to to some friends bring?
5. tonight isn’t rain it going to

3. **Grammar in Use.** Read Debbie’s email and the statements below. Do you think the statements are true (T) or false (F)?

**Subject: Work is boring!**

Hi Tess,

I’m writing this from work. As usual there’s nothing for me to do. It’s so boring here. I know this company isn’t making very much money at the moment so I don’t think it has a very good future. The manager doesn’t like me very much, and I really don’t like any of my colleagues. In fact I think I might look on the Internet and see if there are any other jobs around here.

See you soon,
Debbie

0. Debbie’s going to stay in this job for several years. _F_
1. The manager is going to give Debbie a pay increase. _F_
2. Debbie’s going to look for another job. _F_
3. The company is going to be successful in the future. _F_
4. Debbie’s going to make some good friends in the office. _F_
58 Future with will

In the future people will live and work in space.

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>(He/She/It/We/You/They will ('ll) win.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NEGATIVE</td>
<td>(He/She/It/We/You/They will not (won't) win.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUESTIONS</td>
<td>Will (He/she/it/We/you/they win?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHORT ANSWERS</td>
<td>Yes, (He/she/it/We/you/they will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No, (He/she/it/We/you/they will not (won't).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Certain/possible future

We use will to talk about things that are certain to happen in the future:

My mother will be fifty in May.

There will be elections next year.

China will soon be the world's richest country.

We also use will to say what we think will happen in the future:

In the future people will live and work in space.

Clare won't be late, she's always on time.

We can use probably and definitely to say how sure we are:

I'll definitely pass the test. (I'm sure this will happen.)

We'll probably go to Spain next summer. (I think this will happen, but I'm not sure.)

We usually put these adverbs after will but before won't:

We'll probably go to Spain. We definitely won't go to Portugal.

3 Decisions, offers, promises and warnings

We use will when we decide to do something while we are speaking – something that we didn't plan:

'Mr Baxter isn't here at the moment. Can I take a message?' 'No thanks. I'll call again later.'

'Do you want to watch the midnight movie?' 'No, I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed now.'

NATURAL ENGLISH We use I (don't) think + will:

I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed now.

It's quite early. I don't think I'll go to bed yet.

We also use will to make offers, promises and warnings:

We'll take you to the hospital. I'll work harder next year. Don't eat so much – you'll get fat!

Leave now or you'll miss the train.

4 shall

It is possible to use shall to mean will after I and we. But in everyday English we only use shall to offer or suggest something:

It's hot in here. Shall I open a window? Shall we get the earlier train?
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with will and words from the box.

0 My grandfather ... will be ... ninety years old next April.
1 This year the summer sales ... a week earlier than usual.
2 ... the same course next year?
3 Next year the school holiday ... for seven weeks instead of six.
4 I'm afraid the library ... open during the holiday.
5 ... a certificate when you pass the exam.

2 The words in brackets () are missing from the sentences. Put them in the correct position.

0 Do you/Clare will win the race? (think)
1 Miss Watts, we have any homework tonight? (will)
2 I will start a diet next month. (definitely)
3 I think I'll have any ice cream today. (don't)
4 Manchester United will win the cup this year. (probably)
5 Don't buy any food at the airport – it cost a fortune. ('ll)
6 You can try phoning her this evening but I don't she will be at home. (think)

3 Match the two parts of the sentences. Then complete the sentences with will, 'll or won't.

0 Don't eat so many cakes – you ...
1 I'm really hungry – I think I ...
2 Eat lots of salads – they ...
3 The sun's shining and it definitely ...
4 I don't think people ...
5 Take a warm pullover; it ...
6 I'm thirsty so I think I ...

A ... have a snack.
B ... be cold there.
C ... make you fat.
D ... rain today.
E ... have a lemonade.
F 'll ... get fat.
G ... ever live on the moon.

4 What would you say in these situations? Complete the sentences with suitable forms of the words and phrases in the box. There are two extra words/ phrases.

close carry get open phone some more the door the technician the window them for you

0 I don't think there's any coffee left. I ... ... some more.
1 It's too hot in here. I ...
2 Those books look heavy. I ...
3 There's something wrong with my computer. I think I ...

Go online for more practice
Future with present continuous and present simple

1 Present continuous
We use the present continuous to talk about things that we have already arranged to do:
I’m giving a talk at the sales meeting next Wednesday.
David sent me a text message. He’s meeting us at six o’clock.
‘What are you doing this weekend?’ ‘I’m going to the theatre.’
We usually give the time/period or date:
I’m seeing the dentist at half-past eleven on Thursday.

NATURAL ENGLISH We often use the present continuous to give the reason why we can’t do something in the future:
‘Can you come to lunch on Sunday?’
I’m afraid I can’t come. I’m working on Sunday.’
Form and use of the present continuous ➔ Unit 39

2 Present simple
We can use the present simple with a time or date to talk about future events that are on a timetable or programme:
The train leaves London at 10.25 and arrives in Bristol at 11.50. It stops in Swindon at 11.15.
‘When do your classes finish?’
‘They finish on December the 5th.’

We don’t use the present simple for things we have arranged to do; we use the present continuous or going to:
✗ We meet our friends this evening. ✔ We’re meeting our friends this evening.
Form and use of the present simple ➔ Unit 37

3 after, when, as soon as, etc.
We use the present simple not will to talk about the future after when, as soon as, before, after and until:
✗ As soon as I will get there I’ll phone you. ✔ As soon as I get there, I’ll phone you.
✗ I’ll see you when I’ll arrive. ✔ I’ll see you when I arrive.
Linking words for future time ➔ Unit 94.2
Practice

1  GRAMMAR IN USE  Look at Lucy’s business diary for next week.
Complete the conversation with the present continuous of the verbs in brackets ( ).
Then write the missing information, A–C in Lucy’s diary. 03.36 Listen and check.

JAN   Hi, Lucy. Can we arrange a meeting for next week?

LUCY  Of course. How about Tuesday morning?
I (0) ...  (not do) anything then.

JAN   That’s no good for me, I’m afraid.
Are you free in the afternoon?

LUCY  No. We (1) .................. (have) a special sales
meeting then.

JAN   Well, I’m free on Thursday morning.

LUCY  Sorry, I (2) ..................  (go) to the dentist then.
How about Thursday afternoon?

JAN   No, our office manager (3) .................. (give) a
talk. (4) .................. (you do) anything on Friday?

LUCY  I’m afraid I’m busy. I (5) ..................  (fly) to
Stockholm to meet some clients. Look, I
(6) ..................  (not work) on Monday. But I can
come into the office if it’s important.

JAN   Yes, it’s quite important. The accounts manager (7) ..................  (come)
to see me in the morning but I (8) ..................  (not do) anything in the afternoon.

LUCY  OK. Let’s meet on Monday afternoon then.

2  Read the information about Lucy’s trip to Sweden on Friday. Complete the questions and
answers. Use only one word or a short form in each space. 03.37 Listen and check.

08.30  departure flight SA109 from London Heathrow, Terminal 4
11.40  arrival flight SA109 in Stockholm
12.00  start of meeting at Svenska Hotel
15.00  give talk to clients

1 When ............. Lucy’s flight leave? It ................. at half past ..................
2 ................. the flight go from Terminal one? No, it ..................
4 Is Lucy ................. at the Hilton Hotel? No, she .................
5 What ................. Lucy doing at three o’clock? She is ................. a talk.

3  Find four more mistakes in the sentences and correct them. Tick (√) the correct sentence.

after the film finishes, we’ll go for a snack.

1 Jane can’t come to the meeting because she goes on holiday tomorrow.
2 The timetable says that the train arrives in Edinburgh at 10.30.
3 We meet some friends at a restaurant this evening. Would you like to come, too?
4 I’ll send you a text message when we’ll arrive at the hotel.
5 We stay in a beach house in Greece next summer.
60 Comparing future forms

1 Possible/certain future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>will</th>
<th>going to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>for talking about what we think will happen:</td>
<td>for talking about something we are sure will happen because we can see it now:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t think Kirsty will stay here long. She doesn’t like her job.</td>
<td>Jack’s going to talk to the manager. Do you know what it’s about?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Plans and arrangements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>going to</th>
<th>PRESENT CONTINUOUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>for talking about things we plan to do but have not arranged yet:</td>
<td>for talking about future things we have already arranged:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m going to get a job this summer.</td>
<td>Mr Gaafur has given me a job. I’m working in his office this summer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(This is my plan, but I haven’t arranged it yet.)

(This is an arrangement, Mr Gaafur has already given me a job.)

**NATURAL ENGLISH** When we ask someone about their plans for the evening or the weekend (the near future), it is more common to use the present continuous than going to:

- **What are you doing** this weekend?
- **Are you doing** anything tonight?

3 Immediate decisions

⚠️ We use *will* for immediate decisions, not the present simple or going to:

- OK. I get the torch.
- The light isn’t working.
- OK. I’m going to get the torch.
- OK. I’ll get the torch.

Compare going to for plans and will for immediate decisions:

- ‘My football shirt’s dirty.’
- ‘Don’t worry. I’m going to do some washing this afternoon so I’ll put your shirt in the machine.’

(I’ve already planned to do some washing.)
Practice

1 Match the sentences 1 and 2 with A and B.

0 1 It will probably stop working soon.  A I can see smoke coming from it.
   2 That machine's going to stop working.  B It was very cheap.

1 1 It'll rain today.  A I can see lots of dark clouds.
   2 It's going to rain today.  B It always rains on my birthday!

2 1 Marco will be the manager one day.  A I've just had an email from the office.
   2 Marco's going to be our new manager.  B He's a very good worker.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation. Use the verbs in the box with will or going to. Use short forms.  3.38 Listen and check.

CARRIE Have you got any plans for the weekend?
ZACK Not really. I (0) ...am going to wait... until my sister arrives. I'm not sure what she wants to do.

CARRIE She (1) ................. the weekend here, isn't she?
ZACK Yes. She (2) .................. me all her holiday photos.

CARRIE Well, if the weather's good tomorrow, you can go for a nice walk.
ZACK Yes, but look at those dark clouds. It (3) ............... tonight.

CARRIE Maybe. I (4) .................. on the Internet and see what they say about tomorrow's weather. Oh, what's that noise?
ZACK I think there's someone at the door.
CARRIE I (5) .................. it. ... It's a letter for you. What is it?
ZACK I (6) .................. it now. Oh, it's our concert tickets. Marek's ticket is here as well. I (7) .................. him now and tell him.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the email. Use the verbs in brackets () with will or in the present continuous.  3.39 Listen and check.

Hi Danny,
I'm so excited that you (0) ...are coming... (come) with us on the Highlands tour tomorrow! The bus (1) .................. (pick us up) at eight, so make sure you're up in time. Don't worry about breakfast because we (2) .................. (stop) at a motorway café at nine o'clock, so we can eat then. I don't know exactly what is included in this tour, but I think we (3) .................. (probably / see) at least three or four castles - they're on the website. I know we (4) .................. (visit) Loch Ness because I saw it on the programme. We might see the monster! In fact, according to the programme, we (5) .................. (spend) half an hour at the Loch Ness Monster exhibition in the afternoon. It often rains in the Highlands at this time of year so it (6) .................. (probably / rain) tomorrow, but I (7) .................. (not take) an umbrella - I don't want to carry it around all day! I don't know what time the tour ends but it (8) .................. (be) dark by seven o'clock, so I think we (9) .................. (be) home by then.
See you tomorrow. Michaela X
1 UNIT 57, 58 AND 60 Complete the conversations with will or going to and the verbs in brackets (). Use short forms.

0 A It’s getting really cold. B Yes. I’m sure it will snow. (snow).
1 A Do you have my mobile number? B I’m not sure. I haven’t checked. (check).
2 A Look at that beautiful blue sky! B Yes. It’s going to be a lovely day. (be)
3 A I’m terribly thirsty. I’d love a glass of water. B I’ll get you one from the kitchen. (get)
4 A Have you found a new flat yet? B No, but we’re going to look at a few more next week. (look)
5 A Excuse me. Is this jacket in the sale? B I’m not sure. I'll ask the manager. (ask)

2 UNIT 57, 58 AND 59 Match the sentences 1–5 with A or B.

0 I think we’re going to buy a new car. A We’ve already chosen the model. B We haven’t chosen the model yet.
1 Kristin arrives at six o’clock. A She is walking here. B She is coming by train.
2 Look, Xavier’s going to win the race! A He’s in front of the other runners. B He’s a good runner.
3 Debbie’s taking her guitar onto the plane. A The airline has given her permission. B She’s going to ask for permission.
4 The sale ends on January 25th. A I think this is true, but I’m not sure. B This is a fact.
5 Petro’s coming to the opera with us. A I’ve bought a ticket for him. B He loves opera.

3 UNIT 58 AND 59 Choose the correct words in italics in the text.

At 9 a.m. next Monday an exciting exhibition called ‘The Office of the Future’ opens is going to open at the Brighton Conference Centre. The exhibition will show will be will is opening hundreds of new inventions that could change the way people work.

The office of the future?

DOUG STEVENSON, THE EXHIBITION ORGANISER, says that large offices full of hundreds of workers probably won’t exist will not exist probably exist in the future. Many people work at home but they go into the office for meetings. In the future this will not be will be necessary because you will be able to do everything from your own living rooms. With new technology it is being will is going to be possible to have meetings on your computer. Your computer is going to show will show moving images of your colleagues and business partners. As soon as you turn turn it on, you will see your colleagues, and you will think they are standing in the room next to you!

If you want to find out more about these developments, Mr Stevenson gives is giving a talk in the exhibition hall on Wednesday. After the talk will finish will finish you will be able to look at the newest computer software from California.
4 ALL UNITS Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words.

0 I want to visit Venice sometime in the future.
   One day I’m .................. Venice.

1 My birthday is on 26 September.
   I ......................... 25 years old on 26 September next year.

2 Which hotel did you book for us?
   Which hotel .................. at?

3 Do you plan to take the car to the garage?
   Are ......................... take the car to the garage?

4 Gerald won’t win that race – that’s my opinion.
   I ......................... Gerald will win that race.

5 It’s usually very sunny at this time of year.
   It ......................... rain today.

6 You will receive an email tomorrow.
   Please contact us when this happens.
   You should contact us as soon as ......................... the email.

5 ALL UNITS There are five more mistakes in the conversation. Find and correct them.

Listen and check.

CUSTOMER Excuse me. Do you give a discount to business customers?

ASSISTANT I’m afraid I don’t know. I’m asking the manager. Mr Davies, can you help?

MANAGER Of course. What do you want to know, sir?

CUSTOMER Yes. I work for DataFlow and we open a new branch near here soon.
   We’re going need lots of office equipment. Can you give us a good discount?

MANAGER Well, it depends on how much you spend each month.

CUSTOMER Well, we’ll spend probably about 500 euros a month.

MANAGER Oh, that’s fine – we’re giving you a 20% discount. As soon as you will fill in this form, we’ll open a business account for you.

6 ALL UNITS Read the information. Then complete the email. Use forms of the verbs in the box.

come  do  finish  phone  sit  start  want

Subject: Petrov Ballet

Hi Alison

Great news! I know you love the theatre. Well, the Royal Theatre Company (0) .................. here next month. I looked at their website this morning and booked three tickets for Wednesday 14th – they’re really good seats – we (1) ................. in the third row. (2) ............ you .......... anything on that day? Would you like to come with me and Bob? The show (3) .................. at 7.30 so you could meet us outside the theatre after work. Of course Bob is always hungry so he (4) .............. probably .......... to get something to eat after the show (5) .................. We could try that new Chinese place near the theatre. I (6) ................. them and see if I can book a table. Let me know if you want to come. Hedda x
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. Are you ............ her a present?
   A going buy  B going to buy  C going to buying
   ➤ Unit 57

2. The children ............ come with us this year.
   A going not  B aren't going  C aren't going to
   ➤ Unit 57

3. When I grow up I ............ an artist.
   A will being  B am  C 'm going to be
   ➤ Unit 57

4. The floor is very wet. He ............
   A falls over  B 's going to fall over  C is falling over
   ➤ Unit 57

5. The train is delayed so I ............ late for work.
   A 'm going to be  B 'm being  C 's going to be
   ➤ Unit 57

6. There's no moon so it ............ very dark tonight.
   A 'm going to be  B will being  C 's going to be
   ➤ Unit 57

7. My father ............ fifty next Wednesday.
   A is being  B will to be  C will be
   ➤ Unit 58

8. I'm not hungry. I ............ have any lunch today.
   A think I not will  B don't think I'll  C don't think to
   ➤ Unit 58

9. ‘It's very cold in here.’ ‘OK, I ............ the heating.’
   A 'm going to turn on  B 'll turn on  C will turning on
   ➤ Unit 58

10. Don’t touch the cooker. You ............ yourself.
    A 'll burn  B are going to  C burn
    ➤ Unit 58

11. ‘Do you want to go out this evening?’
    ‘No, I can’t. I ............ Steve with his homework.’
    A will help  B 'm helping  C help
    ➤ Unit 59

12. The flight to New York ............ at 17.05.
    A leaves  B is going to leave  C will leaving
    ➤ Unit 59

13. I’m so excited. We ............ our cousins from Canada tomorrow.
    A see  B seeing  C 're seeing
    ➤ Unit 59

14. As soon as I ............ any news, I’ll phone you.
    A hear  B will hear  C am going to hear
    ➤ Unit 59

15. Don’t start eating until I ............ there.
    A will get  B am getting  C get
    ➤ Unit 59

16. This queue is enormous. We ............ here for a long time!
    A 're going to be  B are being  C are
    ➤ Unit 60

17. When we get to the top of the hill, I ............ some photos.
    A 'm taking  B 'm going to take  C take
    ➤ Unit 60

18. Thanks for booking a restaurant for Dad's birthday. Where ............?
    A do we go  B will we go  C are we going
    ➤ Unit 60

19. ‘What’s the dentist’s phone number?’
    ‘I don’t know, I ............ in the phone book.’
    A 'll look  B 'm going to look  C look
    ➤ Unit 60

20. ‘Look, my suit’s dirty!’ ‘OK, I ............ it to the dry cleaner’s this afternoon.’
    A am taking  B 'll take  C 'm going to take
    ➤ Unit 60
Before you start

1 Read the information and Ethan's conversation with his teacher. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

All-Uk Schools' Swimming Championships

Does your school have a brilliant swimmer? Can he/she swim like a fish? This might be your chance to win a place at the European Schools' Championships.

All schools of 500+ students can enter. Schools should enter teams of twelve swimmers.

Applications must arrive by 31 January.

Mr Hawkins, can I be in the school swimming team? I'm not sure, Ethan. I haven't chosen the team yet. But could you remember me when you choose it, please?

But you're doing important exams this year.

Will you be able to spend enough time at the pool?

Yes, I'll have to go early in the morning, but that's fine.

Well, you are a good swimmer, Ethan, but I need to think carefully about it. You mustn't get too excited.

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 My brother can / cans play football really well.
2 Will I can / be able to speak French after the course?
3 It's a great club. Can / Do we join it, please?
4 Good morning, Mr Leigh. May / Could you leave your keys with me, please?
5 Justin has a lot to do tomorrow. He needs / needs to get up early.
6 Visitors must / must to leave their bags in the cloakroom.
7 I won't have a lot of money at college so I'll have to / had to be careful.
8 You should to / should complete the form carefully.
9 That film will / might be interesting, but I'm not sure.

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

Go online for a full diagnostic test
61 can/can't

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/He/She/It/We/You/They</td>
<td>can run.</td>
<td>cannot (can't) run.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
<th>SHORT ANSWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can I/he/she/it/we/you/they run?</td>
<td>Yes, I/he/she/it/we/you/they can.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, I/he/she/it/we/you/they can't.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modal verbs are different from main verbs.

⚠️ We use the infinitive without to after them:
× We can to come to your party. ✓ We can come to your party.

⚠️ We don’t add -s after he/she/it:
× Marek can swim. ✓ Marek can swim.

⚠️ We do not use do/don’t to form questions and negatives:
× Do you can drive? ✓ Can you drive?
× I can’t can speak Spanish. ✓ I can’t speak Spanish.

Past and future forms of can/can’t ➔ Unit 62

Pronunciation ➔ 1.24

2 Use

We use can/can’t

• to talk about ability in the present:
  Usain Bolt can run really fast.
  I can speak Spanish perfectly.
  Young children can’t understand difficult ideas.

• to say if something is possible or allowed in the present:
  We can watch the race on my mobile phone. (= It is possible for us to watch the race.)
  Can I use this mobile phone in the USA? (= Is it possible for me to use it?)
  Students can use dictionaries in the exam. (= It is allowed.)
  You can’t drive in the UK until you are seventeen. (= You are not allowed to drive.)

• for making an arrangement:
  The doctor can see you tomorrow at 10.30.
  Can you meet me here at nine o’clock on Sunday?
Practice

1 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the text with *can* or *can’t*. Listen and check.

YOUNG PEOPLE WANTED FOR COMPETITION!

(o) *Can*... you sing? (1) .......... you play a musical instrument? (2) .......... you tell jokes?

Do you watch competitions and think ‘They (3) ........... sing very well.

I (4) .......... do better than that!’?

Whatever you do, you (5) .......... find a way to become famous on the stage.

You (6) .......... enter the competition by phone or by email.

Just contact us and tell us what you (7) .......... do.

We will then invite the lucky people to perform for us.

Please note: we (8) .......... answer every email or phone call, so if you don’t hear from us in three weeks, it means we haven’t chosen you this time.

2 Find five more mistakes in the sentences and correct them. Tick (√) the correct sentence.

I 0 I don’t *can* open my suitcase without the key.
1 Jack *cans* come with us to the cinema.
2 Ms Wilkes can’t see you tomorrow afternoon at two.
3 We *can* get tickets for the concert online.
4 Does Sue *can* speak Spanish well?
5 Can you to stay after the class for a few minutes?
6 My grandfather *can’t* see very well.

3 Write questions or positive (+)/negative (−) sentences with *can* or *can’t*.
Use the words below to help you. Listen and check.

0 I / leave my suitcase here / for an hour (?) *Can I leave my suitcase here for an hour?*
00 I / come with you tomorrow (−) *I can’t come with you tomorrow."
000 your friend / stay at my house (+) *Your friend can stay at my house.*
1 Sarah / call me later (?) ............................................................... 2 you / use dollars / in this store (−) ............................................................... 3 you / call the doctor from my office (+) ............................................................... 4 you / use mobile phones here (−) ............................................................... 5 I / speak to the manager (?) ............................................................... 6 Fran / make a really good curry (+) ............................................................... 7 Sandy / afford a new car (−) ............................................................... 8 Owen / speak Welsh (?) ............................................................... 4 Write four sentences about what you can and can’t do.

0 *I can’t drive a car.* ............................................................... 1 ............................................................... 3 ............................................................... 2 ...............................................................
62 could, will be able to

1 Past form and use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/He/She/It/We/You/They</td>
<td>could run.</td>
<td>could not (couldn’t) run.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**QUESTIONS**

| Could I/He/She/It/We/You/They run? | Yes, I/He/She/It/We/You/They could. No, I/He/She/It/We/You/They couldn’t. |

We usually use could/couldn’t

- to talk about ability in the past:
  *Mozart could write beautiful music when he was a child.*
  *Could my great-grandmother run really fast?*

- to say if something was possible in the past:
  *Children could play in the streets years ago.*
  *Women couldn’t enter competitions like the Olympics then.*

2 Future form and use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/He/She/It/We/You/They</td>
<td>will be able to run.</td>
<td>will not (won’t) be able to run.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**QUESTIONS**

| Will I/He/She/It/We/You/They be able to run? | Yes, I/He/She/It/We/You/They will. No, I/He/She/It/We/You/They won’t. |

We use will/won’t be able to

- to talk about ability in the future:
  *Karen will be able to speak Russian after two years in Moscow.*
  *I’ve broken my leg – I won’t be able to drive for weeks.*

- to say if something will be possible in the future:
  *We’ll be able to swim every day at the hotel.*
  *Will you be able to get a good job after your technology course?*
Practice

1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Choose the correct words in italics in the interview. Listen and check.
A So you’re interested in the translation job. Can you speak Spanish perfectly?
B Well, I (0) able to / could when I was at university, but that was a long time ago.
A I’m taking a course so I (1) will be able to / can speak it very well again soon.
B OK. I’ll give you our test, but I (2) couldn’t / won’t be able to recommend you for the job if you don’t pass it.
A I understand that. Will I (3) can / be able to take the test soon?
B Let’s see … (4) will you be able / can you to come back next Tuesday at four o’clock?
A No, I’m afraid I (5) will / won’t. I collect the children from school at that time.
B That’s OK, we can arrange another time. Now, how are your computer skills?
B Well, I (6) can’t / couldn’t use a computer six months ago, but I’ve learnt now.
A I (7) could / can type really fast when I was a student, and I’m sure I (8) can / will be able to learn the other things really quickly.

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the text with phrases from the box. Listen and check.

```plaintext
could dive  could enter  could practise  could walk  couldn’t dive  couldn’t surprise
```

**NOT LONG AGO** Tom Daley (0) could walk through the streets in his town and no one stopped him – but it’s different now because he is a member of the Great Britain Olympic team.

Tom’s the best diver in Europe now, but he (1) walked through the streets in his town and no one stopped him – but it’s different now because he is a member of the Great Britain Olympic team. He (2) dived when he was seven and in a few months he (3) practised really well. People in the sport started to notice him, and told him that he (4) swam in the best diving centre in the UK.

Before he (5) entered the Beijing Olympics, Tom needed to finish in the first eight at the competitions in Beijing. He finished seventh, so at the age of fourteen, he returned to Beijing as part of the Olympic team. Although Tom (6) swam everyone by winning in Beijing, he finished seventh out of twelve divers in one event. Tom will be an amazing diver when he’s older!

3 Put the words in brackets () in the correct order. Then complete the sentences.

0 (paint pictures Picasso amazing could) when he was very young.

Picasso (0) could paint amazing pictures when he was very young.

1 (be use to gas or coal we able won’t) in the future.

(1) be used to gas or coal when we (2) will not be able to use in the future.

2 (you name write could your) before you went to school?

(2) did you write your name before you went to school?

3 (will store you able to be) about 70 films on this DVD recorder.

(3) is able to store you about 70 films on this DVD recorder.

4 (could we not a hotel find) near the beach.

(4) didn’t we find a hotel near the beach.

5 (to able we the match won’t watch be) because it’s on TV too late.

(5) can’t we watch because it’s on TV too late.
can, could, may

1 Asking for permission

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ASKING FOR PERMISSION</th>
<th>GIVING PERMISSION</th>
<th>REFUSING PERMISSION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>informal</td>
<td>Can I use your pen?</td>
<td>Yes, you can.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes, of course (you can).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes, sure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formal/polite</td>
<td>Could I use your bathroom?</td>
<td>Yes, you can/may.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May I make a suggestion?</td>
<td>Yes, of course/certainly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use *can I/we* to ask for permission to do something:
‘Can I have a shower here?’ ‘No, I’m sorry, you can’t! It’s for women.’
‘Dad, can we borrow the car this evening?’ ‘Yes, you can. I don’t need it.’

If we want to be very polite or formal, we use *could or may*:
‘Could I use your bathroom, please?’ ‘Of course you can. It’s over there.’
‘May I make a suggestion?’ ‘Certainly.’

Pronunciation ➤ 1.25

**NATURAL ENGLISH** We only use *may or may not* in written instructions or very formal situations:
*Students may not take* bags into the exam.
*You may start* writing now.

2 Making a request

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAKING A REQUEST</th>
<th>REPLYING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>informal</td>
<td>Can you lend me some money?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sure, how much do you need?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No, I’m sorry. I don’t have enough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formal/polite</td>
<td>Could you pass me the salt?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yes, of course.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Certainly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use *can you* to make a request in an informal way:
‘Can you help me with these bags?’ ‘Yes, of course.’
‘Can you tell Tom I called?’ ‘Yes, sure.’

If we want to be more polite or formal, we use *could*:
‘Could you pass me the water, please?’ ‘Yes, here you are.’

**NATURAL ENGLISH** We use *please* with *can or could* to ask for something or make a request in a polite way:
‘Please could you be quiet?’
or ‘Could you be quiet, please?’
Practice

1 Match the questions 1–5 with the answers A–F. 03:45 Listen and check.

0 Can I use your phone, please?
   I haven’t got my mobile.  
   A No, you may not leave during the examination.
   B Yes, of course you can. I’ll try to help.
   C Yes, you can leave them at reception.
   D Yes, of course. It’s on the table.
   E No, you can’t use cameras in the museum.
   F Yes, you can, but be back by 10.30.

1 Please may I leave the room for a few minutes?
2 Can we go to the cinema this evening?
3 Could I ask you for some advice?
4 Could we leave our bags here?
5 Can I take photos?

2 Write a request for each picture. Use the words under the pictures and can or could.

open the window  turn the TV on  close the door  take a photo of us

3 Choose the correct words in italics.

0 Wife to husband: Adam, can / may I use your laptop computer this weekend?
   1 Notice in library: Students can / may borrow DVDs from the library.
   2 Woman in café: Could I / Could I sit over there?
   3 Two colleagues: ‘Could I use your desk tomorrow?’ ‘Yes, of course you could / can.’
   4 Two friends: ‘Can you / may you lend me five pounds?’ ‘Sure.’
   5 Notice in train: Passengers can’t / may not open the doors while the train is moving.

4 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation about people doing a race. Use words from the box. 03:46 Listen and check.

| can | Can I | Can we | can’t | Could you | you can |

A OK. Are there any questions?
B Yes, my friends and I are in different groups. (0) ... can we ... run together, please?
A No, I’m afraid you (1) .......... . You’re in different groups because you run at different speeds.
C (2) ............. stop while I’m running – to buy a drink or something?
A Ah, no. I’m afraid not. The rules say (3) .............. only have drinks that the organisers provide. There will be tables at the side of the road with drinks on – you (4) .............. take as many of those as you want.
D (5) .............. give us a copy of the rules, please?
A Yes, of course. Here you are.
**have to, need to**

1. **Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/We/You/They</td>
<td>have to/need to pay.</td>
<td>do not (don’t) have to/need to pay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>has to/needs to pay.</td>
<td>does not (doesn’t) have to/need to pay.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
<th>SHORT ANSWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do I/We/You/They have to/need to pay?</td>
<td>Yes, I/We/You/They do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does he/she/it have to/need to pay?</td>
<td>Yes, he/she/it does.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Have to and need to* are different from most modal verbs. They change after *he/she/it* and use *do/does* in questions and negatives, like all main verbs.

2. **have to or need to?**

We use *have to*

- when it is important to do something because there is a rule or a law:  
  *You have to put a card down.* (It’s a rule of the game.)  
  *Cars have to pay to cross the bridge. Do you have to be a member to use the gym?*

- when it is necessary to do something; we cannot choose not to do it:  
  *I have to get up early tomorrow – the train leaves at 6.45 a.m.*

We use *need to*

- when we think something is necessary or a good idea:  
  *I need to earn some more money. She needs to talk to her doctor.*

- when something is necessary for our body or health:  
  *I need to go to bed early tonight – I’m very tired. You need to drink more water.*

*NATURAL ENGLISH* In everyday English we often use the short form *have got to* (*’ve/’s got to*). It means the same as *have to:*

*I’ve got to get up early tomorrow to catch the train.*

3. **don’t have to or don’t need to?**

We use *don’t have to* and *don’t need to* when it is NOT necessary to do something:  
*Cyclists don’t have to/need to pay to cross the bridge – there’s no charge for bicycles.*  
*We don’t have to/need to get up early tomorrow – it’s Sunday.*

*⚠️* It is possible to use *needn’t* for *don’t need to.* We use it with the infinitive without *to:*

*You needn’t to pay. I’ve got enough money.*  
*You needn’t pay. I’ve got enough money.*

*mustn’t or don’t have to? ➤ Unit 65.3*
**Practice**

1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Read the information. Choose the correct answers, A, B or C. In one question, two answers are possible. [3.47] Listen and check.

**Barton Cross Fun Run**

Please arrive at the meeting point no later than 8.30 a.m. You (0) [ ] register by 9.00 a.m. If you have pre-registered online, you (1) [ ] provide all your details again, but you (2) [ ] collect your personal number for the race. Everyone (3) [ ] wear their number at the start and end of the race so that we can be sure we have the correct times, but you (4) [ ] wear the number through the whole race.

The Fun Run is only 10km, but please remember that you (5) [ ] do some warm-up exercises before you start, to avoid injury. You (6) [ ] bring bottles of water with you – the organisers provide water at points along the route. Please don’t stop at these points for more than a few seconds – everyone (7) [ ] keep moving during the race.

Finally, please remember that this is a very physical event and you (8) [ ] be fit and healthy. Good luck!

0 A need to [ ] have to C don’t have to  
1 A have to [ ] don’t have to  
   B do not need  
2 A have to [ ] needn’t C don’t have to  
3 A has to [ ] needs C doesn’t need to  
4 A has to [ ] needs to C don’t have to

5 A need to [ ] B don’t need to  
   C don’t have to  
6 A needn’t [ ] have to C don’t need to  
7 A needn’t [ ] has to C doesn’t need to  
8 A need to [ ] needn’t C has to

2 Complete the sentences with a form of the verbs in brackets () and a verb from the box. Use short forms. [3.48] Listen and check.

become buy drink go pay stay

0 I’m a member of the club so I [ ] to get in. (have to)
1 I [ ] shopping because we haven’t got any food at all. (need to)
2 Tourists [ ] full-price metro tickets. They can get special discount cards. (have to)
3 Do you [ ] a member of the tennis club if you want to play? (have to)
4 Your friend [ ] at a hotel. She can sleep on the sofa. (need to)
5 It’s a really tough aerobics class, so you [ ] lots of water. (need to)

3 Find four more mistakes or missing words in the sentences and correct them. Tick (√) the correct sentences.

0 Sarah has to wear a uniform because she is a nurse. √
1 Harry needs wear reading glasses.
2 Caroline needs to do more exercise.
3 Raisa has to carry an identity card.
4 Peter have to start work at eight o’clock.
5 Do you have go to work on Sundays?
6 Have you to cook every night?

4 Write sentences 3 and 4 from Exercise 3 again so they are true for you.
must/mustn’t

1 must

Must is a modal verb.

Modal verb form ➤ Unit 61.1

We use must when we think it is important to do something.
It is our opinion, not a rule or law:
I must get it right.
(= I think it is important that
I get it right.)

I must go now – I don’t want to be late.
(= I think it is important to be on time.)

We also use must in formal instructions, signs and notices. It means ‘Do this!’:
Passengers must wear seat belts.
(instruction on a plane)
Candidates must answer six questions.
(instructions on an exam paper)

NATURAL ENGLISH It is possible to ask questions with must, but it is more common to use have to:
Must you leave so soon? ➔ Do you have to leave so soon?

2 must not (mustn’t)

We use mustn’t when we think it is important NOT to do something:
You mustn’t tell anyone. (= I think it is important to keep this secret.)
Hurry up! We mustn’t be late for Diana’s party. (= I think it is important that we aren’t late.)

We use must not in instructions, signs and notices. It means ‘Don’t do this!’:
Visitors must not smoke in reception.
Students must not take food into the exam room.

Don’t use to after must or mustn’t:
✗ I must to remember to phone the doctor.
✓ I must remember to phone the doctor.

Pronunciation ➤ 1.26

3 mustn’t or don’t have to?

• Mustn’t means it is important not to do something; it means ‘Don’t do this!’:
  We mustn’t leave the restaurant without paying – it’s illegal.

• Don’t have to means something is not necessary (but you can do it if you want to):
  We don’t have to pay for the meal now. We can pay when we leave the hotel.
Practice

1 Match the signs with the sentences. Then complete each sentence with must or must not.

0 You ........................ must not ........................ make any fires. .............................
1 You ................................ put some coins in the meter. ..............................
2 You ................................ dive into the pool. ..............................
3 You ................................ wait behind this sign. ..............................
4 You ................................ walk on the left. ..............................
5 You ................................ bring your dog into the shop. ..............................

2 Choose the correct words in italics. .............................. Listen and check.

0 It’s an important interview. You don’t have to / can’t be late.
1 The exam is finished. You must / don’t have to stop writing now.
2 I’ve told you – you must / mustn’t take sweets from people you don’t know.
3 It’s a very busy road so you must / don’t have to cross carefully.
4 We must / don’t have to go to the theatre – we can get the tickets on the Internet.
5 I’ve sent the company an email so you mustn’t / don’t have to phone them.
6 It’s OK – we must / don’t have to pay because I’ve got free tickets.
7 We mustn’t / don’t have to leave the party early – the taxi can come later.
8 You mustn’t / don’t have to be rude to Auntie Irene!

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation with the correct forms of must or have to.
Use short forms. .............................. Listen and check.

ALICE .............................. I’ve never been to a TV quiz show before – it’s really exciting!
TIM .............................. It’s fun. I’ve been a few times.
ALICE .............................. What time does it start?
TIM .............................. The show starts at 8.00, but the audience has to be there by 7.30.
ALICE .............................. Can we choose our seats or (1) ................................ we sit in specific seats?
TIM .............................. We can sit anywhere, but we (2) ................................ get there early to get good seats.
ALICE .............................. Can I take photos during the show?
TIM .............................. No, it says on the tickets that you (3) ................................ do that.
ALICE .............................. OK. What about clothes?
TIM .............................. Well, it’s not formal so we (4) ................................ wear smart clothes, but we (5) ................................ wear anything with a name on it, you know, like Nike or Lacoste.
ALICE .............................. Oh, I see. By the way, how much are the tickets?
TIM .............................. Oh, we (6) ................................ pay. The tickets are all free.

4 Write about one thing that you have to do, don’t have to do and mustn’t do at school or work.

0 have to .............................. I have to be at my desk by 9.00 a.m. every morning.
1 have to ..............................
2 don’t have to ..............................
3 mustn’t ..............................
Alex Zanardi was a Formula 1 racing driver. He had a terrible accident in 2001 and he had to stop racing for a long time. Any car he uses in the future will have to have special controls.

1 had to

Had to/didn’t have to is the past form of both must and have to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/He/She/It/We/You/They</td>
<td>had to stop.</td>
<td>did not (didn’t) have to stop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
<th>SHORT ANSWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Did I/he/she/it/we/you/they have to stop?</td>
<td>Yes, I/he/she/it/we/you/they did.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No, I/he/she/it/we/you/they didn’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use had to when we talk about things that were necessary in the past:

In 2010 she had to go to the USA to take part in competitions.

They had to get visas when they went to South America last year.

We use didn’t have to for something that wasn’t necessary in the past:

My uncle made a lot of money and he didn’t have to work after he was fifty.

We didn’t have to show our passports at the border between France and Germany.

2 will have to

Will/won’t have to is the future form of both must and have to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/He/She/It/We/You/They</td>
<td>will have to stop.</td>
<td>will not (won’t) have to stop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTIONS</th>
<th>SHORT ANSWERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Will I/he/she/it/we/you/they have to stop?</td>
<td>Yes, I/he/she/it/we/you/they will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No, I/he/she/it/we/you/they won’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use will/won’t have to when we talk about things that are necessary/not necessary in the future:

We’ll have to pay more for petrol in the future because the price of oil is increasing.

Carol won two cinema tickets in a competition so we won’t have to pay at the cinema tonight.
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with a past or future form of have to. Use short forms.

0 When I was at school, we ... had to ... have sports lessons twice a week.
1 We ... carry cash in the future if we can use credit cards for everything.
2 We ... go shopping yesterday because we still had some food in the fridge.
3 ... I ... pay for the course when I arrive or can I pay at the end?
4 My computer stopped working last week; I ... go and buy a new one!
5 ... you ... queue to get on the bus this morning?

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation about becoming a football referee. Use the phrases from the box. [3.51] Listen and check.

all had to did you have to didn’t have to had to I had to I’ll have to will have to won’t have to

ANNA Hi, Lara, how are things? I haven’t seen you for a long time.
LARA Everything’s fine. I’ve just finished a course to become a football referee.
ANNA Really? Did you have lessons? I mean, what exactly (0) ... did you have to ... do?
LARA Well, I (1) ... go to classes – we (2) ... learn the rules of the game, of course. And I had to take two exams.

ANNA That’s all?
LARA Yes, but there’s another class in four weeks’ time and (3) ... go to that, but I (4) ... do any more exams.

ANNA And then you can be a referee at matches?
LARA That’s right, but another referee (5) ... watch me at first, of course.
ANNA Did the course cost a lot?
LARA No, I (6) ... pay for the course, though (7) ... pay to do the exams. It wasn’t much.
ANNA So we’ll see you at the next World Cup then!
LARA I don’t think so!

3 Use the words below to answer these questions. Use had to or I’ll have to. [3.52] Listen and check.

0 Have you called your mother yet? No, I / call her later. No, I’ll have to call her later.
00 Has Neil sent in his university application form? Yes, he / apply before yesterday. Yes, he had to apply before yesterday.

1 Did you take the car to the garage today? No, I / do it tomorrow

2 Was Joanna at work yesterday? No, she / go to the dentist

3 I think the DVD player has broken. Yes, we / buy a new one

4 Did you go to the bank yesterday? Yes, I / get some money out

Go online for more practice

165
1 should, ought to

Should and ought to are modal verbs.

Modal verb form ➤ Unit 61.1

We use should and ought to to say we think it is a good idea to do something:

The sun is very strong — you **should wear** a hat.

You **ought to find out** how much it costs.

We can ask for advice with should:

**Should I buy** the red dress or the blue one?

We use shouldn’t to say we think it is a bad or dangerous idea to do something:

You **shouldn’t eat** a lot of cakes; they make you fat.

You **shouldn’t sit** outside in the sun at midday.

⚠ Don’t use to alter should or shouldn’t:

❌ Everyone **should learn** another language.

✓ Everyone **should** learn another language.

When we are speaking, we often say I (don’t) **think** + should/ought to and do you think + should/ought to:

**We think you should study** maths at university.

It’s too dangerous. I **don’t think you should do it**.

**Do you think we ought to get a digital TV?**

**NATURAL ENGLISH** Should is more common than ought to. We usually say you shouldn’t and should I ...? (not you oughtn’t to or ought I ...?).

2 must

We can use (really) **must** to give strong advice or to recommend something.

It is stronger than should or ought to:

You **really must try** snowboarding. It’s great fun!

We **must** see the new Harry Potter film. Everyone says it’s great.

**must/mustn’t** ➤ Unit 65
Practice

1 Match the problems 1–5 with the advice A–F. Then complete the advice with should or shouldn’t. Listen and check.

0 I always have a headache when I wake up.
1 I want to speak more Spanish to improve my conversation.
2 My mobile phone bills are huge!
3 I often have a stomachache when I go to bed.
4 My job is really boring and I don’t like my boss.
5 My apartment’s very untidy because I’m not often there.

A You ................. look for something more interesting.
B You ................. talk so much. Send text messages to your friends.
C You ................. have the window open in your bedroom.
D You ................. have private lessons with a teacher.
E You ................. eat large meals late at night.
F You ................. go out so often. Spend some time at home.

2 Look at the pictures. Then complete the advice with the words from the box. Listen and check.

must must should (x3) shouldn’t

0 You .................. call the police!
1 I don’t think you ................. buy that jacket.
2 I think we ................. call a taxi.
3 You ................. go to bed early!
4 He ................. eat so much.
5 I got this in Proxima. You really ................. go there. It’s so cheap!

3 Write answers to these questions. Use should, shouldn’t or must and your own ideas.

1 Can you recommend a good book?
   Yes, you should read .................................................., but you shouldn’t read .................................................. – it’s awful!
2 I haven’t been to the cinema for a long time. Are there any good films on at the moment?
   Yes, I think you .................................................., but you shouldn’t .................................................. .
3 I’d like to try some interesting new food. Do you have any ideas?
   Yes, you really ..................................................
4 I’m feeling a bit bored at the moment. What should I do?

Go online for more practice
1 **might (not) and may (not)**

We use *might (not)* when we think something is true or will be true but we aren't sure: 'Who's second?' *It might be* the one with the pink cap.'

Jenny *might be* at home now. Call her.

The parcel *might not arrive* tomorrow.

In more formal English we can use *may (not)* when we aren't sure about something:

*Mr Clement may be* with a client. *I'll just check for you.*

The order *may not arrive* next week.

**NATURAL ENGLISH** We don't often form questions with *may* or *might*.

We prefer to use *Do you think* ... ?:

*Do you think* they've got any cheap trainers?

*Do you think* the order will arrive this week?

2 **must be and can't be**

If we are almost certain that something is true, we use *must be*:

You're very late home. *You must be* tired.

I can't find the cat. *She must be* somewhere upstairs.

If we are almost certain that something is not true, we use *can't be*:

This ring was very cheap so it *can't be* gold.

That boy looks exactly like Sam but it *can't be* him – he's at school.
Practice

1 Match the sentences. **Listen and check.**

0 There’s nothing interesting on TV tonight.
1 That man’s wearing a white coat.
2 I saw Julia at the sports centre yesterday.
3 Dario’s looking much thinner.
4 The director isn’t answering her phone.
5 My spelling isn’t very good.
6 The house is completely dark.
7 We want to go skiing this winter.
8 It’s snowing in New York.

A We might go to Switzerland.
B I might watch a DVD instead.
C Everyone must be out.
D That can’t be right. She’s in Milan.
E I might buy a dictionary.
F He must be on a new diet.
G Really? It must be colder than here.
H She may be in a meeting.
I He might be a doctor.

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the conversation with phrases A–G below. **Listen and check.**

LIAM I see that Ellen MacArthur has entered another round-the-world yacht race.

STEVE Oh, yes. (0) ..., she’ll win?

LIAM I think (1) ....... win, but that Frenchman, Francis Joyon, won the last one, didn’t he?

STEVE Yes, he did. So (2) ....... be more confident than MacArthur at the moment.

LIAM Mmm, maybe. Do you think he’s actually a better sailor than she is?

STEVE No idea – I don’t know enough about it. I (3) ....... be faster than her, but she’s done some amazing things.

LIAM Mmm. Shall we go to watch the start of the race next weekend?

STEVE I’m not sure. My boss thinks (4) ....... have to work next weekend, so (5) ....... be free.

LIAM OK. (6) ....... go anyway with some other friends. I’ll let you know.

A I might C we may all E Do you think G I might not
B he must D she might F think he might

3 Look at the pictures below and make two sentences about each one. Use might be, must be or can’t be and some of the ideas in the box.

children’s toys  colourful stamps  glasses for watching 3-D films  mobile clock  personal DVD player
something to put on the desk  special sunglasses  things for warming your hands  toy for pets

1 They might be ............................................
2 They can’t be ............................................
3 They must be ............................................
4 It ............................................
5 It ............................................

Go online for more practice and a progress test
1 **UNITS 61, 62 AND 63** Match the sentences 1–5 with the sentences A–F that have the same meaning.

0 We could speak French when we were younger.  
A We didn’t know how to speak French.  
B We knew how to speak French.  
C It was possible to speak French.  
D The teacher said we can’t speak French.  
E May we speak French?  
F We will know how to speak French.

1 We will be able to speak French after the course.  
2 Students may not speak French in their English class.  
3 Can we speak French here?  
4 We couldn’t speak French when we were younger.  
5 We could speak French in Tunisia.

2 **UNITS 64, 65 AND 66** Complete the text with the correct words or phrases, A, B or C below.

---

**Welcome to SuperIce Skating**

You (0)__________ be a good skater to use the Superice rink, but you (1)__________ be twelve or older.

*Please follow these rules for your own safety.*

- You (2)__________ take food or drinks onto the ice — they can be dangerous.
- You (3)__________ wear skates at all times on the ice. You (4)__________ to bring your own skates — we have skates in all sizes here.
- You (5)__________ wear special clothes on the ice but we recommend that you wear strong gloves.
- We clean the ice every hour. When you hear the bell, you (6)__________ leave the ice immediately; you (7)__________ go near the ice-cleaning machine — it is very dangerous.
- All sports centres (8)__________ follow strict health and safety rules. If you have an accident on the ice, you (9)__________ tell us because we (10)__________ report it to our main office.

---

0 A have to  B had to  C don’t have to  
1 A need  B must  C must not  
2 A must not  B needed  C will have to  
3 A need  B don’t need to  C must  
4 A must not  B needn’t  C don’t have to  
5 A needn’t  B must not  C have to  
6 A didn’t have to  B must  C must not  
7 A don’t have to  B must  C must not  
8 A need  B must not  C have to  
9 A must  B had to  C needn’t  
10 A needed to  B will have to  C don’t have to

3 **UNITS 67 AND 68** Complete the second sentences so they mean the same as the first ones.

0 It isn’t a good idea to eat it. It doesn’t taste very good. You (shouldn’t) eat it.  
1 It’s a good idea to wear a suit to the interview.  
You _____________________________________________.  
2 I’m not sure but I don’t think he’s going to finish the course.  
He _____________________________________________.  
3 Chicago is a fantastic musical. Don’t miss it!  
You really _______________________________________.  
4 I think he sounds a little bit Spanish.  
He _____________________________________________.  
5 It isn’t a good idea to leave school at sixteen.  
You _____________________________________________.
4 ALL UNITS Look at each picture. What does each sign mean? Choose A, B or C.

0 A You can stay with your bags.
   B You must stay with your bags.
   C You don’t have to stay with your bags.

1 A You can listen to music here.
   B You can’t listen to music here.
   C You might listen to music here.

2 A You needn’t walk on the grass.
   B You have to walk on the grass.
   C You mustn’t walk on the grass.

3 A You can’t bring your children.
   B You should bring your children.
   C You may bring your children.

4 A Your journey can’t take a long time.
   B Your journey might take a long time.
   C Your journey will take a long time.

5 A You shouldn’t go in the sea if you can’t swim well.
   B You can go in the sea if you can’t swim well.
   C You don’t have to go in the sea if you can’t swim well.

5 ALL UNITS Complete the note with the phrases A–I below.

A need to eat  B should eat it soon  C couldn’t wait to see you
D could you get some milk  E have to recycle  F won’t be able to have a shower
G don’t have to stay here  H must be outside  I mustn’t eat too much

Hi Tina,
Thanks so much for coming to look after our house and the cats while we’re on holiday. Sorry we (0) …C….. but the taxi is here now.

Just a few things to tell you —
The cats aren’t a problem. They (1) ……… twice a day but they (2) ………
   — they’re both too fat! Just give them half a can of cat food a day. Of
   course, you (3) ……… every day to feed them — you can put dry food out
   for them.
The men empty the rubbish bins on Thursday. They come early so the bags
(4) ……… by about 7.00. You can leave them outside the back door. We
(5) ……… glass and paper, so can you put the bottles and newspapers in
the kitchen cupboard?
The hot water system isn’t very good. Turn it on at least an hour before
you need hot water or you (6) ………!
There’s some chicken in the fridge. It’s a day old now, so you (7) ………
Finally, we’re coming back on Sunday evening, as you know, so (8) ………
for us? We won’t be able to get to the shops.
Thanks again,
Mary and Mike
Modal verbs

Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. Matt .......... cook a fantastic curry!
   A can  B can’t  C can to

2. We’re sorry, but we ........... come to your party on Saturday.
   A don’t  B don’t have to  C can’t

3. It’s women only at the health club pool tonight. Men .......... go.
   A can’t  B couldn’t  C can

4. Susanna was an amazing child – she ........... speak before she was two.
   A did  B could  C can

5. When I get my new car, I ........... drive to work.
   A can  B will can  C ’ll be able to

6. Dad, ..........., I watch Ugly Betty on TV tonight?
   A am  B can  C do

7. ‘Could I come to your class today?’ ‘Yes, of course you ...........’
   A can  B could  C will be able

8. Excuse me. This room is very cold. ........... turn up the heating, please?
   A May you  B Could you  C Shall you

9. Where’s your passport? You ........... show it when you get off the plane.
   A have to  B need  C don’t have to

10. I’m really tired today. I ........... to drink some more coffee!
    A needn’t  B need  C have to

11. I’ve told Jan about the sales at the shopping centre so you ........... to call her.
    A needn’t  B don’t have to  C have

12. ........... to wear a uniform in your new job?
    A Do you must  B Must you  C Do you have

13. Passengers ........... speak to the driver while the bus is moving.
    A must not  B don’t have to  C must

14. Danuta ........... learn English when she got the job with the American company.
    A had to  B will have to  C must

15. I’ve just bought a bike so you ........... drive me to work any more.
    A won’t need  B won’t must  C won’t have to

16. Chris just sits and watches TV every evening.
    He ........... join an evening class.
    A must  B should  C ought

17. It’s quite a formal party so ........... wear jeans to it.
    A I don’t think you should  B you should  C you must

18. I’m not very busy this weekend so I ........... come to the football match.
    A might  B may  C might not

19. ‘That’s $200 dollars, sir.’ ‘That ........... right! Your website said $150.’
    A mustn’t be  B can’t be  C must be

20. The place we’re visiting is in the mountains so your mobile ........... work there.
    A must not  B can  C might not
Conditionals

Before you start

1 Read the postcard and emails. Look at the *highlighted* grammar examples.

To: Terry.Walton@sunandfun
From: Janine Forster

Terry
Two guests here have complained about the noise in their hotel (the 3-star Mirasol) and they want to move to another hotel. But the only hotel with space is the Don Carlos, which is 5-star. If we moved them there, it would cost us €100 a day extra. What should I do?
Janine Forster (Representative, Torremolinos)

Janine
If guests in a 3-star hotel complain about noise, we move them to another 3-star hotel — we don’t move them to a 5-star hotel. In this situation I suggest you offer the guests a free ticket for meals at the hotel restaurant. I’m sure they will be happy if you offer them free meals. I’m coming to Torremolinos tomorrow so when I get to the office, I’ll give you the tickets.
Best wishes, Terry (Area Manager)

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in *italics*. The *highlighted* grammar examples will help you.

1 If hotel guests *have / had* small children, they usually want rooms on the ground floor.
2 When people arrive at a hotel, there is / was a form to fill in.
3 I’ll be very pleased if we *get / got* a room with a view of the sea.
4 When we go down to reception we *would / 'll* ask for a bigger room.
5 We *would stay / stayed* in the hotel on the beach if it wasn’t expensive.
6 If we *have / had* a lot of money, we would stay in a five-star hotel on our next holiday.

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

> Unit 69
> Unit 69
> Unit 70
> Unit 70
> Unit 71
> Unit 71

(iOS) Go online for a full diagnostic test
Present conditions

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONDITION (if ...) present tense</th>
<th>RESULT present tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If you put the card in,</td>
<td>the lights come on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you look directly at the sun</td>
<td>it damages your eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If plants don't get water,</td>
<td>they die.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you need any help,</td>
<td>ask the teacher.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When we are talking about real situations in the present, BOTH verbs are in the present tense. Notice the position of the comma (,):

If you put the card in, the lights come on.

If we write the result first, a comma is not necessary:

The lights come on if you put the card in.

Plants die if they don't get water.

2 Use

We use if or when + present tenses

- to talk about real situations:
  
  If you turn the key, the engine starts.

- to say that one event always follows another:
  
  When I go to bed late, I feel tired the next day.

- to describe rules:
  
  If a player drops the ball, he/she is out.

NATURAL ENGLISH When we are speaking to someone, we often use the if part of the sentence alone:

'Do you like curry?' 'Yes, if it's not too spicy.'

We use if + the imperative to give instructions or advice:

If it's raining, take an umbrella.

⚠️ Notice that we don't repeat the subject:

X If you want more information, you look on our website.

✔ If you want more information, look on our website.

⚠️ We don't use to after please:

X If you need anything, please to call reception.

✔ If you need anything, please call reception.
Practice
1 Complete the sentences. Use the words from the box.

Listen and check.

The Automatic House

0 When your car enters the drive, the garage doors ......open......
1 If you ................. into a room, the lights come on.
2 When you ................. on the sofa, the TV switches on.
3 When you ................. the taps, water comes out.
4 ..................... it is hot, the windows open.
5 If it ................. cold, the heating system turns on.
6 If you ................. the house, the door locks itself.

2 Match the two parts of the sentences. Then choose the correct words in italics.

Listen and check.

0 If you turn the key, A your skin gets burnt.
1 When I drink too much coffee, B when I am / will be late for work.
2 If you stay / will stay in the sun C the engine starts / started.
   for a long time,
3 If you need more information, D if you have / had any problems.
4 My boss gets angry E press / you will press the red button.
5 If the machine doesn’t start, F I get / will get a headache.
6 You don’t / didn’t need a passport G if you never travel anywhere.
7 Phone this number H please to visit / visit our website.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE There are five more grammar mistakes in the text. Find and correct them.

Welcome to the Penrith Hotel

wish

- All our rooms are non-smoking. If you wished to smoke, please use the balcony.
- If you want breakfast in your room, please to phone reception.
- We provide 24-hour room service. If you needing any items from our room service menu, please call 200.
- Guests must leave their rooms by 12.00. Please contact reception when you plan to leave after 12.00.
- If there is a fire, please leaving by the stairs; do not use the lift.
- If there is anything we can do to make your stay more enjoyable, please told us.

Go online for more practice
First conditional

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONDITION (if ...) present tense</th>
<th>RESULT will/won't + infinitive without to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If you give me some money,</td>
<td>I'll (I will) get some ice creams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if you call me before six o'clock,</td>
<td>I won't (I will not) be at home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if you don't work hard,</td>
<td>you'll (you will) fail your exams.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first conditional describes a future situation.

⚠️ But we use the present tense after if, not will or won't.

✗ If you will call me before six o'clock, I won't be at home.
✓ If you call me before six o'clock, I won't be at home.

2 Possible and certain future situations

We use the first conditional to talk about a POSSIBLE future action or situation:
If you give me some money, I'll get some ice creams. (You might give me some money.)
If the tickets are too expensive, we won't buy them. (The tickets might be too expensive.)
Sue's parents will give her a car if she passes the exam. (Sue might pass the exam.)

We can use when if a future action or situation is CERTAIN:
When I arrive at the airport, I'll phone you. (I will arrive at the airport.)
Jane will start work as a nurse when she finishes the course. (She will finish the course.)

Future situations with when, until, as soon as, etc. ➤ Unit 94.2

3 Offers and warnings

We can also use the first conditional

- to offer or suggest something:
  If you get the shopping, I'll wash the car.
  I'll pay for dinner if you pay for lunch.

- to warn someone not to do something:
  If you arrive late, we'll go without you. (Don't arrive late.)
  If you make any more noise, I'll call the police. (Don't make any more noise.)
Practice

1 Use the words below to write sentences with if or when. [3.60] Listen and check.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>possible future action</th>
<th>result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 Dilip / pass the exam</td>
<td>he / go to university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If Dilip passes the exam, he’ll go to university.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 you / get there early</td>
<td>you / get the best seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 I / need your help</td>
<td>I / phone you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 the bus / not come</td>
<td>we / take you in our car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 it / rain tomorrow</td>
<td>we / not go to the park</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>certain future action</th>
<th>result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00 Mary / get to Paris</td>
<td>she / send us an email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When Mary gets to Paris, she’ll send us an email.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Jo and Mike / arrive</td>
<td>I / offer them a drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 the train / stop</td>
<td>the doors / open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 we / go into town</td>
<td>we / have lunch there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 course / finish</td>
<td>I / go back to Japan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Choose the best answer, A or B.

0 I’ll get some milk when I go to the shops.
   A I’ll go to the shops soon.  B I might go to the shops.

1 If I find the book you want, I’ll send you a text message.

2 When your cousins arrive, we’ll start cooking supper.
   A This is going to happen in the future.  B This happens regularly.

3 When Neela finishes the course, she’ll be a doctor.
   A I’m not sure if Neela will finish the course.  B I’m certain Neela will finish the course.

4 I’ll tell her the news if she comes to the party.
   A She’s definitely coming to the party.  B She might come to the party.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the email with forms of the verbs in brackets (). Use short forms if possible. [3.61] Listen and check.

Subject: Holiday!

Hi Carla,

We’re at the airport, but our plane isn’t here yet. I’m a bit worried because if (0) it isn’t (not be) on time, (1) we (miss) our bus to Faro. Then (2) we (not get) to the hotel tonight! Anyway, when the plane (3) arrives (arrive), (4) I (send) you a text message. We’re really excited about the holiday. Franco wants to go surfing but he says (5) he (not do) it if (6) I (not go) with him! But you know I’m no good at water sports. Anyway, it will be great to try all the local food. If the hotel restaurant (7) (be) nice, (8) we (eat) there. One more thing, I forgot to ask you about watering the garden. If (9) you (water) the plants while we’re away, (10) I (feed) your cat when you go on holiday in May. Does that sound OK?

Bella
1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONDITION (if ...) past simple</th>
<th>RESULT would (not) + infinitive without to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If I <strong>had</strong> lots of money,</td>
<td>I'd (<strong>would</strong>) stay there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If I <strong>bought</strong> a motorbike,</td>
<td>I <strong>wouldn't</strong> (<strong>would not</strong>) take the bus to work.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use the **second conditional** to describe a situation that we are imagining in the present or the future.

⚠️ We use the past tense after if:

\[ X \] If I **have** lots of money, I'd stay there. ✓ If I **had** lots of money, I'd stay there.

**NATURAL ENGLISH** We use the short forms *'d* and *wouldn't* in spoken English and in informal written English.

2 Use

We use the second conditional

- for future situations that probably won't happen:
  
  If I **won** the race, I'd get a prize.

  If Carla **got** the job, she **wouldn't be able to** live here anymore.

- for present situations that are not possible:

  If David **was** here, he'd **enjoy** this film. (He isn't here.)

  If I **had** wings, I'd **fly** all over the world. (I don't have wings.)

  What **would you do** if you **weren't** a student? (You are a student.)

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRST CONDITIONAL</th>
<th>SECOND CONDITIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>for something that might happen: If you give me some money, I'll get some ice creams.</td>
<td>for something that probably won't happen or is not possible: If you gave me a million dollars, I'd stop work.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After if + I/he/she/it, we can use was or were:

If I **was/were** the president, I would reduce taxes. She'd love this place if she **was/were** here.

3 if I were/was you ...

We often say if I were/was you, I'd ... to give advice:

If I **were** you, I'd **send** him a text message. (= I think you should send a text message.)

There's always a big queue so I'd get there early if I **were** you.

(= I think you should get there early.)

Pronunciation ➤ 1.27
Practice

1 Look at the pictures. Use the words below to complete the sentences.

0 If I were .................. you, I'd lie down.
(you / I / lie down)

1 I’d buy .................. (that dress / if / I / be / thinner)

2 If I were ..................
(you / I / put on / some sun cream)

3 If it was .................. (sunny / I / take / the baby to the park)

4 If I had ..................
(some food / I / make / you a snack)

5 I’d ..................
(buy / some new shoes / if / I / be / you)

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation with forms of the verbs in brackets ( ).

MANDY It would be nicer if this hotel room (0) ........................................... (have) a view of the sea.

DAVID I know, but those rooms cost extra. So, what are our plans for the next few days?

MANDY What about the diving course? It’s rather expensive, but ...

DAVID Mmm. If we (1) .................................. (do) that, we wouldn’t have any more money!

What about the two-day trip to Granada?

MANDY We’ve already paid for all our meals here. If we went on the two-day trip,
we (2) .................................. (miss) dinner here. What else can we do?

DAVID I’m not sure. I (3) .................................. (look) in the guidebook if I

(4) .................................. (have) it here; but I left it at home. We can ask at reception ...

MANDY OK, I’ll do that. Now what shall I wear for dinner? My new jacket?

DAVID I (5) .................................. (not wear) that if I were you. It’s very warm tonight.

3 Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first.
Use one, two or three words. ▶ 3.63 Listen and check.

0 I can’t come to the meeting because I’m ill.
If I .................................., I’d come to the meeting.

1 They don’t expect to win the match.
They’d be surprised if ..................

2 You ought to ask for help.
I .................., for help if I were you.

3 I think you should call a doctor.
If .................................., I’d call a doctor.

4 Jack is too fat because he doesn’t do any exercise.
If Jack did some exercise, he .................. fat.

5 I don’t think I’ll get a place at Harvard.
I .................. very happy if I got a place at Harvard.
Review MODULE 10

1 UNITS 69 AND 70  Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.
0 (When) If you finish the test, give your question papers to the teacher.
1 When I stay up late, I feel / will feel tired the next morning.
2 If there is a fire, you will use / use the emergency exit.
3 If they get to the airport early, they will get / get good seats on the plane.
4 I'm sure we find / 'll find some good bargains if we go to the sales tomorrow.
5 If you don't go to the party, you don't / won't meet my new friend.
6 Press the red button if you want / will want to record the programme.
7 You will wear / Wear a smart suit if they ask you to an interview.
8 If Janice takes the earlier train on Friday, she gets / 'll get here by lunchtime.

2 UNITS 69 AND 70  Write one word in each space.

Instructions for use
1 First, choose your drink from the list.
2 If you want milk, (0) ............. press ............ the white button.
3 (1) ................... you (2) ................... sugar, press the grey button.
4 Now put in 50p. (3) ................... you don't have a 50p coin, the machine (4) ................... accept 2 x 20p coins and 1 x 10p coin.)
5 Wait for ten seconds.
6 (5) ................... the door opens, your drink will be ready.

IF YOU HAVE ANY PROBLEMS WITH THIS MACHINE, (6) ................... 099032111.

3 UNITS 70 AND 71  Read the email. Decide if the sentences 1–5 are true (T) or false (F).

Subject: Holiday ideas

Hi Terri
Thanks for sending me those holiday brochures. I've looked at them and I've also found some interesting websites, so I've got a few ideas for our holiday. Shall we go at the beginning of June? If we leave then, we'll have good weather and it won't be too busy. I know you wanted to go in July but if we went then, it would be much more expensive. Let me know.
You mentioned camping in France but I'm not sure about that. It would be easier if I had my own tent. I know your brother has a lot of camping equipment. Do you think he will lend us a tent if you ask him?
Your other idea was a cycling trip. That would be great if I had a good bike!
Anyway, I'll send you some more ideas later today.
Mel X

0 Mel isn't sure about the weather in June. .......... F
1 Mel wants to go on holiday at the beginning of June. ............
2 Mel expects to go on holiday in July. ............
3 Mel doesn't have a tent. ............
4 Mel thinks Terri is probably going to ask her brother about his camping equipment. ............
5 Mel has a good bicycle. ............
4 ALL UNITS Correct the grammar mistakes in the sentences below.

1 If you heat water, it would boil.
2 If you see a fire, break the glass.
3 If I were you, I'll take it back to the shop.
4 If I had a million pounds, I'll buy that.
5 Be careful. If you touched the fire, you'll burn yourself.
6 Bye. I'd phone you when I get there.

5 ALL UNITS Complete the information with the correct word(s), A, B or C below.

Hallanford Beach Hotel

DAILY ACTIVITY SHEET – TUESDAY

(0) you need more information about any of the activities, please ask at reception.

AEROBICS CLASS 9.30-10.30
Beginners welcome.
Start your day with some exercise.
LOCATION: EAST TERRACE
(IF IT (1) , WE WILL HAVE THE CLASS IN ROOM A.)

CHILDREN'S ACTIVITIES 10.00-13.00
For children aged 5-12.
(If your children (2) , they can take part in the teenagers' theatre class in our other hotel, the Hallanford Vista.)
LOCATION: ROOM B

DANCING 14.00-16.00
Warning – this is a very popular activity!
If we (3) , a larger room, we would invite everyone; but we can only fit twenty-five people.
So come early!
LOCATION: ROOM C

BEACH BALL GAMES 16.30-17.15
If you enjoy sports and sunshine, you (4) this. Adults only.
LOCATION: BEACH

KEEP FIT CLASS 17.00-18.00
Enjoy a one-hour keep fit class in our luxurious health club. (5) the class ends, you (6) full of energy.
LOCATION: HEALTH CLUB (GROUND FLOOR)

0 A When B If C For
1 A rained B rains C will rain
2 A are B would be C were
3 A have B had C will have
4 A loved B will love C would love
5 A When B If C For
6 A felt B would feel C will feel
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. If you press the .......... comes on.
   A button if the light  B button, the light  C button the light

2. If you .......... the key, the car starts.
   A turned  B turn  C will turn

3. If people eat too much, they .......... fat.
   A get  B got  C are getting

4. .......... I eat very spicy food, I get a stomachache.
   A When  B If that  C For

5. Phone this emergency number .......... your car breaks down.
   A if  B when  C for when

6. If it isn’t sunny, we .......... to the beach.
   A went  B didn’t go  C won’t go

7. If you take me to the shops, I .......... some food for supper.
   A ’ll buy  B buy  C bought

8. If the hotel receptionist .......... us a better room, we’ll give her some money.
   A gave  B will give  C gives

9. When I .......... at the hotel, I’ll send you a text message.
   A arrive  B ’ll arrive  C arrived

10. Jake .......... a pay increase when he finishes the management course.
    A got  B didn’t get  C will get

11. If you make lunch, I .......... the dishes.
    A ’ll do  B do  C don’t do

12. If the restaurant is really expensive, we .......... there.
    A didn’t eat  B ate  C won’t eat

13. My boss will check her messages when she .......... back to the office.
    A ’ll get  B gets  C got

14. If we had a garden, we .......... a pet.
    A got  B ’d get  C will get

15. If I .......... a million dollars, I’d spend the money on a fast car.
    A have  B will have  C had

16. If you went to the concert, you .......... it.
    A would enjoy  B had enjoyed  C will enjoy

17. Marianne .......... with us today if she wasn’t at her sister’s wedding.
    A would be  B was  C is

18. If it .......... so cold, we’d go for a swim.
    A isn’t  B won’t be  C wasn’t

19. If .........., I’d see a doctor as soon as possible.
    A I were you  B I was me  C you were me

20. .......... buy the tickets online if I were you; they’re much cheaper.
    A You will  B I will  C I’d
Before you start

1 Read the texts. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

WEATHER WARNING
Warning of a storm tonight from approximately 17.00. Expect 30mm rain. Do not drive unless necessary.

STORM AT BRIGHAM-ON-SEA
HEAVY RAIN AND WINDS at 125kmh caused problems in Brigham yesterday evening. The storm started in the early evening and continued for most of the night.

Dear Dad
I’m sending you this photo of the sea last night. We had an awful storm. I watched it all from the bedroom window – it’s great to be so close to the sea, but it can be frightening, too! The storm started at about five o’clock and it rained heavily all evening. There is a 150-year-old sea wall in Brigham. Have you ever seen it? But luckily it was OK after the storm. I was lucky with that photo – I waited for a really big wave, and finally one came. I’m going to show it to my art class next week!

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics.

The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 We waited the bus / for the bus from 8.00 to 8.50!
2 Heavy rain caused difficulties / Difficulties caused heavy rain on the roads.
3 Rome is wonderful! Have you / You have ever been there?
4 The storm will get worse tonight. Do not / You do not go out after midnight if you don’t have to.
5 My aunt sent to me / me a lovely box of chocolates.
6 A Victorian hospital is / There is a Victorian hospital in this town.
7 The weather was terrible yesterday. It / There snowed all day.
8 It’s great meet / to meet you after all these years!

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

Unit 72
Unit 72
Unit 73
Unit 73
Unit 74
Unit 75
Unit 76
Unit 76

Go online for a full diagnostic test
72 Word order in statements

1 Subject + verb (+ object)
A statement contains a subject and a verb. It can also contain an object and other phrases. We put a full stop (.) at the end of a statement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>don’t know.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>is reading</td>
<td>a magazine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The dry weather</td>
<td>caused</td>
<td>a lot of problems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If we change the position of the subject and the object, the meaning of the sentence changes:

subject verb object

The boy hit the ball.

subject verb object

The ball hit the boy.

A few verbs have adjectives after them instead of an object (e.g. be, look, seem, smell, taste):
Melanie is very angry.
That looks delicious!

Adjectives after verbs ➔ Unit 25.3

We often use the -ing form of a verb as the subject of the sentence. Here, it is like a noun:
Swimming is good for you.
Driving in fog can be dangerous.

2 Subject + verb (no object)
Some verbs never have an object (e.g. arrive, come, go, happen, rain, land, wait).

⚠️ Remember to put the subject BEFORE the verb:

X Then arrived my friends and we had lunch.
✔️ Then my friends arrived and we had lunch.

Other verbs can have an object, but do not always need one:
I’m reading a magazine. I’m reading.
Our team has just won the game! Our team has just won!

3 Building a sentence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN (subject)</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>NOUN (object)</th>
<th>PLACE</th>
<th>TIME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>are going to meet</td>
<td>our friends</td>
<td>outside the cinema</td>
<td>at 8.30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The concert</td>
<td>will take place</td>
<td></td>
<td>in Beijing</td>
<td>in June.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The workmen</td>
<td>cleared</td>
<td>the snow</td>
<td>from the streets</td>
<td>early this morning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This word order is the normal order for the parts of a sentence.
If there is an adverb of manner, too, we put it before place or time:

manner place time

He played well at the game on Saturday.

Adverbs and word order ➔ Unit 28  Word order in questions ➔ Unit 73.1
Practice

1 Match the pictures with the correct sentences.

0 The cat attacked the dog. ....C....
1 The dog attacked the cat. ........
2 The people waited for the bus. .......
3 The bus waited for the people. .........
4 Martin is watching Jane. .........
5 Jane is watching Martin. .........

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Read the text. Write the underlined words in the correct order. [3.65] Listen and check.

**EXTREME WEATHER IN BRITAIN**

In July 2005 there was a very bad storm in Birmingham. It injured nineteen people and (0) a lot of damage caused to buildings. This is what Cathy Mead, a teacher from Birmingham, said:

I work in Dudley Park School. I was (1) on Thursday afternoon in the classroom. It was (2) heavily raining and then it went very dark. The wind became stronger and the building started to shake. The children all (3) scared, looked so I moved them into the middle of the classroom. Then I left them (4) for a while alone, and I went (5) for a few minutes outside, to see what was happening. It was amazing — (6) a car lifted the wind in the street and then it fell to the ground again, then (7) started a tree to fall. I went back into the school, we closed the doors and sat with the children. We waited until the storm passed, then we left (8) at about four o'clock the school. I went home and, luckily, my house was OK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Map</th>
<th>FAQ</th>
<th>Contact us</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 ...caused a lot of damage...</td>
<td>3 ..................................................</td>
<td>6 ..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 ..........................................................</td>
<td>4 ..................................................</td>
<td>7 ..................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ..........................................................</td>
<td>5 ..................................................</td>
<td>8 ..................................................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Write the words and phrases in the normal order. Then write a second sentence that is true for you. [3.66] Listen and check.

0 ate for lunch Vicki a huge pizza
   Vicki ate a huge pizza for lunch. .............. I had a cheese sandwich for my lunch. ..............

1 at the supermarket works Patrick on Saturday mornings

2 in my town rained yesterday it heavily

3 was when he got home very tired Joe

4 Andrea on holiday to Tunisia is going later this year

**Go online for more practice**
Word order in questions and imperatives

1 Questions

Question forms can be
- be + subject: Are you happy? Was she late yesterday?
- auxiliary/modal verb + subject + main verb: Do you understand?

Questions can also contain an object and other phrases. We usually put a question mark (?) at the end of a question.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AUXILIARY / MODAL VERB</th>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>MAIN VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>French?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>snow</td>
<td>last winter?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modal verbs ➤ Module 9  More on questions ➤ Units 77 and 78

2 Imperatives

We use the infinitive form for imperatives. We use don’t + infinitive to make a negative imperative. We sometimes put an exclamation mark (!) at the end of an imperative, to make it stronger.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Come in!</td>
<td>Don’t worry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take a seat.</td>
<td>Don’t forget your keys!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop talking!</td>
<td>Don’t start writing yet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ You listen to me. I’m talking. (This is not polite.)
✓ Listen to me. I’m talking.

We use imperatives to:
- give orders: Stand up!
- give instructions: Mix the eggs and milk together.
- give warnings: Don’t go out in this weather. It’s horrible.
- offer something: Have a biscuit.
- ask for something: Pass the salt, please.

In public signs, we don’t use imperatives:
⚠️ Don’t smoke.
✓ No smoking
⚠️ Don’t park.
✓ No parking
Practice

1 Write the words in the correct order to make questions or imperatives. Write ? or ! at the end of each one. **3.67 Listen and check.

0 that don’t do ...Don’t do that!
1 sit there don’t .................................................................
2 me that give knife ..............................................................
3 want you do an apple ..........................................................
4 see later me and come ........................................................
5 silly be don’t so .................................................................
6 coming you the party to are ..............................................

2 There is a mistake in each sentence. Correct the mistakes.

0 You have a piece of cake. *Have a piece of cake.* .................................................................
1 The cat’s very gentle. Not to be afraid. .................................................................
2 Passing me the dictionary, please. .................................................................
3 Sign in exam room: no talk! .................................................................
4 Not to use your father’s computer! .................................................................
5 Sign at swimming pool: don’t dive! .................................................................
6 You sit here next to me! .................................................................

3 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the conversation with the verbs in brackets (). Decide whether the sentences should be questions or imperatives. **3.68 Listen and check.

BRIAN Hi, Eva. Kerry and I are going to visit your home country and I ...
EVA You’re going to visit Iceland – that’s great! (0) ...Sit (sit) down! ...
   When (1) ....................... (you / go)?
BRIAN We wanted to ask you. When are the best times to go, do you think?
EVA Well, (2) ....................... (you / want) to go to festivals, or to travel around?
BRIAN Travel around, really.
EVA Well, (3) ....................... (not / go) there in the winter! It’s cold, it’s rainy and it’s dark nearly all the time.
BRIAN Mmm, (4) ....................... (the summer / be) quite warm?
EVA Oh, yes, it can be very warm in July and August.
BRIAN (5) ....................... (we / can see) any festivals then?
EVA Yes, (6) ....................... (go) in June and spend two or three weeks there, and (7) ....................... (make) sure you stay in Reykjavik on 17 June.
BRIAN Why (8) ....................... (June / be) so good?
EVA Because it’s light 24 hours a day in June; it’s wonderful. Also, Iceland’s Independence Day is on 17 June. It’s a very good time to be in Reykjavik, but (9) ....................... (book) a hotel!
BRIAN Thanks, Eva. That’s really useful.
EVA You’re welcome. Oh, another thing – (10) ....................... (not / forget) your camera when you go – there’s some wonderful scenery.

**Go online for more practice**
74 Verbs with two objects

We had a lot of heavy rain this year so we bought the children some rubber boots.

1 Person + thing
Some verbs can have two objects; one is usually a person and the other is usually a thing. Some verbs with two objects are: bring, buy, give, make, lend, offer, pay, send, show, teach, tell, throw, write.

We usually put the person object first:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT (person)</th>
<th>OBJECT (thing)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>the children/Them</td>
<td>some boots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harry</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>Sally/her</td>
<td>some flowers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lianne</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>Mike/him</td>
<td>her new laptop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jasmine</td>
<td>didn’t tell</td>
<td>the students/them</td>
<td>a story.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ We don’t use for or to when the person object comes first:
× Harry sent to Sally/her some flowers.
✓ Harry sent Sally/her some flowers.

2 Thing + person
We can also put the ‘thing’ object first. Then we need to use for or to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT (thing)</th>
<th>PREPOSITION + OBJECT (person)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>some boots</td>
<td>for the children/for them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harry</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>some flowers</td>
<td>to Sally/to her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lianne</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>her new laptop</td>
<td>to Mike/to him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jasmine</td>
<td>didn’t tell</td>
<td>a story</td>
<td>to the students/to them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use to after most of the verbs in the list above, but we use for after buy and make.

⚠️ For some verbs (e.g. explain, describe and translate) we always put the ‘thing’ object first:
× The teacher explained me the grammar.
✓ The teacher explained the grammar to me.
Practice

1 Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.
0 We sent [her] / to her the tickets.
1 Can you bring the dictionary me / to me?
2 Come in. I’ll show you / to you our wedding photos.
3 Can you explain the answer me / to me?
4 The teacher translated the text us / for us.
5 I’ll send the hotel / to the hotel an email to check the prices.
6 The café is giving a free cake all its customers / to all its customers tomorrow.

2 Change the sentences to use a different word order. Add the preposition to if necessary.
0 Can you pay her the money?
00 I haven’t shown the photos to Dad yet.
1 We’re giving flowers to Mum for her birthday.
2 Allan teaches engineers English literature.
3 I’ll buy a coffee for you after dinner.
4 They’ve offered Alexis the job!
5 Throw the baby a ball – she’ll catch it.
6 Alison told the children a story.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Write five more missing words in this conversation.
Listen and check.
SAM I’m not sure about camping now. There’s going to be heavy rain this weekend.
PAULA I can lend some warm coats to you, if you want.
SAM Thanks. I’ll have to buy some boots the children, too.
PAULA Don’t worry, we can lend the children some boots.
SAM Great. Oh, I don’t have directions to the campsite.
PAULA That’s OK. I can send them you now by email.
SAM Can you give them Nina? My computer isn’t working.
PAULA Yes, sure. Or I could tell the route now. It isn’t very difficult.
SAM No, email the directions to Nina. That’s fine. Shall we bring a football?
PAULA Yes, good idea, and you can show your skills with the ball all the children!

4 Use the words below to complete the questions. Then write full answers that are true for you.
0 when / you / last lend / money / someone?
   When did you last lend money to someone? I lent my friend ten euros last week.
1 anyone / ever / send / you / flowers?
   Has anyone ever .........................................................
2 what / parents / give / you / for your last birthday?
   What did your parents .........................................................
3 who / teach / you / something useful / recently?
   Who has taught .........................................................
4 you / ever / tell a lie / a friend?
   Have you ever .........................................................

Go online for more practice
There was a terrible flood in the UK last summer. There was water everywhere.

1 Form

We can use there + be in many tenses and forms, eg:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR COUNTABLE</th>
<th>UNCOUNTABLE</th>
<th>PLURAL COUNTABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>There's a flood.</td>
<td>There's water everywhere.</td>
<td>There are lots of storms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>There was a flood.</td>
<td>There was water everywhere</td>
<td>There were lots of storms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Look at those dark clouds. There's going to be a storm.
Have you heard the news? There's been an accident on the motorway.
I think there will be about fifty people at the party.

We also use the negative of there + be:
There isn't any food in the fridge.
There haven't been any good programmes on TV for a long time.

To form questions, we put be before there:
Is there anyone you know here? Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

⚠️ We don't use there + be in continuous tenses:
× There's being a concert in the park this weekend.
✓ There's a concert in the park this weekend.

⚠️ We use there + is (a singular verb) with a list of singular nouns:
× There are a film, a concert and a football match on TV tonight.
✓ There's a film, a concert and a football match on TV tonight.

收受

2 Use

We use there + be

• to say where something is:
  There's a bank in the High Street. There's some salt in that cupboard.

• to say when something happens:
  There was a robbery in the town last night.
  There'll be another concert in the village hall on Friday.

• to show something to someone:
  Look! There's a bird in that tree.

• to say how many:
  There are three museums in the city. There have been five really bad storms in the last week.

⚠️ We need the word there in these sentences:
× Is a strange cat in the garden.  × It is a strange cat in the garden.
✓ There's a strange cat in the garden.

× Are three cash machines here.  × They are three cash machines here.
✓ There are three cash machines here.

there and it ➔ Unit 76.4
1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the conversation with a form of *there + be*.

**8.71 Listen and check.**

A Hello, I'm calling about the advert in the newspaper, for offices.
B Ah, yes, you'd like to rent one of our offices?
A Yes, probably. How many (0) ... are there ... for rent?
B (1) ... two offices free at the moment. They're both the same size.
A Oh, good. (2) ... a kitchen in the building?
B Yes, (3) ... a kitchen on the ground floor.
A OK. (4) ... a photocopier and a fax machine?
B Well, (5) ... three photocopiers, one on each floor, but no fax machine, I'm afraid.
A Mmm. What about transport? (6) ... a station somewhere near the offices?
B No, (7) ... But there's a bus stop outside, and the bus goes to the town centre.
A OK, so (8) ... a car park?
B No, not at the moment, but (9) ... one soon - we're building one this year.
A Has there been a lot of interest in your advert?
B Yes, (10) ... over twenty calls.
A OK. Thank you. I'll think about it.

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Choose the correct words in *italics* in the text. **8.72 Listen and check.**

**Future Shock**

Some people still say that our weather isn't changing, or that the problem isn't very serious, but there (0) *have* / has been a lot of signs of change in the last few years. It seems that every month there (1) *is* / *are* another terrible storm somewhere in the world. In fact, in the last twenty-five years, (2) *it has* / *there have been* twice as many storms as in the twenty-five years before that. (3) *Are* / *There are* also other problems which should worry us, for example, (4) *there were / it was* terrible floods in the United Kingdom in the summer of 2007, which is very unusual. In some places, (5) *it / there isn't* enough rain, for example, Australia is usually extremely dry. If we allow these weather changes to continue, (6) *there will be / will be* more and more problems of this kind in the future.

3 Find five more mistakes in the sentences and correct them. **Tick (√) the correct sentences.**

0 *There is*

1 Are there lots of books for this course?

2 Weren't any new students in my class yesterday.

3 There are a bank, a post office and a supermarket here.

4 There will be a lot of building work in the town next year.

5 Are going to be a lot of people at the party?

6 Won't be any rice left for tomorrow if we eat it all now.

7 There was a Toyota and a Honda in the garage.

8 A really bad storm was last year.
It snowed all night and it took a long time to clear the roads in the morning.

1 *it* as a subject

We can use *it* as a subject pronoun, to talk about a noun we have already mentioned:

*There was an awful storm last night. It damaged the roof.*

But often it has no real meaning, e.g. *It's raining*. We use it + *be*

- with an adjective, to describe a general situation: *I love living in Cambridge. It's nice here.*
- to talk about time: *What time is it? It's ten o'clock. What time will it be when we arrive?*
- to talk about days and dates: *What day is it? It's Monday. It was my birthday yesterday.*
- to describe distances: *It's five kilometres from home to the station. It's 200 kilometres away.*
- to talk about the weather: *It's raining. It isn't cold.*

We say *it takes* five minutes, two hours, etc. when we talk about how long we need to do something:

'How long does it take to get to the airport?' *It takes about an hour.*

*It took* a long time to clear the roads in the morning.

2 *it* as an object

We also use *it* as an object pronoun to talk about a noun we have already mentioned:

*There was a lot of snow yesterday. The children enjoyed playing in it.*

3 *it's* + adjective/noun + *to*

We often use an adjective or noun after *be* + infinitive with *to*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>it</em> + <em>be</em></th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th><em>it</em> + <em>be</em></th>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It's</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>to see you.</td>
<td>It was</td>
<td>a mistake</td>
<td>to accept this job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It isn't</td>
<td>easy</td>
<td>to find our house.</td>
<td>It will be</td>
<td>a shame</td>
<td>to miss your wedding.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 *there* and *it*

We use *there* + *be* to give new information. We use *it* to say more about that information.

*There's somebody at the door. It's the postman.*

*There's some soup on the cooker. It's tomato soup.*

We don't use *it* to say where something is or when something happened. We use *there*:

*× There's swimming pool at the leisure centre.*
*√ There was a swimming pool at the leisure centre.*

*× There was a lot of snow last night.*
*√ There was a lot of snow last night.*
Practice

1 Choose the correct word it italics. Listen and check.
0 'When's your birthday?' 'It's on 30 May.'
1 Look out of the window - it's snowing really heavily.
2 I'll do the dishes before we leave. It won't take long.
3 Mum gave me a scarf for my birthday. I wear it all the time.
4 Have you seen the new building in the town centre? It's really ugly.
5 We can go walking on the hill - there isn't much wind today.
6 Gerry doesn't like being a shop assistant. There's It's boring.
7 Paul is really happy these days - it's nice to see that.
8 How far is it to the station?

2 Match the two parts of the sentences. Listen and check.
0 Hello. It's really nice - A to make new friends.
1 The show isn't full so it isn't necessary - B to see the director now.
2 When you move to a different town, it isn't easy - C to speak on a mobile phone.
3 We're away next weekend. It will be a shame - D to see you again.
4 I'm sorry but it isn't possible - E to book seats before we go.
5 When you're driving in the UK, it's a crime - F to have an extra pen.
6 In an exam, it's important - G to miss your party.

3 Match the questions with the pictures. Then write answers.

0 What's the weather like? D. It's really sunny.
1 What time is it? ..............................................................
2 What's the date? ..............................................................
3 How far is Madrid? ............................................................
4 How long does the car wash take? ........................................

4 GRAMMAR IN USE Read the story. Then complete it with it or there.

MY WORST JOURNEY EVER

A few years ago, I had to go to Stuttgart Airport to meet some friends.
(0) It usually only takes about half an hour as (1) 's only about 25 kilometres from my house to the airport, but this day was totally different. (2) was some heavy snow in the night, but that isn't usually a problem in Germany - (3) 's usually easy to drive in snow because they clear the roads very quickly. Anyway, I left home a bit early because of the snow, as (4) was quite deep. Soon after I left, (5) suddenly started snowing again and the car in front of me stopped. Luckily, I didn't hit (6) but I saw that (7) was a really long queue of cars ahead. I sat in that queue for about two hours - (8) was really boring, but I finally found out what the problem was - (9) was an accident at the front of the queue. (10) was really late when I finally got to the airport, and then I found out that my friends' plane had gone to Frankfurt because of the snow!
1 UNITS 72 AND 73  Change the negative sentences to make them positive. Put the words in brackets () in the correct place in the sentence.

0 Don’t tell your friends about the sale. (in January) 
Tell your friends about the sale in January.

1 We won’t meet outside the cinema on Saturday afternoon. (you)

2 Don’t get me a newspaper this afternoon. (at the shop)

3 The students haven’t finished. (their homework)

4 The sun didn’t shine all day yesterday. (brightly)

5 The 2008 Olympics didn’t take place from 8–24 August. (in Beijing)

6 Annie didn’t look very happy. (last night)

2 UNITS 72 AND 74  Complete the email with the correct words and phrases, A or B below.

Subject: True Story

I had a really horrible experience earlier this year. Some friends and I spent (0) ...........; we were doing an English course at a language school. The organisers had given (1) ........... a really nice apartment near the river. It was lovely at first, but then we had a lot of heavy rain, and (2) ........... One evening, we saw that people were going down to the river – the river was getting higher and (3) ........... Suddenly, the water started to come into the streets, and (4) ........... to look frightened. My friends and I went back to our apartment, but the water was already at the door. The police came along and took (5) ........... , where there were already lots of people. The police gave some food and drink (6) ........... , and we all had to stay there for the night. I tried to send (7) ........... They got it the next morning, and they were very worried about me so they came (8) ........... and took me home! Here’s a picture of what it looked like that day!

0 A in England the summer  
B the summer in England
1 A us  B to us
2 A a lot of problems caused it  
B it caused a lot of problems
3 A it was watching everyone  
B everyone was watching it
4 A started everyone  B everyone started
5 A to a village hall us  B us to a village hall
6 A to everyone  B everyone
7 A my parents a text message  
B to my parents a text message
8 A a week later to England  
B to England a week later
3 UNITS 75 AND 76 Complete the sentence for each piece of news. Use There or It and a suitable verb. (The word in brackets () shows you the tense.)

0 There will be a lot of snow tomorrow. (will)
1 ________________ a new cinema
in the town centre by next June. (will)
2 ________________ rain heavily next week.
(going to)
3 ________________ no British winners at
the Oscars last night. (past simple)
4 ________________ a new road along the
south coast. (going to)
5 ________________ a bank robbery in the town
centre last night. (past simple)
6 ________________ impossible to raise more money
for the new Olympic buildings. (present perfect)

Heavy snow tomorrow!
New cinema in town by June
Three centimetres of rain next week
No British winners at Oscars!
New road for South Coast
LOCAL BANK ROBBED!
No more money for Olympics

4 ALL UNITS Write the words in the correct order. Make questions 0–3 and answers A–D. Then match the questions and answers. Listen and check.

0 meeting yesterday a was there ?
1 necklace that new is a ?
2 on TV a good film is there tonight ?
3 a problem the trains was there with ?
A yes for me it bought Martin
B yes hit a cow a train early this morning
C yes at 3.30 it was in meeting room B
D no a good quiz show but there’s

Was there a meeting yesterday? C

5 ALL UNITS Complete the second sentence so it has the same meaning as the first. Use one, two or three words.

0 Regular exercise is very important.
   It is very ________________ regularly.
1 There was eight hours of sunshine yesterday.
   ________________ sunny for eight hours yesterday.
2 You need to allow at least ten minutes to read the exam paper.
   It ________________ at least ten minutes to read the exam paper.
3 The children brought some really nice cakes for us.
   The children brought ________________ some really nice cakes.
4 You’re always tired. You really mustn’t go to bed so late.
   You’re always tired. ________________ to bed so late!
5 Can you buy some chocolate for me and Joe at the shop?
   Can you buy ________________ some chocolate at the shop?
6 Diving into the pool can be dangerous.
   It can be ________________ into the pool.

Go online for more review exercises
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1  ........... cigarettes is very bad for your health.
   A Smoke  B Smoking  C You smoke

2  They are arriving ........... .
   A 6.00 airport   B at 6.00 the airport   C at the airport at 6.00

3  The keys should be in the kitchen. I left ........... .
   A them in the cupboard earlier  B in the cupboard them earlier
   C earlier them in the cupboard

4  The drummer in the band was great. ........... really well.
   A He played the drums   B The drums played he
   C The drums played him

5  They’ve arrived! The plane has already ........... !
   A landed it   B landed the airport   C landed

6  What’s wrong with Tracey? She looks ........... .
   A is angry   B angry   C like angry

7  Rob’s really upset because he played ........... .
   A in the match yesterday badly   B yesterday badly in the match
   C badly in the match yesterday

8  ........... forget to call the bank manager this afternoon.
   A You don’t   B Don’t   C Not

9  ‘........... busy at the moment?’ ‘Yes, very.’
   A You are   B Are   C Are you

10 After our holiday we showed ........... all the videos we’d taken.
    A our friends   B to our friends   C us our friends

11 Can you buy some food ........... at the supermarket?
    A the cats   B for the cats   C to the cats

12 The police officer explained ........... .
    A us the problem   B the problem us   C the problem to us

13 ........... anyone you know at the swimming pool yesterday?
    A Was there   B Is there   C Was it

14 ........... going to be an election in France next year.
    A It’s   B There’s   C Is

15 ........... any interesting new clothes in the shops this spring.
    A It isn’t   B Aren’t   C There aren’t

16 There’s going to be a new arts festival in the town. ........... start in
    the summer.
    A It will   B There will   C Will

17 ........... very heavy snow in the Alps. Two skiers are missing.
    A It has been   B Has been   C There has been

18 How long ........... to get to the town centre by bus?
    A does it take   B it takes   C does it need

19 It will be a pleasure ........... your parents at the party.
    A meet   B to meet   C met

20 ........... a phone call for you. It’s your daughter.
    A Is   B It’s   C There’s
Before you start

1 Read the text. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

WIN A NEW TV!

Just complete the questionnaire below and we will enter your name in our competition.

Do you watch a lot of TV? YES ❑ NO ❑
Where do you usually watch TV? LIVING ROOM ❑ KITCHEN ❑ BEDROOM ❑ OTHER ❑
When do you watch TV? MORNING ❑ AFTERNOON ❑ EVENING ❑ WEEKENDS ❑
What time do you turn the TV on? 5:00 P.M. ❑ 6:00 P.M. ❑ 7:00 P.M. ❑ 8:00 P.M. ❑
Who decides which programmes to watch? MAN ❑ WOMAN ❑ BOTH ❑ CHILDREN ❑
How old is your present main TV? UNDER A YEAR ❑ 1-3 YEARS ❑ OVER 3 YEARS ❑
Whose is this TV? ❑
Which BBC channel is your favourite, 1, 2, 3 or 4? ❑

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 Do / Are you listen to music?
2 When you / do you listen to music?
3 Where / Why do you listen to music, e.g. in the car?
4 What type of music do you to listen / listen to?
5 What / Which music do you prefer, jazz or classical?
6 Whose / Who's music do you like best (i.e. which band / composer)?
7 How old / How much old is your music system?
8 Who listen / listens to music the most in your house?

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

Do 2 do you 3 where 4 listen to 5 which 6 whose 7 how old 8 listen
1 Yes/No questions

Yes/No questions ask if something is true or not:
‘Are you English?’
‘Yes, I am.’ / ‘No, I’m not.’
‘Was it expensive?’
‘No, it wasn’t very expensive.’
‘Has the post arrived?’
‘Yes, it came early today.’

In yes/no questions, we put the main verb be, an auxiliary or a modal verb BEFORE the subject:

- the main verb be

  **STATEMENT**  It is cold outside.

  **QUESTION**  Is it cold outside?

- auxiliary verbs be, have and modal verbs

  **STATEMENT**  It is raining.  He has eaten.  Chelsea will win.  Laura can swim.

  **QUESTION**  Is it raining?  Has he eaten?  Will Chelsea win?  Can Laura swim?

- the auxiliary verb do/does in the present simple, and did in the past simple

  **STATEMENT**  Chris works here.  Chris worked here.

  **QUESTION**  Does Chris work here?  Did Chris work here?

⚠️ We usually say yes/no questions with a rising intonation (↗): Are you hungry?

**Pronunciation ➤ 1.29**

2 Short answers

We can answer yes/no questions with a short answer:
‘Is it cold outside?’ ‘Yes, it is.’
‘Have you eaten?’ ‘No, I haven’t.’
‘Can you watch films on it?’ ‘Yes, you can.’
‘Does Natalie live here?’ ‘No, she doesn’t.’

We can also say only yes/no or yes/no with other words:
‘Is it the newest one in the shops?’ ‘No. / No, it’s about a year old.’
‘Is Max in the office yet?’ ‘Yes. / Yes, he arrived about ten minutes ago.’

⚠️ Don’t use I’m, she’s, it’s, etc. in positive short answers:

  _Are you busy?_  
  ✗ Yes, I’m.  
  ✓ Yes, I am.

  _Is she ready?_  
  ✗ Yes, she’s.  
  ✓ Yes, she is.

⚠️ Don’t use the main verb in short answers:

  _Do you like classical music?_  
  ✗ Yes, I like.  
  ✓ Yes, I do.

  _Does Marianne speak French?_  
  ✗ No, she doesn’t speak.  
  ✓ No, she doesn’t.
Practice

1 Match the questions 1–8 and short answers A–J. Listen and check.

0 Is the office open on Saturdays?
1 Have you got my email address?
2 Does this DVD player also record programmes?
3 Are you going to join the film club?
4 Were the police at the football match?
5 Have the tickets arrived yet?
6 Can I pay by credit card here?
7 Did you go to France by plane?
8 Will the weather be better tomorrow?

A No, they haven’t.
B Yes, it does.
C Yes, it will.
D No, you can’t.
E No, it isn’t.
F No, we didn’t.
G Yes, I have.
H Yes, they were.
I Yes, I am.

2 You want to buy a new phone. Make yes/no questions from the words below.

Can I use the Internet on it?
Can I keep my phone number?
Can it store my voice messages?
Can it have had good reviews?
Can it be used abroad?
Can it have a video camera?
Can it work immediately?

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Now complete this conversation with questions from Exercise 2. Write the numbers of the questions. Listen and check.

A Can you tell me a bit about this phone, please? (0) ....? B Yes, you can. You can add your number to the new SIM card.
A Oh, good. (1) ....? B Yes, you can use it in most countries.
A And (2) ....? B Yes, it does. It stores about forty messages.
A That’s good. (3) ....? B Yes, it’s very easy to go online.
A Wonderful! I’m not very good with new technology. (4) ....? B Yes, it will.
A Good. (5) ....? B Yes, it has, you can make videos and send them to your friends.
A And (6) ....? B Yes, it has, very good ones. There’s one here, in Which Phone magazine.
A Well, I think that’s everything. Yes, I’ll have one of those, please.

4 There are five more mistakes in the questions below. Find and correct them.

Did you go?

0 You went to the play at the school last week?
1 Does Jane live in the centre of town?
2 ‘Are you OK?’ ‘Yes, I’m. I’m fine.’
3 ‘Did you enjoy the film?’ ‘Yes, I enjoyed.’
4 Came everyone to the party last weekend?
5 Did the students stayed with families?
1 Form and Use

*Wh*-questions always start with a *wh*- word
(who, what, when, where, how, which, why, whose):

*Which* way do you want to go?
*Who* are you going to invite?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>statement</th>
<th>The paper is here.</th>
<th>It starts at 8.00.</th>
<th>They ate a pizza.</th>
<th>They can see her.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>Where is the paper?</td>
<td>When does it start?</td>
<td>What did they eat?</td>
<td>Who can they see?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ We form simple *wh*-questions with *be*, an auxiliary verb or a modal verb BEFORE the subject:

*✗* Where you live?
*✓* Where do you live?

*✗* Where you are going?
*✓* Where are you going?

*✗* When they will arrive?
*✓* When will they arrive?

*✗* How old he is?
*✓* How old is he?

*Wh*-questions ask for information:

'Where does the bus stop?' 'Outside the post office.'

'Which book are you reading?' 'It's the new John le Carré book.'

We can also use negative questions with *wh*- question words:

'I don't understand this question.' 'What don't you understand?'

'Rowan didn't come to my party.' 'Why didn't he come?'

⚠️ We usually say *wh*-questions with a falling intonation (↓): What's the time?

**Pronunciation ➤ 1.30**
Practice

1 GRAMMAR IN USE Read the information about a new DVD recorder. Then complete the questions with the phrases from the box. Listen and check.

How can  How many  What can  Where can  Why is  Why should

Generation X

Why should I buy the Generation X DVD recorder?
– That's simple – because it's the most modern and best new DVD recorder!

1 .................. the Generation X recorder more expensive than most of the others?
– Well, it's only a little more expensive ... and it is better than most others, for example, it can store more films.

2 .................. films can the Generation X recorder store?
– About 100. It depends on how long the films are.

3 .................. I use my old videos with this machine?
– If you have a video recorder, you can connect it to the DVD recorder and record your videos.

4 .................. I do if something goes wrong?
– You can send it to us or take it back to the shop where you bought it.

5 .................. I buy the Generation X recorder?
– In all good department stores and electrical shops.

2 Make questions from the statements.

0 I'm not sure where the nearest bank is. Where is the nearest bank?

1 I'm not sure where we're staying.

2 I'm not sure how we get to the station.

3 I'm not sure what time the plane arrived.

4 I'm not sure what kind of computer she wants.

5 You didn't phone me. I don't know why.

6 I'm not sure which class I'm in.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the job interview with questions. Use the words in brackets ()

A Right. Do you have any questions about the job?
B Yes, I do, actually. (0) .............. What time do you start ........... (what time / you / start) in the morning?

A We open at 9.30 and the assistants have to be here at 9.00 or 8.30 on Thursdays.
B Oh, (1) .................................................. (why / they / not start at 9.00) on Thursdays?

A Well, it's because we have staff training from 8.30 to 9.00.
B Oh, OK, thanks. And (2) .......................................................... (when / the shop / close)?

A It closes at 5.30 most evenings, but it's 6.00 on Friday and Saturday.
B (3) .......................................................... (how long / be / the lunch break)?

A It's an hour, with a 15-minute coffee break in the morning and afternoon.
B (4) .......................................................... (how much / be / the staff discount)?

A We give our staff a discount of 20% on all our clothes and shoes.
B That's good. If I get this job, (5) .......................................................... (who / be / my manager)?

A One of the senior staff will be your manager, and will train you.
B OK. (6) .......................................................... (when / you / tell me) if I've got the job?

A We'll try to contact everyone by the end of next week.
who, when, where, why

1. Who, when, where, why

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wh- Word</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>who</strong></td>
<td>asks about a person or people</td>
<td>Who's your teacher this year?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>when</strong></td>
<td>asks about time</td>
<td>When did you get it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>where</strong></td>
<td>asks about place</td>
<td>Where can we put it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>why</strong></td>
<td>asks for a reason</td>
<td>Why do we need it?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After who, when, where or why in questions, we need a verb:

Who is the best actor in the film?

Why did the Romans come to Britain?

⚠️ We cannot put a noun after them:

× Where place does the president live?
✔ Where does the president live?

2. Wh- questions + prepositions

If there is a verb + preposition in a statement, we often need to use the preposition at the end of a wh- question:

They're talking **about** the director. → Who are they talking **about**?

⚠️ Angelo is writing **to** his friend.  
× Who is Angelo writing **to**?

✔ Who is Angelo writing **to**?

But with when and where questions, we don't usually put a preposition at the end of the question:

I was born **in** London. Where were you born?

I was born **on** 30 August. When were you born?

I'm going **to** the cinema. Where are you going?

⚠️ But we say: 'Where are you **from**?' 'I'm from Moscow.'
1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the questions in the conversation with a suitable *wh*- word.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>I’m calling about your home cinema, Ms Jenkins.</td>
<td>(0) <em>Where</em> shall we deliver it? Is it the same address as on the receipt?</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>And (1) ......................... is it best to deliver, morning or afternoon?</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Oh, afternoon, definitely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>And (2) ......................... will be at the address to receive it?</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>I’ll probably be there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>If no one is at home, (3) ................. can our driver leave it?</td>
<td></td>
<td>Can he put it in the garage?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Oh, no. If I know the date, I’ll definitely be there.</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>OK, so (4) ......................... would you like it? Would next Friday be OK?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Yes, that’s fine. Finally, for our records, (6) ......................... did you choose this product?</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Well, because it looks good and it wasn’t too expensive.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 **Write a *wh*- word in each question. Then match the questions and answers A–F.**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 ......................... was the first woman in space?</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Sherlock Holmes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 ......................... did dinosaurs live on the Earth?</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Because he died in a fight in the Philippines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ......................... did Arthur Conan Doyle write about?</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>From China.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 ......................... did Christopher Columbus sail to America?</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Valentina Tereshkova</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 ......................... do giant pandas come from?</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>In 1492.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 ......................... didn’t Magellan finish his round-the-world journey?</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Millions of years ago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 **Write the questions for the underlined parts of the answers. Use the words below to help you. Use prepositions if necessary.**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 (the film) ......................... When does the film start?</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>It starts at 8.15.</td>
<td>1 (your manager) ......................... He works in the office in the corner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (the kitten) ......................... It belongs to my sister.</td>
<td>3 (my address) ......................... Because I need it for our records.</td>
<td>4 (my homework) ......................... I want it on Friday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (the letter) ......................... Send it to the Managing Director.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 what, which, whose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wh- WORD</th>
<th>USE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>what</td>
<td>asks about things or ideas</td>
<td>What does it do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which</td>
<td>asks for a choice between a few things</td>
<td>Which programme do you want to watch?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whose</td>
<td>asks about possession/relationships</td>
<td>Whose bag is this? Whose sister is she?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 which or what?

Which and what both ask about things and ideas.

- We use which when we are thinking of a small number of things:
  Which colour do you want for the bedroom, blue, green or grey?
  Which languages do you speak?

  We can also use which (but not what) to ask about people:
  Which member of the band do you like most?

  We do not need a noun if it is clear what we are asking about:
  'I speak four languages.' 'Really? Which do you speak?'

- What asks about more things than which. We often use what without a noun:
  What's your favourite colour? What's on at the cinema this week? What does this thing do?

  We can also use a noun after what: What instrument do you play?

3 Common uses of what

| to ask about a person's work | What + do + noun + do? | What does your husband do? He's a builder. |
| to ask for a description     | What + be + noun + like? | What's the weather like? It's cold and rainy. |
| to ask about likes and dislikes | What + do + noun + like? | What kind of films does Jonathan like? He likes South American films. |

⚠️ We don’t use like in the answer to What is he like?:
X He’s like very clever. ✓ He’s very clever.

4 who or whose?

We use who to ask about people: Who did you see at the party last night?

We use whose (with or without a noun) to ask about possessions and relationships:
Whose is that bag on the table? (= Who does the bag belong to?)
Whose sister is she? (= Who is her sister?)

⚠️ Who's and whose sound the same, but they are different. Who's means who is or who has:
Who's washing up today? (who is) Who's seen the latest copy of 'Hello' magazine? (who has)
Practice

1 These questions all come from a conversation at a party.
Choose the correct wh- word in each one.

0 **Who / What** was your favourite teacher?  5 **Whose / What** was she like?
1 **What / Which** did you study?  6 **What / Which** year did you graduate, 2007 or 2009?
2 **Which / What** is your name?  7 **Who / Whose** was your tutor for maths?
3 **Which / What** do you do now?  8 **Whose / Who’s** group were you in for physics?
4 **Which / Who** university did you go to?

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Now complete the conversation with questions from Exercise 1.

*Listen and check.*

JANE It’s a good party, isn’t it?
BETH Yes. Alison always has good parties.
JANE How long have you known her?
BETH For years. We met at university.
JANE Really? (0) ...4....
BETH Kent University.
JANE That’s interesting. I went there, too. (1) ...........
BETH Maths and physics.
JANE I studied physics, too. (2) ...........
BETH Simone Allen’s group.
JANE I didn’t have her. (3) ...........
BETH She was really good. (4) ...........
JANE It was Jack Granger. I didn’t like him.
BETH No, I had him, too. He wasn’t very good. (5) ...........
JANE I teach now – I work in a school in London. How about you?
BETH I write computer programs – mostly for games.

3 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Read about Penny Knight. Then write questions for the answers below. Use the wh- word in brackets ( ).

*Listen and check.*

I’m Lucy and the person I admire most is Penny Knight. She’s my aunt but she’s only five years older than me – she’s my grandparents’ youngest daughter. She’s great – she’s really friendly and lively, and she’s very clever, too. She works for the games company Nintendo and designs computer games. She’s married to Ryan – he’s a sports teacher so she keeps fit.

0 **Who is Penny Knight?** She’s Lucy’s aunt. (who)
1 ................................................
2 ................................................
3 ................................................
4 ................................................
5 ................................................

4 Correct the mistakes in these questions. Then write true answers.

*What I’m a student.*

0 **Which** do you do? ................................................
1 Who’s class are you in? ................................................
2 Who school/college do you go to? ................................................
3 Which are you studying now? ................................................
4 Whose do you live with? ................................................
5 Which do you like doing? ................................................
1 how
The wh- word how can ask about a lot of different things. We use it to ask about

- the way we do something:
  How do I open this bottle? How do we get to your house? How do you open the doors?

- other things, e.g:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>health (how + be)</th>
<th>How are you?</th>
<th>I’m fine, thanks.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How’s your father now?</td>
<td>He’s feeling better, thanks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinion (how + be)</td>
<td>How’s the soup?</td>
<td>It’s delicious.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How was the party?</td>
<td>It was great. I enjoyed it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news about a person’s life</td>
<td>How’s it going?</td>
<td>Fine, everything’s OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How did the exam go?</td>
<td>Fantastic! I passed!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 how + adjective
We use how before adjectives to ask about age, measurements and size:
How old is Tracey? She’s seven. / She’s seven years old.
How long is the Nile? It’s 6650 kilometres long.
How tall is the CNN Tower? It’s 553 metres tall.
How deep is the swimming pool? It’s two metres deep.
How big is the village? Not very big, only about 4000 people live there.

⚠ With exact measurements, we include the adjectives tall, high, long, wide, deep in the answer. Look at the word order:
× The CNN Tower is tall 553 metres.  ✓ The CNN Tower is 553 metres tall.

⚠ The answer to a question asking How old ... ? is different:
× My daughter is seven old. — ✓ My daughter is seven years old.

✓ My daughter is seven. ✓ My daughter is seven years old.

3 Other common questions with how
We also use how to ask about:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>length of time</th>
<th>How long is the flight?</th>
<th>It’s four hours.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>distance</td>
<td>How far is the station from here?</td>
<td>It’s half a mile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speed</td>
<td>How fast does it go?</td>
<td>Very fast, 250 kilometres an hour!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frequency</td>
<td>How often should I take the medicine?</td>
<td>Twice a day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number</td>
<td>How many people live on the island?</td>
<td>Three thousand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amount</td>
<td>How much water is left?</td>
<td>Five bottles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>price</td>
<td>How much was the car?</td>
<td>It was really expensive!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠ We don’t use adverbs (e.g. fast, often) after measurements in answers:
× It goes at 250 kilometres an hour fast. ✓ It goes at 250 kilometres an hour.

how much? or how many? ➞ Unit 8.3
Practice

1 Write questions for the answers. Use how + adjective and a place name from the box.

0 How high is Mount Everest? 
It is 8848 metres high.
1 
It is 6400 kilometres long.
2 
It is 300 metres tall.
3 
It is 150 metres wide.
4 
It is 1637 metres deep.
5 
It is nearly six hundred years old.

2 Grammar in use Complete this magazine interview. 
Use how, and add an adjective/adverb if necessary. [4.03] Listen and check.

GORDON LAWRENCE has worked on maglev trains for nearly 30 years. 
In this interview he talks to Chris Anderson.

CA Gordon, everyone has heard of maglev trains, but we don’t know much about them. (0) How fast can a maglev train go?
GL They can go at nearly 600 kilometres an hour.
CA And (1) ........ does a maglev train actually work?
GL Well, it travels a few centimetres above the ground – it uses a new type of scientific technology.
CA (2) ................ are there in use now?
GL Well, there’s only one system in use — in Shanghai, China. It goes from the city to the airport.
CA So (3) ................ is that?
GL Only about 30 kilometres.
CA And (4) ................ does that take?
GL The train does that in about seven minutes.
CA Oh, that’s fast! (5) ................ do they leave?
GL There are four trains an hour.
CA I know it’s new technology that quite a lot of countries are developing. (6) ................ is the development going now?
GL It’s going well. There are lots of plans for more maglev trains across the world.
CA Really? (7) ................ does each train cost?
GL That’s difficult to say. The Shanghai project cost over a billion US dollars.

3 Write questions starting with How. [4.04] Listen and check.

I want to know ...

0 if you are well. How are you?
1 the price of this book.
2 the age of your baby.
3 the length of the flight.
4 the distance to the airport.
5 if your interview went well.

Go online for more practice
1 Subject questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Who</td>
<td>helped</td>
<td>Mandy?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>happened?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which band</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>'Take me out'?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose mobile phone</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>an MP3 player?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many friends</td>
<td>called</td>
<td>you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In subject questions, the wh-word is the subject of the verb. The order of the question is subject + verb + object.

Notice the answer: Who helped Mandy? Robin. or Robin did.

2 Object questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>AUXILIARY</th>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB (infinitive)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Who</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>Robin</td>
<td>help?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which band</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>Alex Kapranos</td>
<td>sing with?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose mobile phone</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>the teacher</td>
<td>found?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many friends</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>call?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In object questions, the wh-word is the object of the verb. The order of the question is object + auxiliary + subject + verb.

Notice the answer: Who did Robin help? Mandy.

3 Subject and object questions

Compare these subject and object questions:

- Subject: What eats birds? - What do cats eat?
- Object: Cats eat birds. - Cats eat birds.

⚠ Don’t confuse subject and object questions:

- What means ‘statement’? ✓ What does ‘statement’ mean?

⚠ We use a singular verb after who, what and whose in subject questions:

- Who live in that old house? ✓ Who lives in that old house?
Practice

1. Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.
   0 What happened / did happen last night? I saw a robbery from my bedroom window.
   1 Who robbed / did rob the shop? Two men.
   2 What stole they / did they steal? They stole several TVs.
   3 What / Who broke the window? The robbers.
   4 Who did you call / called you? I called the police.
   5 Who did you call / called you? The shop manager called me.
   6 Who recognised you / did you recognise? I recognised one of the robbers.

2. Match the questions 1 and 2 with the answers A and B.

   0 1 Who saw Amy? → A Matt saw Amy.
   2 Who did Amy see? → B Amy saw Matt.
   1 1 What do birds eat? → A Cats eat birds.
   2 1 How many people saw him? → A Ten people saw him.
   2 How many people did he see? → B He only saw one person.
   3 1 What book did Tolkien write? → A Lord of the Rings.
   2 Who wrote Lord of the Rings? → B Tolkien.
   4 1 Who invited Isabel to the party? → A Isabel invited James.
   2 Who did Isabel invite to the party? → B Shelley invited Isabel.
   5 1 Whose cousin did you call? → A Mike's cousin called me.
   2 Whose cousin called you? → B I called Mike's cousin.

3. Grammar in use. Complete the police interview with questions from the box.
   There are three extra questions. Listen and check.

   Officer: So, Mr Lewis. What did you see yesterday evening outside the club?
   Lewis: Well, there was a fight, a big fight.
   Officer: (1) What happened? I'm not sure. I came out of the club to go home, and then I heard something ...
   Officer: (2) Who did you hear? Someone was shouting, then I heard other voices, so I turned round and saw them ...
   Officer: Them? (3) Who were they? The men who started the fight – the men from the factory. And I think they saw me.
   Officer: I'm sorry – (4) Who were the men who started the fight? Those men. The men who work at the factory.
   Officer: (5) Where did you see them? The car factory in Bolton. You see, I work there, too – and I saw his face!
   Officer: (6) Who is he? My boss's face – he was there, he was in the fight, and now I'm really frightened.
   Officer: I'm not sure I understand – (7) who is he? Well, he knows I've told you everything. I'm frightened I'll lose my job.
1 **UNITS 77 AND 78** Write the words in the correct order to make questions. Then match them with the answers A–I below.

| 0 | going to be flight BA103 is late? | Is flight BA103 going to be late? | H |
| 1 | the film started has? | .......................................................... | ..... |
| 2 | working is the printer? | .......................................................... | ..... |
| 3 | does stop the bus where? | .......................................................... | ..... |
| 4 | use I a pencil should a pen or? | .......................................................... | ..... |
| 5 | rain it tomorrow will? | .......................................................... | ..... |
| 6 | so hot why it here in is? | .......................................................... | ..... |
| 7 | want you any breakfast don't why? | .......................................................... | ..... |
| 8 | prefer apple juice you or do orange? | .......................................................... | ..... |

A No, it won't.  
B I can't open the window.  
C It stops outside the bank.  
D Orange juice.  
E No, it hasn't.  
F Because I'm not hungry.  
G You should use a pen.  
H No, it's on time.  
I Yes, it is. But it needs paper.

2 **UNITS 79, 80 AND 81** Complete the question for each answer with one **wh-** word.

| 0 | ‘...........Why....... are you having a party?’ ‘It’s a birthday party.’ | | |
| 1 | ‘...........birthday is it?’ ‘It’s my mother’s birthday.’ | | |
| 2 | ‘...........old will she be?’ ‘She’ll be fifty.’ | | |
| 3 | ‘...........is the party?’ ‘At a hotel near my parents’ house.’ | | |
| 4 | ‘...........hotel is it at?’ ‘The Hilton, in Moorlands Road.’ | | |
| 5 | ‘...........date is it going to be?’ ‘30 May.’ | | |
| 6 | ‘...........will it start?’ ‘At about 8.00 in the evening.’ | | |
| 7 | ‘...........time will it finish?’ ‘I don’t know – probably at about 12.00.’ | | |
| 8 | ‘...........many people will be there?’ ‘Probably about seventy or more.’ | | |

3 **UNITS 79, 80 AND 82** Read the conversation. Use the words below to write questions.

**Listen and check.**

**JEREMY** Hi, Russell. (0) **What did you do last night?** (what / do)

**RUSSELL** Oh, hello, Jeremy. We went to the cinema.

**JEREMY** That's nice. (1) ......................................................... (what film / see)

**RUSSELL** We saw Avatar.

**JEREMY** I've heard of that. (2) ......................................................... (who / be / in it)

**RUSSELL** Sam Worthington.

**JEREMY** Oh, yes. (3) ......................................................... (who / go with)

**RUSSELL** I went with Rick, from the office.

**JEREMY** Rick? I don't know him. (4) ......................................................... (what / like)

**RUSSELL** He's tall, with dark hair and a beard.

**JEREMY** Oh. (5) ......................................................... (what / do)

**RUSSELL** He works in the computer department.

**JEREMY** Oh. (6) ......................................................... (which / floor / work on)

**RUSSELL** He works on the third floor, with Matt and Steve.
4 ALL UNITS  Complete the questions with the correct words or phrases, A, B or C below.

**Bargain of the month** the new Apricot III

**FAQs**
0) ............. is the Apricot 111?
It’s a new modern MP3 player.
1) ............. music only or videos, too?
It plays both.
2) ............. got a large screen?
Yes, the screen is quite big, so it’s good for watching films.
3) ............. do I get films for it?
It’s very simple – you just download them from the Internet. It’s the same as for music.
4) ............. if I want to carry it around with me?
Well, it has a good battery, so you can take it to places with you.

(5) Oh good, a battery.
.............?
A long time – 50 hours of music or 10 hours of films.
(6) But most MP3 players
have these features. ............. so good?
Well, you can put it in one room in your home and hear the music in every room – that’s new. And, of course, the price.
(7) .............?
Only £259.
(8) ............. it?
It’s a fantastic machine at a really low price!

0 A What  B Which  C Who
1 A Is it play  B It plays  C Does it play
2 A Does it  B Has it  C Does it have
3 A How  B How is  C How can
4 A What does happen  B What is happen  C What happens
5 A How does it work  B How long it works  C How long does it last
6 A Why is  B Why it is  C Why is it
7 A How much costs it?  B How much does it cost?  C How much it costs?
8 A Why should I buy  B Why I buy  C What should I buy

5 ALL UNITS  Read the conversation. Add six more missing words in the questions.

**Listen and check.**

A Excuse me. I’d like to open a bank account.
B Certainly. Is the account for you?
A No, it isn’t.
B I see. Who is it?

A It’s for my son. You have a young person’s account?
B Yes. You want to open the account now?
A Yes, because he’s earning money now.
B Oh, OK. How is your son?
A He’s sixteen.
B Oh, has left school?
A No, he just works at the weekend.
B That’s nice. What does he?
A He works at the local car wash. Which forms does he need to open an account?
B Here. It’s just this one.
A Thanks. Whose name you need for the account – mine or my son’s?
B Only your son’s if he’s sixteen.
A OK. Thanks very much.
Questions

Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. ........... live near here?
   A You do    B Do you    C You
   ➤ Unit 77

2. ‘Is it going to rain, do you think?’ ‘No, ...........’
   A it isn’t    B isn’t it    C it is
   ➤ Unit 77

3. ‘Have you done the dishes?’ ‘Yes, ...........’
   A I have    B I’ve    C I did
   ➤ Unit 77

4. What time ...........
   A the bus leaves    B leaves the bus    C does the bus leave
   ➤ Unit 78

5. ‘I didn’t talk to her.’ ‘........... you talk to her?’
   A Why    B Why did    C Why didn’t
   ➤ Unit 78

6. ........... is the manager of this department?
   A Who    B What    C Who person
   ➤ Unit 79

7. There’s no one in the room. Who ...........?
   A she talking    B is she talking    C is she talking to
   ➤ Unit 79

8. Sue, I don’t understand these sales figures. ........... you get them from?
   A Where did    B From where did    C Where from did
   ➤ Unit 79

9. I didn’t know you came from Brazil. Where ...........?
   A were you born in    B in were you born    C were you born
   ➤ Unit 79

10. ........... do you speak better, French or Spanish?
    A Whose    B What    C Which
    ➤ Unit 80

11. Someone has left a wallet here. ........... wallet is it?
    A Whose    B Who’s    C Who
    ➤ Unit 80

12. ‘........... Sarah like?’ ‘Flowers – she loves roses.’
    A What is    B What does    C Who is
    ➤ Unit 80

13. ‘What’s the new shop assistant like?’ ‘He ...........’
    A likes reading    B is like friendly    C is friendly
    ➤ Unit 80

14. ........... the journey from London to Paris?
    A Is long    B How long is    C How is long
    ➤ Unit 81

15. ‘........... your sister’s wedding?’ ‘It was lovely, thanks.’
    A How    B What was    C How was
    ➤ Unit 81

16. ‘How tall are you?’ ‘I’m ...........’
    A tall 1.6m    B 1.6m tall    C tall
    ➤ Unit 81

17. ‘Who ...........?’ ‘Sally did.’
    A invited Charlie    B did Charlie invite    C did invite Charlie
    ➤ Unit 82

18. ‘What ...........?’ ‘He agreed to my idea.’
    A he said    B said he    C did he say
    ➤ Unit 82

19. ‘What ...........?’ ‘It means “on the Internet”.’
    A means “online”    B does “online” mean    C does mean “online”
    ➤ Unit 82

20. Who ........... chemistry at the university?
    A teach    B teaches    C is teach
    ➤ Unit 82
Verbs with -ing forms and infinitives

Before you start

1 Read the messages on the Internet. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

![Internet forum screenshot]

- Thomas posted Friday November 5
  I'm in the last year of my medical course. I'm finding things very difficult. This year I'm spending most of my time in the hospital. It's an interesting course and I enjoy studying, but our tutors make us work all day in the hospital and then expect us to study in the evening. They don't let us have any free time! I had time to go out with my friends in previous years. But now I have to spend all my free time in the library. I don't want to lose my friends, but I don't want to fail my exams either!
  What can I do?

- Sally posted Saturday November 6
  Everyone knows that medical degrees are difficult. But you shouldn't feel bad about it. If you can continue working for the next few months, you will soon be a doctor with a wonderful future ahead of you. Talk to your friends – explain the situation to them and arrange to see them at the weekends instead of the evenings.
  And don't forget to get plenty of sleep!
  Let us know what happens.

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

   1 I enjoy watch / watching television in the evening.
   2 You'll get fat if you continue eating / eat so many cakes.
   3 He doesn't want to work / working on Saturday.
   4 Excuse me, Can I to take / take your photograph?
   5 My boss expects me to work / working on Saturday mornings.
   6 You shouldn't let impolite people annoy / to annoy you.
   7 The manager makes me do / to do all the photocopying in the office.

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

   1 watching 2 eating 3 to work 4 to take 5 to work 6 annoy 7 to do

Go online for a full diagnostic test
1 Verb + -ing form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERBS</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>likes and dislikes</td>
<td>like dislike enjoy love hate prefer (not) mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ideas and opinions</td>
<td>suggest consider imagine recommend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actions that start, stop or continue</td>
<td>begin continue delay start stop finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other verbs</td>
<td>avoid miss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do you like working here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Children often dislike going to school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I don't mind getting up early in the morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jack suggested going to the cinema.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can you imagine living without your mobile phone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He began playing in the second half of the game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stop making all that noise!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do you miss living in a big city?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After begin, start and continue, we can use an -ing form or an infinitive with to. The meaning is the same.

would + like/love/hate/prefer ➤ Unit 84.3

2 Verb + preposition + -ing form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERBS</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>verbs with prepositions</td>
<td>give up (= stop) talk about (= discuss) think of (= consider)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I'm thinking of training as a nurse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She's talking about changing her course at university.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 go + -ing form

We sometimes use go + -ing form to talk about doing sports and other activities:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERBS</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sports and other activities</td>
<td>go swimming go skating go horse-riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>go running go skiing go shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How often do you go swimming?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Last year we went skiing in Colorado.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling of -ing forms ➤ page 316
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box. There are three extra words. 
 Listen and check.

0 Are you going to continue studying next year?
1 Do you miss living in a big city?
2 The doctor is staying in bed for three days.
3 We went shopping in New York last December.
4 If you continue taking the medicine, you will feel better.
5 When did you give up smoking?
6 I can’t stop laughing - it’s so funny!

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the advertisement with forms of the verbs in the box.
 Listen and check.

become change earn help study work

Do you enjoy helping people?
Are you thinking of your job?
Have you ever considered a nurse?

Training as a nurse takes three years. As soon as you finish, you can start getting good money.
Or you can continue and learn more about special areas like child care.
If you want a job that is satisfying and you don’t mind long hours, then nursing is for you!

3 Write questions. Use the words in brackets () and go + an activity.

0 (when?)
When do you go swimming?
3 (how often?)

1 (how often?)

2 (when?)

4 (when?)

5 (how often?)

4 Complete these sentences with true information about you/your best friend.

0 He/She hates going to the dentist
1 I hate
2 I never go
3 He/She doesn’t mind
4 He/She often goes
5 I began, in
6 I enjoy
7 I’m thinking of next year.
1 Verb + infinitive without to

We use the infinitive without to after modal verbs (e.g. should, can, must):
I can't believe it!
You must get a job soon.

We use let's + infinitive without to to make suggestions:
Let's go to the cinema this evening.
Let's celebrate …
I don't like burgers – let's have a pizza.

2 Verb + infinitive with to

We use the infinitive with to after some verbs:
can/can't afford agree arrange ask choose decide
deserve expect learn offer plan promise refuse seem want

What a surprise! I didn't expect to see you here.
She wants to find a better job.
Where did you arrange to meet Danny and Laura?

After help we can use an infinitive with to or without to; the meaning is the same:
He helped to carry our bags. or He helped carry our bags.

⚠️ With all the other verbs above we ALWAYS use to:
X I want buy some new jeans.
✓ I want to buy some new jeans.

3 would + like/love/hate/prefer

We use the infinitive with to after would (‘d) like/love/hate/prefer:
My parents would love to meet you.
I'd hate to miss Clara's party.
Would you like to come with us on Tuesday evening?

Look at the difference between would like and like:
I'd like to sail around the world. (= I want to do this in the future.)
I like sailing. (= I enjoy sailing.)
Practice

1 Match the two parts of the sentences. \(\text{[\text{4.11}]\text{ Listen and check.}}\)

| 0 | I’m really bored. Let’s ________ | A | to eat some spicy food? |
| 1 | Do you feel like coming out this evening? I want ________ | B | see a doctor. |
| 2 | Are you hungry? Would you like ________ | C | go to the cinema. |
| 3 | I’m going to make an Indian meal. I hope you can ________ | D | to see a doctor. |
| 4 | Mike’s been feeling ill for days. He’s decided ________ | E | to go to the cinema. |
| 5 | If you’ve got a temperature, I think you should ________ | F | eat spicy food. |

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete this conversation in the supermarket.

Choose the correct words in *italics*. \(\text{[\text{4.12}]\text{ Listen and check.}}\)

CARRIE  Hi, Zack. I didn’t expect (0) *see* / *to see* you here.
ZACK  Well, I promised (1) *get* / *to get* some things for tomorrow evening.
CARRIE  Are you doing something special?
ZACK  We’re going to have a barbeque in the garden. Would you like (2) *come* / *to come*?
CARRIE  Yes. I’d love (3) *come* / *to come*. But I’m not sure about my plans for tomorrow. I agreed (4) *help* / *to help* Dave with his homework, but that probably won’t take long. I expect (5) *finish* / *to finish* it by eight o’clock. Is Isabel going to be there?
ZACK  I’m not really sure. She should (6) *be* / *to be* there, but she hasn’t phoned yet ...
CARRIE  So, what are you buying?
ZACK  Well, I want (7) *get* / *to get* some burgers.
CARRIE  Oh, you know I’m a vegetarian. I can’t (8) *eat* / *to eat* meat.
ZACK  Don’t worry. I’ve already bought lots of salad.
CARRIE  Well, I must (9) *finish* / *to finish* my shopping. Let’s (10) *talk* / *to talk* on the phone tomorrow. I hope I’ll be able to come.

3 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Find eight more places in the email where *to* is missing.

*Write to in the correct positions.*

Subject: Great news!

Hi Sue,

You know I’ve always wanted to study chemistry – well, I’ve just had great news.
The university has given me a place on the chemistry course! I’ve decided to do the four-year course – it should be really interesting. The course starts in October and I’ve arranged to stay in one of the student houses near the college.

I can’t afford to pay the fees myself so my parents have promised help me. And I can get a student loan as well. Uncle Jim has offered me a job in his office during the summer, so I expect to make some money then.

By the way, we’re having a party here next weekend. Would you like to come? You can bring Helen if you like. Everyone here would love to meet her.

Annie X

4 Write sentences about something that ...

0 you’ve arranged to do next week ________
1 you’d like to do in the future ________
2 you can’t afford to do ________
3 you don’t want to do ________

\(\text{Go online for more practice}\)
1 Verb + object + infinitive
After some verbs, we can put an infinitive alone, or we can put an object before
the infinitive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>INFINITIVE WITH to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lucy</td>
<td>wants</td>
<td>to go to university.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carol</td>
<td>wants</td>
<td>her daughter</td>
<td>to go to university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carol</td>
<td>would like</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>to go to university.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other examples of verbs like this are: ask, expect, help and need:
She asked me to phone her. She asked to see the doctor.

We don’t use that ... after these verbs:

\( X \) Do you want that we bring some food to the party?

\( \checkmark \) Do you want us to bring some food to the party?

But some verbs ALWAYS have an object before the infinitive (e.g. advise, allow, invite, teach,
tell, order, warn):
Professor Maclean teaches student nurses to ask all the right questions.

\( X \) The teacher told to be quiet. \( \checkmark \) The teacher told us to be quiet.

We can make these sentences negative. We put not after the object and before to:
The teacher told us not to make a noise. The doctor advised him not to smoke.

2 make and let
After make and let, we put an object + the infinitive without to:
The cold weather made the lake freeze. (= The cold weather caused the lake to freeze.)

\( X \) Our teacher made us to do extra homework.

\( \checkmark \) Our teacher made us do extra homework. (= She forced us to do extra homework.)

\( X \) Our teacher let us to leave early.

\( \checkmark \) Our teacher let us leave early. (= She allowed us to leave early.)

Look at the difference between let + object + infinitive and let’s + infinitive:
Our teacher let us leave early. (= Our teacher allowed us to leave early.)
Let’s leave early today. (= I suggest that we leave early today.)
Practice

1 Choose the correct words in italics. *Listen and check.*

0. My teacher made me write/to write a long report.
1. I asked them/they to give me the answers.
2. Would you prefer the children go/to go by train or by bus?
3. My teacher made me take/to take the test again.
4. The doctor told Gary to not carry/not to carry heavy suitcases.
5. The shop assistant advised we/us to keep our receipts.
6. Will they let me bring/to bring my dictionary into the exam?

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the text with the words and phrases from the box.

help us understand his clients asks have would like lets them makes to talk

DANIEL FULTON is a special kind of doctor – his clients are people who have mental problems. He uses the ideas of the famous doctor and writer Sigmund Freud. Freud's ideas helped us understand how the human mind works.

Daniel (1) people with mental problems to lie on a sofa and relax. Then he tells them (2) about their problems. He (3) his clients talk about their dreams as well as their real problems. He believes our dreams (4) to understand our feelings. Daniel also thinks bad experiences when we are young sometimes make us (5) mental problems

when we are adults, so he often asks (6) to talk about their childhood.

Daniel doesn’t say very much to his clients. He (7) talk about anything – all their feelings and emotions, what they (8) to do and what they feel about other people. He thinks that talking about problems is the best way to solve them.

3 Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. *Listen and check.*

0. The rain caused the river to flood.
   The rain (made the river) flood.
1. The customs officer forced me to open my suitcase.
   The customs officer (made) my suitcase.
2. He said we shouldn’t swim in the water because it was dangerous.
   He warned (swim in the water).
3. Secretaries learn to type in Sean’s class.
   Sean teaches (in his class).
4. Our boss allowed us to go home early on Friday.
   Our boss (allowed) home early on Friday.
5. Maria couldn’t fill in the application form so I helped her.
   I helped Maria (fill in) the application form.
1 UNITS 83 AND 84  Match 1 and 2 with A and B in each pair.

   0 1 This evening I'd like  A  to go to a restaurant.
      2 Jemma loves  B  going to Indian restaurants.
   1 1 Caroline has decided  A  studying history at school.
      2 The children have begun  B  to study medicine at university.
   2 1 On Saturday mornings I go  A  to learn to ride a horse.
      2 One day I'd love  B  riding.
   3 1 Would you like  A  dancing?
      2 How often do you go  B  to dance?
   4 1 I never expected  A  to work in this office.
      2 Do you enjoy  B  working here?

2 UNITS 84 AND 85  Choose the correct words in italics. *Listen and check.*

LUCY  Hello, Alex. I didn't expect (0) you to see / (to see you) here at lunch time.
ALEX  Oh, hi Lucy. I'm on my lunch break.
LUCY  Right. So, how's the job going?
ALEX  Not great. I'd like (1) find / to find a new job really.
LUCY  I'm surprised. I thought you had a great job at the hospital ...
ALEX  Well, the job's OK but my boss is terrible. He's always telling (2) to work / me to work
      harder and he doesn't (3) let / make me have enough holiday. When I started, he
      promised (4) to give me / to me give a holiday after six months. But then he refused
      (5) me to allow / to allow me to go. He forced (6) to work / me to work all through
      the summer!
LUCY  Perhaps you should (7) to leave / leave?
ALEX  I can't afford (8) to live / live without my salary.
LUCY  Well, I think it's very unfair. Everybody deserves (9) have / to have a holiday.
ALEX  I know. Anyway, I must (10) get / to get back to the office now, it's almost two o'clock.

3 UNITS 83 AND 85  Match the sentences with the pictures.
Then complete the sentences. Use forms of the words and phrases in the box.

A   B   C   D   E   F

D    ‘Excuse me. Do you ................................... mind closing the window?’

1 The doctor ........................................... diet. ...........
2 Miranda sometimes .................................... all night long. ...........
3 The security guard ..................................... photos. ...........
4 ‘It's so embarrassing. My mother ................................... them.’ ...........
5 Kyle ..................................................... to the dentist. ...........
4 ALL UNITS  Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words.

0 The bank wouldn’t give me a new credit card.
   The bank refused ………………… to give me ………………… a new credit card.
1 Pauline never wants to go to the dentist.
   Pauline dislikes ………………… the dentist.
2 Everybody has to pay taxes.
   Nobody can avoid ……………………….
3 Danny doesn’t have enough money to go skiing.
   Danny can’t ………………………… skiing.
4 The doctor told me to take more exercise.
   The doctor said I should ………………………… more exercise.
5 My sister wouldn’t give me her mobile phone.
   My sister refused ……………………… her mobile phone.
6 They made the last car at that factory in 1998.
   They stopped ……………………… at that factory in 1998.
7 Everyone has agreed – we’re meeting at six o’clock.
   We’ve arranged ……………………… at six o’clock.

5 ALL UNITS  Complete the text with forms of the verbs in brackets ()

International opportunities for young doctors and nurses

Doctors without Borders

Doctors without Borders or MSF (Médecins Sans Frontières) is an international organisation that gives medical help to people in emergency situations around the world. When there are terrible events such as floods or war, MSF arranges (0) ……to send…… (send) doctors and nurses to help the local people. Each year about 3000 MSF workers travel to more than 70 different countries.

MSF is an independent organisation so governments cannot (1) ………………… (control) it. As well as emergency help, MSF has an educational programme that teaches people about medical problems in poor countries. It also wants (2) ………………… (make) medicines cheaper around the world. It has a training programme for doctors who are planning (3) ………………… (travel) to foreign countries. Many MSF workers can (4) ………………… (teach) local people to improve their own health. MSF also helps (5) ………………… (build) hospitals and it gives advice to local doctors.

IF YOU ARE A NURSE OR DOCTOR AND YOU WOULD LIKE (6) ………………… (HELP) PEOPLE IN OTHER COUNTRIES, YOU CAN (7) ………………… (DOWNLOAD) THE APPLICATION FORM HERE.

YOU MUST (8) ………………… (BE) 18 OR OLDER TO APPLY.

application form

Go online for more review exercises
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. Excuse me. Do you mind ________ the heater? It’s cold in here.
   A to turn on  B turn on  C turning on

2. The company started ________ the machines last year.
   A make  B making  C made

3. I love ________ your emails.
   A receive  B receiving  C received

4. Harry says he will give up ________ football when he’s forty.
   A to play  B play  C playing

5. How often do you ________ dancing?
   A go  B do  C going

6. Do you like ________ to classical music?
   A listening  B listened  C listen

7. You must ________ her new CD – it’s fantastic.
   A buying  B to buy  C buy

8. I’m hungry. Let’s ________ something to eat.
   A get  B to get  C got

9. My brother is learning ________ the electric guitar.
   A playing  B play  C to play

10. Thank you for the invitation. We’d love ________.
    A to come  B come  C coming

11. I ________ to study history next year.
    A like  B liking  C would like

12. It’s hot today. We should ________ to the beach.
    A going  B to go  C go

13. ________ to buy some new jeans tomorrow.
    A I like  B I’d like  C I’m like

14. Would you like ________ you some sandwiches?
    A Carol to make  B that Carol makes  C Carol make

15. I expect ________ to pass the exam.
    A she  B hers  C her

16. The police officer told ________.
    A to stop  B us stopping  C us to stop

17. Did your teacher ________ grammar exercises?
    A make you do  B make do  C make you to do

18. My friend lets ________ his car at the weekends.
    A me to use  B use me  C me use

19. I need ________ my computer.
    A somebody repair  B somebody to repair  C repairing

20. Do you want ________ you?
    A us to help  B us helping  C us help
Reported statements and indirect questions

Before you start

1 Read the two different conversations. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

'I tried to return this dress to the shop yesterday and you advised me to go home and get the receipt. You said I could have my money back then.'

'Ah, I see, but I can’t give you your money back, I’m afraid. We told you that we would give you your money back if the dress was in perfect condition, but it isn’t.'

'But that isn’t right. I said I hadn’t worn it! It is in perfect condition!' 

'Mr Bryant, we asked you to come for an interview because your qualifications are very impressive.'

'Thank you.'

'Now, could you tell us why you left your last job?'

'Of course. My manager said that he would give me a promotion after a year, but he didn’t.'

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 In your application, you said you will / would bring your certificates with you. ➤ Unit 86
2 Louise said she had / have been a teacher before she had children. ➤ Unit 86
3 I told you / to you yesterday that I was going out this evening. ➤ Unit 87
4 The bank manager asked me to / that I should open a new account. ➤ Unit 87
5 We advised you to arrive / arrive early so we could copy your documents. ➤ Unit 87
6 Could you tell us how much your train ticket cost / did your train ticket cost? ➤ Unit 88

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

I would 2 had 3 you 4 me to 5 to arrive 6 your train ticket cost
1 Verb changes in reported statements
We use reported statements when we tell someone what another person has said. We usually use a past tense verb to report them:
I'm getting the 9.30 train. → She said that she was getting the 9.30 train.

After the past tense said, we usually change the tense of the person's words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THE PERSON'S WORDS</th>
<th>THE REPORTED STATEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I'm really hungry.' 'I have a gun.'</td>
<td>She said that she was really hungry. He said that he had a gun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'The team's playing badly.'</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I can do that.'</td>
<td>could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I will use the gun.'</td>
<td>would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'You must be quiet!'</td>
<td>must/had to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some verbs do not change in reported statements: could, should, ought to, would, might:
'I might go shopping later.' → She said she might go shopping later.

2 Reporting the past simple and present perfect
After the past simple and present perfect, we often use had + the -ed (past participle) form of the verb, e.g. had/hadn't finished. (This is called the past perfect tense.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THE PERSON'S WORDS</th>
<th>THE REPORTED STATEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'It snowed a lot in the winter.'</td>
<td>They said that it had snowed a lot in the winter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Anna hasn't arrived yet.'</td>
<td>He said that Anna hadn't arrived yet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regular past participles ➤ page 316  Irregular past participles ➤ page 314

3 Pronoun changes in reported statements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHANGES TO</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>he/she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me</td>
<td>him/her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>his/her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ours</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Also: we ➤ they, us ➤ them, our ➤ their, you ➤ I/we, you ➤ me/us, your ➤ my/our, yours ➤ mine/ours
Practice

1 Complete the reported statements with verbs, pronouns or possessives.

0 'I haven’t got any money.' She said that she ....hadn’t.... got any money.
1 'I work at the factory.' He said that he ................... at the factory.
2 'We can’t leave early.' They said that they ................. leave early.
3 'The parcel hasn’t arrived.' Jane said that the parcel ............... arrived.
4 'We aren’t going to stay long.' We said that we ................ going to stay long.
5 'Jim lost his job a few weeks ago.' She said that Jim ................. his job a few weeks ago.
6 'I’m not happy about the date.' He said that ................ wasn’t happy about the date.
7 'We can wait for you.' They said that they could wait for .................
8 'You’ve taken my coat.' The woman said that I had taken ............... coat.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Match the reported statements 1–7 in the conversation with the person’s words A–H below.

EMILY Mr Fellowes, could I ask you something?
MR F Yes, of course, Emily. What is it?
EMILY Well, in my interview they said that (0) I wouldn’t have to wait long for a promotion. I’ve been here for two years and I think my work has been good. When I asked you about it last month, you said that (1) you’d think about my promotion.
MR F I did, but then two weeks ago you said that (2) you were thinking about leaving. I told you that (3) I had thought about your promotion. I said that (4) I didn’t think you were ready, and, anyway, I said that (5) I couldn’t make the decision alone.
EMILY Yes, I said that (6) I had thought about leaving. But that’s because I’m beginning to think that I don’t have a future here. Did you get my email last week? In it, I said that (7) I thought I was ready for a more difficult job. If you can’t offer me one, I’ll look for one with another company.

A 'I’m thinking about leaving.' ............... E 'You won’t have to wait long for a promotion.' ....0....
B 'I can’t make the decision alone.' ............... F 'I think I’m ready ...' ............
C 'I’ll think about your promotion.' ............... G 'I’ve thought about leaving.' .............
D 'I don’t think you’re ready.' ............... H 'I’ve thought about your promotion.' .............

3 Make the words in the pictures into reported statements.

0 The robber said that he ....wanted all.... the money..............
1 The assistant said that she ..............
2 The other robber said that they ..............
3 The assistant said that ..............
4 The first robber said ..............
5 The customer said ..............

Wanna get the money! I can’t give you the money.
We forgot about the security guard! We must get out quickly!
He’s already called the police.
He doesn’t have a gun – it’s a banana!
say, tell, ask, advise

Jack told the doctor that he was still having headaches and she advised him to see a specialist.

1 say and tell

We use the verbs say and tell to report information. Look at the differences between say and tell:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SAY</th>
<th>TELL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jack said that he was still having headaches.</td>
<td>Jack told me that he was still having headaches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jack said to me that he was still having headaches.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Jack said me that he was still having headaches.
⚠️ Jack told that he was still having headaches.
⚠️ Jack told to me that he was still having headaches.

NATURAL ENGLISH In everyday English, we often use say and tell without that:

Lucy said (that) she'd meet us at six o'clock.
He told me (that) he couldn't come to the party.

Pronunciation ➤ 1.31

2 tell, ask and advise

When we report instructions, requests and advice, we can use tell, ask and advise. With these verbs, we use the infinitive with to:

'Be quiet!' ➔ She told me to be quiet.

⚠️ We put not BEFORE the infinitive with to:

'Don't touch the oven!' ➔ She told me don't touch the oven.
✓ She told me not to touch the oven.

- instructions:
  TEACHER 'Don't talk during the lesson!' ➔ Our teacher told us not to talk during the lesson.

- requests:
  MOTHER 'Please phone home, Anna.' ➔ Anna's mother asked her to phone home.

- advice:
  DOCTOR 'I think you should see a specialist.' ➔ Jack's doctor advised him to see a specialist.

Verb + object + infinitive ➤ Unit 85.1
Practice

1 Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.

0 I said / told the interviewer that I was really interested in the job.
1 He said / told me that a lot of people had applied for the job.
2 But he said / told that my qualifications were good.
3 I told / said him that I had studied part-time.
4 He said / told that my application was very impressive.
5 After the interview, he said / told me that I was perfect for the job.
6 And I said / told that I would love to work there.

2 Look at the pictures and complete the reported instructions, requests or advice for each one. Listen and check.

0 The teacher asked the students to listen carefully.
1 He told them to ......................................................
2 He told Carla ..............................................................
3 He told the students ....................................................
4 He asked the class .....................................................
5 He advised ...............................................................

3 Find six more mistakes in the sentences and correct them. Tick (√) the correct sentences.

told/asked

0 My mother said me to phone her from the airport.
1 Harry told that he was very happy.
2 The assistant asked me wait for a few minutes.
3 My lecturer advised me take the exam again in June.
4 The teacher told the children to not talk in class.
5 I said the assistant that I wanted a return ticket to Paris.
6 My boss asked me not to leave work early that day.
7 Sophie said that she was feeling really unhappy.
8 My friend asked me don’t buy her a birthday present.

4 Think about the last time you had an interview: as part of an exam, for a job, or for a course of study. Write three sentences about it, starting They / He / She asked me to / told me to / advised me to.

At my last interview, they asked me to take a test.

.................................................................
.................................................................
.................................................................

Go online for more practice
Indirect questions

1 Use
We use indirect questions to ask for information in a polite way, e.g:
Can/could you tell me ...? Do you know ...? I'd like to know ...
Excuse me, could you tell me where the nearest bank is?

2 Wh- questions
In indirect questions the subject of the verb comes after the wh-word and before the verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT QUESTION</th>
<th>INDIRECT QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What time is it?</td>
<td>Do you know what time it is?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where is the English exam?</td>
<td>Can you tell me where the English exam is?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much are these jeans?</td>
<td>I'd like to know how much these jeans are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who is that man?</td>
<td>Do you know who that man is?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When are they coming back?</td>
<td>I'd like to know when they are coming back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where has Neil gone?</td>
<td>Do you know where Neil has gone?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Can you tell me where is the station?  ✓ Can you tell me where the station is?

3 Wh- questions with do, does and did
In indirect questions, we do not use do, does or did after the wh-word. We use the normal verb form for positive sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT QUESTION</th>
<th>INDIRECT QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where does he live?</td>
<td>Do you know where he lives?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often do you go shopping?</td>
<td>Could you tell me how often you go shopping?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where did they go for their holiday?</td>
<td>I'd like to know where they went for their holiday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ I'd like to know what did he say.  ✓ I'd like to know what he said.

4 Yes/No questions (Is ...? Do ...? Have ...? Will ...? etc.)
In indirect questions, we use if or whether + subject and the normal verb form for positive sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT QUESTION</th>
<th>INDIRECT QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is there a petrol station near here?</td>
<td>Could you tell me if there is a petrol station near here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will he be at the party?</td>
<td>I'd like to know if he will be at the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has she seen that film?</td>
<td>Do you know whether she has seen that film?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pronunciation ➤ 1.32

228
Practice

1 Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.

0 Can you tell me what [the time is] is the time?
1 Could you tell me how do I get / I get to the bus station?
2 Could you tell me where is the ticket office / the ticket office is?
3 I'd like to know how often runs the airport bus / the airport bus runs.
4 Can you tell me how much the journey costs / does the journey cost?
5 Do you know if the airport bus leaves / does leave from here?
6 Do you know where I get on / do I get on the bus?
7 Can you tell me if the bus has gone / has the bus gone?
8 Could you tell me what time the last bus is / is the last bus?

2 Rosemary often forgets things. Complete the questions she is asking her friend. Use the verbs in brackets ()

0 ‘Do you know where I put .................. my glasses?’ (put)
1 ‘Can you remember if I pick up .................. my handbag?’ (pick up)
2 ‘Can you remember where I park .................. the car?’ (park)
3 ‘Oh dear. Do you know if I lock .................. the front door?’ (lock)
4 ‘Can you tell me who I come .................. to dinner this evening?’ (come)

3 Grammar in use. Read the questions in the questionnaire and make them more polite.

Listen and check.

INFOSYSTEMS
Our shopping habits

0 How often do you use the town centre shops?
1 Which shops do you like most?
2 How much do you usually spend in the town centre?
3 Do you use cash or credit cards?
4 Do you ever go out of town to shop?
5 Have you ever used the Internet for shopping?
6 Did you come by car or bus today?
7 Where did you park?
8 Will you continue to use the town centre for shopping?

0 Could you tell me how often you use the town centre shops?
1 I'd like to know which shops you like most.
2 Can you say how much you usually spend in the town centre?
3 I'd like to know if you use cash or credit cards.
4 Could you tell me if you ever go out of town to shop?
5 I'd like to know if you've ever used the Internet for shopping.
6 Can you tell me how you came by car or bus today?
7 Could you tell me where you parked?
8 Finally, I'd like to know if you will continue to use the town centre for shopping.
1 UNITS 86 AND 87  The interviewer asked these people a question. Report their answers.
Listen and check.

0 Daniel said that he wanted to travel to South America.
1 Mariesa said that she
2 Iain said that he
3 Nadia said
4 Joseph said
5 Ines said
6 Andy and Liz

2 UNITS 86 AND 87  Choose the correct words in italics to complete the journalist’s report.

EMERGENCY LANDING AT AIRPORT – Nick Bowen reports
When I arrived at the airport, there was a lot of activity around the plane. The passengers were all in the airport building, waiting to talk to the police. It was a very lucky escape. Some of them described what had happened.

Joshua Otobo, from Nigeria, said that everything had gone dark and some people start had started screaming. Several people said that the pilot had told them keep calm not to keep calm, and that they are were going to land safely.

Tom Strachan, a company director, told me told that he just feels felt happy to be safe and that he is was going home to his my wife and children to celebrate.

New York singer, Samantha Allen, said that the airport doctor had advised them all talk to talk to him about the experience, but added that she was is flying on to the US so she will would have to talk to someone there.
Use Rowan’s notes to write Sarah’s questions to the sales manager.

0 Can you tell me how many bikes we sold last month?
1 I’d like to know if .................................................................
2 Could you tell me how .................................................................
3 Do you know .................................................................
4 Can you tell me .................................................................
5 I’d like to know .................................................................

Sarah
Can you call the sales manager for me?
I need to find out
0 how many bikes did we sell last month?
1 does he have a list of them all?
2 how much discount do we give to important customers?
3 are the sales increasing?
4 has he got enough salespeople in the shops?
5 when can he get to the office for a meeting?

Thanks,
Rowan

Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first.
Use one, two or three words.

0 The tourist guide said, ‘Put your suitcases into the bus.’
The tourist guide told us to put our suitcases into the bus.
1 She said, ‘Please wait inside the bus.’
She asked wait inside the bus.
2 She said to us, ‘I hope you will have a good holiday in my country.’
She said that she hoped a good holiday in her country.
3 She said to us, ‘May is a lovely time of year.’
She told May was a lovely time of year.
4 She said, ‘But it can be very hot by the sea.’
She said to be very hot by the sea.
5 She said to us, ‘You should be careful in the hot sun’
She advised be careful in the hot sun.

Write the words in the correct order to make reported sentences or indirect questions.

0 advised smoking the doctor stop to me ........................................... The doctor advised me to stop smoking.
1 where is you me could the nearest bank tell ? ........................................
2 the builder the stairs dangerous us were told that ........................................
3 asked to fill in the hotel receptionist me a form ........................................
4 the cinema full said the manager that was ........................................
5 like if marked to know my homework you’ve I’d ........................................
6 our teacher the exam said on Friday was us to that ........................................
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. When they found the woman in the snow, she said .......... freezing.
   A I was  B she is  C she was

2. Dmitri said that he .......... me that evening, but he didn’t.
   A would call  B will call  C is calling

3. Damon told me that he .......... last weekend with his brother.
   A is spending  B was spending  C will spend

4. Carol said that she .......... the Marketing Director before.
   A didn’t meet  B hasn’t met  C hadn’t met

5. When I started my new job they told me that .......... arrive at 8.30.
   A I had to  B I have to  C she must

6. ‘I think mine was the best answer.’ → Anna said she thought .......... was the best answer.
   A hers  B her  C mine

7. ‘We’ll go in our car.’ → Mum and Dad said we would go in .......... car.
   A our  B your  C their

8. ‘I’ll show you the photos.’ → She told me that she would show .......... the photos.
   A you  B me  C her

9. Shona told .......... that she was leaving the company.
   A her manager  B to her manager  C it to her manager

10. At the airport they .......... that the flight was delayed.
    A said us  B told to us  C said

11. My friend Sam .......... that he wanted to leave home.
    A told his parents  B said his parents  C told to his parents

    A me study  B me to study  C to me study

13. We asked the window cleaner .......... later.
    A come back  B to come back  C please come back

14. The woman on the bus told the children ...........
    A not to shout  B to not shout  C no shouting

15. My neighbour asked .......... play my music loudly.
    A to me not to  B me not to  C me don’t

16. Could you tell me .......... here?
    A does Angela live  B if Angela does live  C if Angela lives

17. Do you know ..........?
    A where the post office is  B where is the post office  C is where the post office

18. I’d like to know what time .......... last night!
    A you got home  B did you get home  C you did get home

19. Can you tell me .......... finished?
    A has the exam  B if the exam has  C the exam has

20. Do you know where .......... at night?
    A goes the cat  B does the cat go  C the cat goes
Relative clauses

Before you start

1 Read the text from a film magazine. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

**KING KONG**

EVERYONE KNOWS this famous view. It shows the building which was once the tallest in the world. The Empire State Building became famous around the world because of the movie *King Kong*. Clearly this is the 1933 film, not the one from 2005! In the movie, a film director can't find an actress for his new movie - a film he wants to make on a mysterious island. Finally, he finds a young woman who agrees to work for him, and they go to the island. When they get there, they realise that there is great danger - there is a huge gorilla on the island who kills people in the forest where he lives. But the gorilla takes the woman from the city and runs away with her, and protects her from other animals. The people who have come from New York catch him and take him back there, which is very sad. In the final scene he carries the girl that he ran away with to the top of the Empire State Building. Of course, when you watch the film, you believe that he is going to kill the girl, but in fact he puts her down gently and then falls from the building and dies. The 1933 film was very successful - this was the reason why they made another one in 2005.

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics.

The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1. We live in a building _was once_ / _which was once_ in a film.  
   _Unit 89_  
   _Unit 90_

2. My brother married the girl _who_ / _which_ lived next door to us.  
   _Unit 89_  
   _Unit 90_

3. We're going to meet the people _who_ / _who they_ have come to look at the school.  
   _Unit 89_  
   _Unit 90_

4. What's the name of that vegetarian dish _you made_ / _that you made it_?  
   _Unit 90_  
   _Unit 91_

5. San Francisco is the city _that_ / _where_ I spent the first five years of my life.  
   _Unit 91_  
   _Unit 91_

6. Who was the man you were playing _tennis_ / _tennis with_ last night?  
   _Unit 91_  
   _Unit 91_

7. Let me tell you the reasons _which_ / _why_ I don't want the job.  
   _Unit 91_  
   _Unit 91_

8. I'm starting a great new job next week, _which_ / _what_ is very exciting.  
   _Unit 91_  
   _Unit 91_

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

1. _Which was once_  
   2. _Who_  
   3. _Who_  
   4. _You made_  
   5. _Where_  
   6. _Tennis with_  
   7. _Why_  
   8. _Which_

Go online for a full diagnostic test
Director Peter Jackson filmed the three movies which form the *Lord of the Rings* series in his home country, New Zealand.

1 Relative clauses
We can use relative clauses to make two sentences into one sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TWO SENTENCES</th>
<th>TWO SENTENCES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sentence 1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Sentence 2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is my brother.</td>
<td>He lives in Japan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are three movies.</td>
<td>They form the 'Lord of the Rings' series.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've got a new mobile phone.</td>
<td>It takes brilliant photos.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ONE SENTENCE</th>
<th>ONE SENTENCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Main clause</td>
<td>Relative clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is my brother</td>
<td>who lives in Japan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are three movies</td>
<td>which form the 'Lord of the Rings' series.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've got a new mobile phone</td>
<td>that takes brilliant photos.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The relative clause gives us more information about the person or thing in the main clause.

2 *who, which, that*
We introduce a relative clause with a relative pronoun (*who, which or that*):
- *who* is for a relative clause about people:
  *Alexander Graham Bell was the man who invented the telephone.*
  *Do you know the woman who works at the cinema?*
- *which* is for a relative clause about animals or things (but not people):
  *The horse which won the race has died. I've bought a new computer which cost £800.*
- *that* for people, animals and things:
  *I've contacted all the students that took the exam. It's a phone that plays music.*

⚠️ In a relative clause, *who, which, or that* REPLACES *he, she, it, etc, or a noun*:

✘ *Jose is the man who he lives next door.*
✔ *Jose is the man who lives next door.*
✘ *We don't go to restaurants which they serve meat.*
✔ *We don't go to restaurants which serve meat.*
Practice

1 Choose the correct words in italics. In two of the questions, both words are correct.

0 We've just bought a DVD player that / who can store over 100 films.
1 Do you know my friend which / who is a racing driver?
2 I got these shoes from the shop who / which has a sale at the moment.
3 This is an iPod who / which can also play films.
4 We had the teacher who / that speaks Japanese.
5 The woman who / which lives across the road saw the thieves.
6 China is the country that / which is growing fastest at the moment.
7 At the zoo we saw a tiger who / which only had three legs.
8 Green tea is a delicious drink that / who is good for your health.

2 Match the two parts of the sentences. Then write a relative pronoun.

0 Most people like films which / that

1 June is a month ......................
2 Jennifer Lopez is an actor ......................
3 Neil Armstrong was the astronaut ......................
4 In 1918 there was an illness ......................
5 Summerhill is a school in England ......................
6 Mozart was a composer ......................

A allows students to choose their own classes.
B is also famous as a singer.
C make them feel happy.
D died at the age of 35.
E first walked on the moon.
F often has very nice weather in the UK.
G killed over 50 million people around the world.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Read the text. Complete it with a relative pronoun and one of the phrases A–F below.

TORONTO IS A MODERN CITY and it is not very popular with tourists, but there's a part of it (0) ....... which ...................... This area is full of buildings (1) ................. in the 1800s – it's the best example of Victorian industrial architecture in the country. This part of Toronto is now an area (2) ................., so it is full of cultural interest. Because it's an area (3) ................., you can walk round it without any traffic problems. But there is one thing (4) .................. It is the fact that it's the second most popular film location in the world, after Hollywood. Many successful films were made here, such as Chicago and X-Men, and on any day you might see film stars (5) ................., such as Renée Zellweger.

A attracts artists
B is really worth a visit
C were built
D makes the area really famous
E are very well-known
F doesn't allow cars

Go online for more practice
Basildon Park is a house which often appears in films. It's the house which they used in *Pride and Prejudice*.

1 Relative pronoun as subject

Look at these sentences:

*Basildon Park is a house.*  *Basildon Park* often appears in films.

*Basildon Park is a house which often appears in films.*

Here, *which* = the subject of *appears*. It replaces the noun *Basildon Park* in the second sentence.

2 Relative pronoun as object

Now look at these sentences:

*Basildon Park is a house.*  They used *the house* in *Pride and Prejudice*.

*Basildon Park is the house which they used in *Pride and Prejudice*. *

Here, *which* = the object of *used*.

We can also use *who* and *that* in this way:

*The teacher who I like most is my music teacher.*

*Alex is the guy that I met yesterday.*

**NATURAL ENGLISH** We often use relative clauses without *which, who* or *that* when they are the object of the verb:

*Basildon Park is the house they used in *Pride and Prejudice*.*

*The teacher I like most is my music teacher.*

*Alex is the guy I met yesterday.*

⚠️ Don't repeat the noun or pronoun:

*✗ The house they used in the film it was called Basildon Park.*

*✓ The house they used in the film was called Basildon Park.*

⚠️ We need the relative pronoun when it is the subject:

*✗ Basildon Park is a house often appears in film.*

*✓ Basildon Park is a house which often appears in films.*
Practice

1 Put a line through the relative pronoun if it is not necessary. 4.25 Listen and check.
0 We’ve just sold the car which we bought two years ago.
1 Have you met Richard? He’s the friend that I met in Bangkok.
2 Have you got any pens which I can use on the whiteboard?
3 I don’t like coffee which tastes really bitter.
4 Did you see the doctor who examined you last time?
5 Harrison’s? Is that the tour company which you used for your last holiday?
6 Is James McAvoy the actor who was in Atonement?

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation with relative pronouns, but only if they are necessary.
TOURIST Excuse me. Can you tell me something about the Harry Potter tour?
OFFICIAL Of course. It’s a fascinating tour which lasts all day. It starts in London and you visit a lot of the places the director chose when he filmed the Harry Potter movies.
TOURIST Oh, so the tour isn’t only around London?
OFFICIAL No, there were several places in and around Oxford they used in the filming.
TOURIST That’s interesting. Is there a guide?
OFFICIAL Oh, yes, there’s a guide with every tour. Can you give me a lot of interesting information.
TOURIST Right. Where does the tour go in London?
OFFICIAL It goes to St Pancras Station – that’s the station has the famous Platform 9¾ in the film. Then it goes to London Zoo – you know, you see that in the part of the film shows Harry with the animals. You have lunch in London and after lunch the tour goes to Oxford. There are several places in the University you visit.
TOURIST It all sounds good. Now, how much are the tickets ...?

3 Join the sentences. Use a relative pronoun if necessary. 4.26 Listen and check.
0 I’ve never eaten at my cousin’s restaurant. He opened it last year.
I’ve never eaten at the restaurant my cousin opened last year.

1 Here’s the book. I promised to give it to you.
Here’s the book.

2 Have you seen the technician? He repairs the computers.
Have you seen the technician who repairs the computers?

3 That’s the film. I described it on the phone.
That’s the film I described on the phone.

4 Have you been to the hotel? It was in The Italian Job.
Have you been to the hotel that was in The Italian Job?

5 Sally’s just bought a car. It goes really fast.
Sally’s just bought the car that goes really fast.

6 We saw the woman. We met her at Ginny’s party last year.
We saw the woman we met at Ginny’s party last year.
1 Prepositions in relative clauses

Verbs often have prepositions after them (e.g. look for, talk about, go to).
In relative clauses, we usually put the preposition at the end of the clause:
I'm looking for a book. → This is the book (that) I'm looking for.
I was talking about Maria. → Maria is the woman (who) I was talking about.
We went to that beach. → That is the beach (which) we went to.

2 when, where, why

We can also use when, where and why for relative clauses
- When is for a relative clause about time, days, years, etc:
  We met on the day when I passed my final exam.
- Where is for a relative clause about places:
  That's the bank where Joan works.
- Why is for a relative clause about reason:
  She's working. That's the reason why she can't come.

There is always a subject after when, where or why. It is a different subject from the one in the main clause:
main clause subject relative clause subject
That's the building where we do our exams.

⚠ When the relative clause begins with when or where, we do not include a place or time preposition:
× September 20th is the day when we got married on.
✓ September 20th is the day when we got married.
× That's the house where we spent our childhood in.
✓ That's the house where we spent our childhood.

3 Using which to make a comment

We can use which to make a comment on the idea in a clause:
For the scene of Gandhi's funeral, there were over 300,000 people, which is amazing.
(The fact that there were over 300,000 people is amazing.)
We took the children to the seaside on Sunday, which was really relaxing.
(Taking the children to the seaside was really relaxing.)

With these relative clauses we need a comma (,) before which.
Practice

1 Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.

0 The reason which / why I can’t come with you is that I don’t have enough money.
1 It was really sunny on the day when / where we had our last exam.
2 2007 was the year when / which there were a lot of floods.
3 Have you chosen the date on when / when you want to have your party?
4 I’ve just read the new book by Orhan Pamuk, that / which I really enjoyed.
5 I’m sure this is the place when / where we agreed to meet.
6 Mrs Coles, I’ve got the DVD for which / which you were looking for.

2 Match the two parts of the sentences.

0 Last weekend I saw my first football match, ................................. A which was very tiring.
1 David’s grandmother died last week, ................................. B which was fantastic news!
2 We had to drive 800km in one day last week, ................................. C which was really boring.
3 My cousin in Canada called last night, ................................. D which was very sad.
4 We had to wait in the queue for two hours, ................................. E which was exciting.
5 We won the top prize of 10,000 euros, ................................. F which was a real surprise.

3 GRAMMAR IN USE] Complete the conversation with the phrases from the box. Listen and check.

A Excuse me. I’m looking for Jeremy Trent.
B I’m the person (0) you’re looking for ........................................

Why do you want me?
A I’ve got lunch for some people, some sandwiches.
B Oh, right. Well, put the box down there.
A Where?
B There! On the chair where (1) ........................................

OK, who are the sandwiches for?
A This is for Carol Holmes.
B She’s the woman over there (2) ........................................ and a black jacket.
A OK. And these are for Peter Davis.
B That’s him – the man (3) ...........................................
A And the salad is for Alicia Keane.
B Alicia’s the woman (4) ........................................... that boy over there.
A OK, and finally, George Andropoulos.
B George is the boy (5) ...........................................
A And I’ve got the bill. Are you the person (6) ...........................................?
B Yes, I’ll pay it.
A Are you the director?
B Yes, I’m the director, (7) ...........................................

4 Use the ideas below to write sentences. Add a comment using which.

0 something you did last week I went to the cinema, which wasn’t very exciting.
1 something you did last weekend ........................................
2 your last holiday ........................................
3 a recent piece of news ........................................
4 a recent celebration ........................................

Go online for more practice and a progress test
1 UNITS 89 AND 90 There are five more mistakes in the email. Find and correct them.

Hi Simon

How are things? We haven’t spoken for a while so I thought I’d write a quick email. Did Anna get the job she wanted it?

We’re fine. I’ve just had my 30th birthday and David gave me a ring that it belonged to his grandmother – it’s really lovely. He had to go to the hospital again about his leg, but he didn’t see the doctor which he saw last time, so he had to repeat everything for the new doctor! It’s six months since he had the accident what caused the problems.

I’ve just bought a new laptop. In the end I got the one that which you told me about. It’s really good and I think it will be useful for those business trips who I need a laptop for, because it’s very easy to carry.

Write back when you can – let’s try to see each other during the summer.

Sharon

2 ALL UNITS Complete the sentences. Use a relative pronoun if one is necessary.

0 Here’s a list of books. You need them for the course.
   Here’s the list of books you need for the course.

1 Have you seen the flowers? Max sent them to me.
   Have you seen the flowers to me?

2 I haven’t seen the man for two weeks. He lives upstairs.
   I haven’t seen the man for two weeks.

3 I visited a house. Jane Austen grew up there.
   I visited the house.

4 Have you heard about that woman? She won a million pounds.
   Have you heard about that woman a million pounds?

5 Do you remember that day last summer? We went to the beach then.
   Do you remember that day last summer to the beach?

6 Did you find that CD? You were looking for it.
   Did you find that CD?

7 I left my job. Let me tell you the reason why.
   I’ll tell you my job.

8 Have you got any of that liquid? It covers mistakes.
   Have you got any of that liquid mistakes?
3 ALL UNITS  Complete the conversation with the phrases from the box.

Listen and check.

A Did you do anything interesting last night?
B Yes, I went to the cinema, (0) which was the first time in weeks.
I saw The Ghost Writer.
A I don’t know that. Was it good?
B No, not really. It’s by a director (1) .................. a lot of good films, but this was disappointing.
A What’s it about?
B Well, it’s a thriller (2) .................. by Robert Harris. I expected a film (3) .................. to be great, as he’s such a good actor, but it’s quite boring, (4) .................. . But the person (5) .................. enjoyed it.
A Oh, who did you go with?
B Julia – the friend of mine (6) .................. at Sandra’s party.
A Oh, yes. I remember. She was the girl (7) .................. and jeans, wasn’t she?
B Yes, that’s right.
A Where was the film on?
B At the Regent. It’s the cinema (8) .................. on the way to the station.

4 ALL UNITS  Complete the text with the correct words or phrases, A, B or C below.

FAMOUS LOCATIONS IN FILM   PART 7

THIS WEEK we’re going to look at the locations in The Bourne Identity. The film, with Matt Damon (as Jason Bourne) and Franka Potente (as Marie) was a huge success in 2002, the year (0) .... A .... it first appeared in the cinemas. The story of Jason Bourne, a man (1) .......... can’t remember anything about his life, is interesting, but the locations (2) .......... the film uses were also main features. The sea (3) .......... some fishermen find Bourne and pull him into their boat is near the coast of northwest Italy, and the apartment (4) .......... is in Paris. Bourne first meets Marie in the US Embassy in Zurich (5) .......... is interesting because the building was actually in Prague! A lot of the film takes place in Paris, in or near places (6) .......... are very well-known, such as the Louvre. The film ends on a Greek island (7) .......... Marie has made a new life – this is the famous holiday island of Mykonos.

0 A when  B which  C where
1 A who  B he  C who
2 A who  B that  C whose
3 A where  B which  C whose
4 A Bourne lives  B that Bourne lives  C Bourne lives in
5 A which  B , which  C , that
6 A where  B who  C that
7 A which  B where  C when

Go online for more review exercises
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C. Sometimes two answers are correct.

1. Mr Robbins is the teacher .......... taught me French.
   A who  B which  C has  ➤ Unit 89
2. Samson is the horse .......... the biggest race of the year.
   A who won  B that won  C what won  ➤ Unit 89
3. Janice is my neighbour .......... works for the BBC.
   A who  B what  C which  ➤ Unit 89
4. I met the architect .......... designed the shopping centre in the town.
   A that  B which  C who  ➤ Unit 89
5. Is Arthur C. Clarke the author .......... wrote 2001: A Space Odyssey?
   A who he  B who is  C who  ➤ Unit 89
6. They’re opening a shop .......... is going to sell old books and records.
   A it  B which  C which it  ➤ Unit 89
7. I’m going to try to replace the phone .......... in the street.
   A that I dropped  B I dropped  C who I dropped  ➤ Unit 90
8. Karen’s working with the man .......... at the party last week.
   A I met  B who I met him  C I met him  ➤ Unit 90
9. That’s the house ..........  
   A we’re buying it  B we’re buying the house  C that we’re buying  ➤ Unit 90
10. Is this the CD ..........?
    A you wanted  B wanted  C that you wanted  ➤ Unit 90
11. Did you see the man .........., leather trousers?
    A who was wearing  B was wearing  C he was wearing  ➤ Unit 90
12. We’re meeting at the restaurant .......... 
    A Fran told us  B Fran told us about  C Fran told us about it  ➤ Unit 91
13. Who was the woman .......... at the party?
    A to you were talking  B you were talking to  C you were talking  ➤ Unit 91
14. I’ve looked everywhere but I can’t find the DVD .......... 
    A I’m looking for  B that I’m looking  C that I’m looking for  ➤ Unit 91
15. Kevin Black is the man .........., all afternoon.
    A John played tennis with  B with John played tennis  
    C who John played tennis  ➤ Unit 91
16. Venice was the town .........., I met my wife.
    A where  B which  C what  ➤ Unit 91
17. The reason .......... so much is that she’s so friendly.
    A for I like her  B why I like her  C which I like her  ➤ Unit 91
18. We visited some of the places in the United States .......... Star Wars
    was filmed.
    A which  B when  C where  ➤ Unit 91
19. Lara came to visit us last night, .......... was a nice surprise.
    A what  B that  C which  ➤ Unit 91
20. Lots of people laughed at the children, .......... made me very angry.
    A it  B which  C that  ➤ Unit 91
Linking words

Before you start

1. Read the police report. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

Police Report
June 10 2007 East 46th Street Apt 217
Watching Al Padrone
9.30 Police officer Haynes and I arrived at 9.30 and set up the equipment. We had to watch carefully because Apartment 217 is about 50 feet away across the street. No action.
13.15 Woman X arrived at Apartment 217. She rang the bell but no one opened the door. While she was waiting, she smoked a cigarette, then she made a call on her mobile. In the end, she walked away.
18.30 Al Padrone and woman X arrived at the apartment, but from different directions. Before going in, the woman pointed up at the window where we were sitting. Haynes waved at her, so I think they know we are here.
20.00 There was a knock at our door. Haynes opened it and came back with two pizzas. When I looked across at Apartment 217, both Al and the woman were waving at us and laughing. I think we have a problem.

2. Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1. We can stay at this hotel and/or we can look for a better one.
2. Both Sony and/or Philips produce electrical goods.
3. I left my job so that/because I was getting bored with the work.
4. The camera didn’t work properly so/because we got a refund.
5. While/When we turned on the light, we noticed the broken window.
6. Please wait here until the dentist will be/is ready for you.
7. During/While we were having dinner at the restaurant, it started snowing.
8. You have to buy a ticket at the machine before getting/get on the bus.
9. We got up really late. Then we missed the bus and had to wait for the next one. In the end, At first, we arrived at the wedding ten minutes late.

3. Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

Go online for a full diagnostic test
1 and, but and or

We can use and, but and or to join two clauses. We put them between the clauses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SENTENCE 1</th>
<th>LINKING WORD</th>
<th>SENTENCE 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I've washed up</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>I've put the dishes away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've washed up</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>I haven't put the dishes away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can wash up</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>I can put the dishes away.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After and and or we don’t need to repeat the subject (I, he, you, etc.) or the auxiliary/modal verb:
I've washed up and (I've) put the dishes away.
I can wash up or (I can) put the dishes away.

We don’t need to repeat the verb if it is the same in both clauses:
I've made a cake and (I've made) some biscuits.
Would you like tea or (would you like) coffee?

We repeat the subject (I, he, you, etc.) after but:
I'd like to come but I haven't finished my homework yet.

Pronunciation ➤ 1.33

2 both ... and, either ... or

We use both ... and and either ... or to make and/or stronger.

- both ... and is for two similar ideas:
  Hilary speaks French and Japanese.
  Hilary speaks both French and Japanese.
  We can go shopping and see the film. We've got time.
  We can both go shopping and see the film. We've got time.

- either ... or is for two choices:
  We can watch TV or we can listen to music.
  We can either watch TV or (we can) listen to music.
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with and, but or or. Listen and check.

0 I’ve booked the flights .and... I’ve found a great hotel!
1 I’ve booked the flights ........... I couldn’t find a hotel.
2 I’m afraid I haven’t booked the flights ........... found a hotel. I’ve been too busy.
3 I haven’t booked the flights yet ........... I’ve found a really good hotel.
4 We visited Mum in hospital ........... took her a huge bunch of flowers.
5 Did you visit Mum in hospital ........... did you just phone her today?
6 We visited Mum in hospital ........... we couldn’t bring her home today.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the text with linking words from the box.

and (x 3) both but either or

What would you do in this situation? Do something special –

become a special police officer.

Do you want to do something to help people (1) ............... you don’t know what?
Are you (2) ............... young with free time (3) ............... retired from full-time work?
Being a special police officer can (4) ............... give you a new interest (5) ............... provide some extra money for you.
We train you (6) ............... provide your uniform and equipment – we do this because we need people like you.
Become a special police officer (7) ............... find a new life today.

Would you walk past (0) ........... or (1) ........... stop and help?

3 Write sentences 1–3 with both ... and. Write sentences 4–6 with either ... or. Listen and check.

0 Julie / swim / dive very well ... Julie both swims and dives very well.
1 John / ride a motorbike / drive a car
2 Samantha / work part-time / look after the baby
3 Our cleaner / clean the house / wash the clothes
00 we can / watch TV / go to the cinema ... We can either watch TV or go to the cinema.
4 we can / have a sandwich / go out for lunch
5 after lunch / the children / play in the garden / watch some cartoons
6 Carl / drive / take the train / when he visits customers

Go online for more practice
1 **because**  
Because joins two sentences and explains why:  
Everyone loves Johnny Depp. He’s a brilliant actor.  
Everyone loves Johnny Depp **because** he’s a brilliant actor.  
We use **because** of + noun:  
*All the trains are late because of the bad weather.*  
⚠️ But we cannot use **because** of + noun and verb:  
❌ *All the trains are late because of it is snowing.*  
✔️ *All the trains are late because of the snow.*  
We can use **because** and **because** of at the beginning of a sentence. When we do this, we put a comma (,) after the first clause:  
**Because** he’s a brilliant actor, everyone loves him.  
**Because of** the bad weather, all the trains are late.

2 **so**  
So gives the result of something:  
Lucia didn’t work hard **so** she failed her Spanish exam.  
Summers are getting hotter **so** different types of plants are growing.

3 **so that, to + infinitive**  
We use **so that** to say why a person does something. **Can** and **could** often come after **so that**:  
Andrew wants to join the police **so that** he **can** help people.  
She worked really hard **so that** she **could** go to university.  
We can also use **to** + infinitive instead of **so that**:  
I’m joining the police **so that** I **can** help people.  
I’m joining the police **to help** people.  

**NATURAL ENGLISH** In everyday English, **to** + infinitive is more common than **so that**:  
Liz has gone to the shops **so that** she can buy some bread.  
→ Liz has gone to the shops **to buy** some bread.
Practice

1 Match the two parts of the sentences to tell Antonio’s story. Listen and check.

0 Antonio went to Mexico to
1 He stopped work for a year so that
2 He arrived in the city and went to a hotel because
3 After three days he left the hotel because
4 He moved into a student hostel to
5 But he didn’t like it there because of
6 A friend had a free room in his house so
7 His friend’s sister was nice so
8 In the end Antonio stayed in Mexico so that

A save money.
B he could get married to Maria.
C Antonio moved in with him.
D he could spend a long time there.
E it was too expensive.
F study Mexican history.
G Antonio talked to her a lot.
H the loud noise every evening.
I it was late and he needed a room.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation. Use one word only for each question. Listen and check.

ART Sorry I’m late, Sonia. The police stopped me (0) because I was driving too fast.
SONIA Not again! So you were driving fast (1) ............... get here on time, were you?
ART No, (2) ............... I was trying to catch the car in front. The driver dropped his wallet at the petrol station and I wanted to give it back to him, (3) ............... I followed him. I was driving fast so (4) ............... I could catch him.
SONIA Did you catch him?
ART No, I didn’t, (5) ............... the police stopped me before I could catch him.
SONIA But why didn’t they stop the other man?
ART I don’t know!
SONIA It’s probably because (6) ............... your silly fast car.
ART Anyway, they took me to the police station (7) ............... that they could interview me.
SONIA What – for driving too fast?
ART No ... it was also (8) ............... of the wallet. They thought that I’d stolen it!

3 Write each sentence again so the second sentence means the same as the first. Use the linking words in brackets ()

0 Janet left London because she wanted to live in the country. (to)

Janet left London to live in the country.

00 Dmitri didn’t come with us because he didn’t have enough money. (so)

Dmitri didn’t have enough money so he didn’t come with us.

1 We didn’t go to the zoo because it was raining. (because of)

2 Terry went to prison because he stole a car. (so)

3 Josh wanted a bigger garden so that he could grow vegetables. (to)

4 Marion was really tired so she went to bed early. (because)

5 I can’t hear anything because of your loud music. (because your)
1 Common linking words for time

We use linking words (e.g. when, before, after, until, while) to talk about time.

- We use when, before, after to show the order of events:
  I'll call you when we get back from our holiday.
  I locked the back door before I went to bed.
  I went to bed after I locked the back door.

- We can also use when, while and until to talk about a period of time:
  We heard the news when we were in France.
  Wait here until I get back.
  I broke my arm while I was playing tennis.

Look at the difference between while and during:
  I broke my arm while I was playing tennis. (while + verb)
  I broke my arm during a game of tennis. (during + noun)

- as soon as means 'immediately when':
  Please call us as soon as you arrive.

after and before + -ing ➤ Unit 95.1    when and while + past continuous ➤ Unit 48.2

2 Future time

When we are talking about the future, we use a PRESENT tense after when, before, after, until, as soon as. We don't use will or going to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE TENSE</th>
<th>LINKING WORD</th>
<th>PRESENT TENSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I think I'll get a good job</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>I finish this course.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She will come and see us</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>she leaves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We're going to have a long holiday</td>
<td>after</td>
<td>he gets out of hospital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will you wait</td>
<td>until</td>
<td>I come home?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They'll call us</td>
<td>as soon as</td>
<td>they have any news.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ They'll call us as soon as they will have any news.
✔ They'll call us as soon as they have any news.

3 Commas

If a linking word begins the sentence, we use a comma. We don't use a comma if the linking word is in the middle of the sentence:

As soon as they have any news, they'll call us. (comma)
They'll call us as soon as they have any news. (no comma)
Practice

1 Which action comes first in these sentences? Which comes second? Write 1 or 2 in the brackets ( ).

0 Mariam went travelling (2) after she finished her university course (1).
1 I always have a shower ( ) before I brush my teeth ( ).
2 We’ll have dinner ( ) this evening as soon as you get home ( ) from work.
3 We had a big party ( ) after I passed my driving test ( ).
4 Don’t worry about washing the dishes – we can do that ( ) after you leave ( ).
5 Wait for me ( ) in the café until I finish the shopping ( ).

2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences below. Use the linking word under the picture and a phrase from the box. Listen and check.

I was having a shower
she left the supermarket
his mother called him
the postman came
the taxi arrived
we left home

0 We had to go out... before the...
postman came...

1 The phone rang...

2 Her shopping bags broke...

3 It began to rain...

4 He slept...

5 We were still packing our bags...

3 Join the two sentences. Use the linking words in brackets ( ). Listen and check.

0 We had lunch. Then we watched a DVD. (after) We watched a DVD after we had lunch.
0 I’ll finish the report. I’ll email it to you. (when) When I finish the report, I’ll email it to you.

1 I was driving. I fell asleep. (while)

2 My friends waited at the airport. My plane arrived. (until)

3 I won’t try to find a job. I’ll finish my course. (before)

4 The interview finished. I called my wife. (as soon as)

5 You finish using the CD. Remove it from the computer. (after)
Linking words for stories and instructions

'Well, you see officer, first a rabbit ran across the road and I stopped quickly.

Then the car behind me stopped and almost hit me, but after that, another car came up really fast and hit the car behind me.

That hit my car and pushed it into the tree.

Then another car came up too fast and another, and in the end, there were six cars there!'
Practice

1 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the story. Listen and check.

Last night I was driving home along an empty motorway. Suddenly, I saw a car behind me – it came quite close. (0) (Then) After it started flashing its lights. (1) First / In the end, I decided not to stop but (2) first / then I saw signs for a petrol station, so I decided to stop there. (3) After that / After driving into the petrol station, I parked in front of the restaurant. (4) In the end / Then I noticed the other car again, so I waited (5) after / before opening my car door. A man and a woman got out of the car and I could see they were police officers, so (6) in the end / first I got out and spoke to them. They explained that one of my back lights wasn’t working and that’s why they were following me.

2 Look at the pictures. Then complete the instructions for booking train tickets on the Internet.

It’s easy to book your train tickets online now – just follow these simple steps.

0 Go to our website Train tickets online. 3 ..............................................................
1 First, choose ........................................... 4 ..............................................................
2 Then, ............................................. 5 ..............................................................

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Read the story below. Then put the words in 1–5 in the right order and add a linking word or phrase. Listen and check.

This really happened to my aunt and uncle. (0) in the post/a letter came one day. It said that a taxi would collect them at 6.00 the next Saturday evening. (1) to a show/arrived/with tickets/another letter. They thought it was a bit strange, but my uncle is a lawyer, with lots of important clients, and they thought the tickets came from one of them. So the next Saturday evening they took the taxi into the town. But, (2) going/into the theatre/ phoned/my uncle/a friend who works for the police. (3) went/the show/to see/they and had a great time. (4) went home/they/in the taxi. They were worried when they arrived home, because the front door was open, but (5) was/OK/everything, because my uncle’s friend was in the house, with two other police officers and the man who had tried to rob their house while they were at the show.

Go online for more practice and a progress test
1 **UNITS 92 AND 93** Read the email and choose the correct answers in *italics*.

**Hi Fabio**

It was good to hear your news. I'm glad that everything is going well with your new job.

Let me tell you my news - I've become a special police officer. That means that I work a few hours a week for the police. I decided to do this (0) **so to try something different in the evenings and at weekends.** I don't do everything that a real officer does, (1) **or but it's very interesting and so there are advantages.** For example, we have to help the normal police officers at football matches, which is great (3) **because of / because I love football.** We also talk to children in schools (4) **to / so that they can learn about being safe in the streets.** We have to do four hours a week (5) **so that / but I often do more because / so I really enjoy it.** We aren't paid, (7) **but / so we get our uniforms / and I spend time with interesting people.**

2 **UNITS 94 AND 95** Complete the conversation with linking words from the box.

1. after
2. after that
3. before
4. first
5. in the end
6. then
7. until
8. when
9. while

**SUE** I'm bored with studying. Let's go out now.

**BRIAN** I want to do a bit more. Let's go out (0) **when** Dan arrives.

**SUE** Dan isn't coming this evening. I told you that (1) **you were preparing lunch.**

**BRIAN** Really? I didn't hear you. Why isn't he coming?

**SUE** He got home from Poland really late last night.

**BRIAN** Oh? I thought he was landing at about 6.00.

**SUE** Yes, he landed at 6.00 but everything went wrong (2) **the plane landed.** (3) **everyone had to sit on the plane for over an hour** they could get off. (5) **one of Dan's bags didn't arrive from the plane, and he had to complete a lot of different forms.** (6) **he had to wait a long time for a train.** (7) **he got home at about 1.00 a.m.**

**BRIAN** Oh no! But Dan never goes to bed early anyway, so why can't he come out with us?

**SUE** The problem is that the airline has found his bag, and he has to wait at home this evening (8) **they deliver it.**
3. Do the sentences in A and B have the same (S) or different (D) meanings?

0 A I left the party early because I was feeling sick. B I was feeling sick so I left the party early. S
1 A She can both go to the cinema and go skating. B She can either go to the cinema or go skating. 
2 A The weather is cold, but my grandparents don’t put the heating on. B The weather is cold, so my grandparents don’t put the heating on. 
3 A I decided not to take the job because it didn’t pay very well. B The job didn’t pay very well so I decided not to take it. 
4 A I went to the bank to get some money out. B I went to the bank so that I could get some money out. 
5 A Look after the children until I get back from the cinema. B Look after the children while I’m at the cinema. 
6 A We were so tired we fell asleep while we were watching the match. B We were so tired we fell asleep during the match. 
7 A I’ll call you as soon as the train arrives at the station. B I’ll call you before the train arrives at the station.

4. Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words.

0 Lawrence went to drama school to become an actor. Lawrence went to drama school because he wanted to become an actor.
1 I finished reading my book before I went to sleep last night. I went to sleep last night finished reading my book.
2 Lock the door immediately after you get home. Lock the door you get home.
3 We didn’t go on holiday last summer because we didn’t have enough money. We didn’t have enough money last summer didn’t go on holiday.
4 My passport was stolen while I was travelling to Moscow. My passport was stolen the journey to Moscow.
5 Remember to wash your hands after using the toilet. Remember to wash your hands use the toilet.
6 Kylie learnt English so that she could travel around the world. Kylie learnt English around the world.

5. Complete the text with the correct words or phrases, A, B or C below.

0 A when  B so  C as soon as
1 A but  B so  C and
2 A because  B because of  C so that
3 A and  B but  C or
4 A so that  B so  C to
5 A so that  B because  C to
6 A While  B When  C During
7 A because  B so that  C because of
8 A then  B first  C in the end

A HAPPY ENDING

On the evening of 20 March, Marina Portman was cycling down a hill to a friend’s house. A car came very close to her and hit her bike. Marina was a very good cyclist, she couldn’t control her bike. She was on a hill. She fell off and hit a wall. She was able to stand up but she couldn’t walk. A police car passed and saw her, they took her to hospital. She could see a doctor. Her stay in hospital, one of the police officers came to see her - he told her that she was in trouble. There were no lights on her bike that evening. Then he got to know Marina’s family, and Marina and the young police officer got married.
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. I remembered his face .......... I couldn’t remember his name.  
   A and B but C or  
   ➤ Unit 92  

2. Do you want to stay at home this evening .......... go out for a walk?  
   A and B but C or  
   ➤ Unit 92  

3. I was invited to Jane’s party .......... I decided not to go.  
   A so B but C or  
   ➤ Unit 92  

4. You can choose two languages for this course so you can study ..........  
   French and Spanish.  
   A and B both C either  
   ➤ Unit 92  

5. You can study .......... maths or history, but you can’t do both of them.  
   A or B both C either  
   ➤ Unit 92  

6. I really enjoy working here .......... the lovely people.  
   A because B because of C to  
   ➤ Unit 93  

7. There was a lot of traffic on the motorway .......... we missed our plane.  
   A so that B because C so  
   ➤ Unit 93  

8. I’m going to join a gym .......... get fitter.  
   A because B to C so that  
   ➤ Unit 93  

9. .......... we travel a lot, we decided not to get a pet.  
   A So that B Because of C Because  
   ➤ Unit 93  

10. .......... Martin passed his exams, he could go to Oxford University.  
    A And B But C Because  
    ➤ Unit 93  

11. We enjoyed the film club, .......... we decided to go every week.  
    A so B but C because  
    ➤ Unit 93  

12. We bought the car .......... it was a very good price.  
    A but B because C so that  
    ➤ Unit 93  

13. I’m expecting a parcel, so don’t leave .......... the post comes.  
    A after B when C before  
    ➤ Unit 94  

14. The children are waiting in the car .......... we get back.  
    A until B when C while  
    ➤ Unit 94  

15. Please don’t interrupt me .......... I’m talking!  
    A until B while C during  
    ➤ Unit 94  

16. They’ll phone us as soon as they .......... any news.  
    A have B will have C had  
    ➤ Unit 94  

17. As soon as you .......... at the airport, change this money into euros.  
    A will arrive B arrived C arrive  
    ➤ Unit 94  

18. First, the plane was late, then we had to wait a long time for our  
    bags. After that, we waited half an hour for a bus .........., we arrived at  
    the hotel three hours late and they didn’t have a room for us.  
    A First B After C In the end  
    ➤ Unit 95  

19. Check that you have your passport .......... leaving for the airport.  
    A before B before you C then  
    ➤ Unit 95  

20. To make this soup, .......... chop all the vegetables into small pieces ...  
    A first B next C finally  
    ➤ Unit 95
Passive forms

Before you start

1 Read the magazine article. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

THE TEMPLE OF ABU SIMBEL is more than three thousand years old. The king of Egypt, Ramesses II, had the temple built in 1265 BC after he won a battle. The huge building was cut from the side of a mountain next to the River Nile.

For many centuries the temple was buried under sand until it was discovered by Europeans in 1813. In the 1960s the river water around the temple began to rise. People thought it might flood the temple. So in 1964 the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) started a project to save the temple. A team of international engineers was formed. The engineers had the building cut into small pieces by local workers. Then the stone pieces were taken to a new place high above the river and they were put into position.

Now the pieces of stone have been joined together and the temple has been saved from the rising water. Today it can be visited by anybody who is interested in Ancient Egypt and the amazing achievements of modern engineering.

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 The Taj Mahal was built / building in the eighteenth century.
2 Those old leather suitcases was / were used by my grandparents.
3 The telephone was invented of / by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876.
4 My mobile phone has / have been stolen from my bag.
5 For some reason all my emails have sent / been sent back.
6 This watch can using / be used in water.
7 Michael had / made his camera repaired last week.
8 He had it repaired by the mechanic / by the mechanic repaired.

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

1 built 2 were 3 by 4 has 5 been sent 6 be used 7 had 8 repaired by the mechanic

Go online for a full diagnostic test
1 Present simple and past simple
We make the passive of the present and past simple with is/are/was/were + the past participle. The object of an active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence:

\[ \text{They opened the bridge in 1992. (active, bridge = the object)} \]

\[ \text{The bridge was opened in 1992. (passive, bridge = the subject)} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We make cheese from milk.</td>
<td>Cheese is made from milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The farmer grows wheat crops in this field.</td>
<td>Wheat crops are grown in this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We don’t allow children in the restaurant.</td>
<td>Children aren’t allowed in the restaurant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does anyone ever wash these windows?</td>
<td>Are these windows ever washed?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europeans found the temple in 1813.</td>
<td>The temple was found in 1813.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They didn’t open the bridge until 1992.</td>
<td>The bridge wasn’t opened until 1992.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did the postman deliver the letters yesterday?</td>
<td>Were the letters delivered yesterday?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When did they discover it?</td>
<td>When was it discovered?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ We don’t make passives from verbs that don’t have objects (e.g. come, arrive, happen, wait):

\[ \times \text{I was grown up in a small village.} \]  
\[ \checkmark \text{I grew up in a small village.} \]

⚠️ Born is always passive:

\[ \times \text{My brother born in 1995.} \]  
\[ \checkmark \text{My brother was born in 1995.} \]

2 Use
We use an active verb when we are interested in the person who does the action: 

\[ \text{Santiago Calatrava designed the Alamillo Bridge.} \]

We use a passive verb

- when we are more interested in the action than the person who did it:

\[ \text{The bridge was opened in 1992.} \]

- when we don’t know the person:

\[ \text{Julia’s handbag was stolen.} \]  
\[ \text{(We don’t know who stole it.)} \]

- when the action is a law or rule:

\[ \text{Smoking is not allowed in this building.} \]

3 Passive + by
We can say:

\[ \text{Santiago Calatrava designed the bridge, or The bridge was designed by Santiago Calatrava.} \]
1 Write the sentences and questions again. Use passive forms only. Listen and check.

A I'd like to ask you some questions about the house I'm renting from Mr and Mrs Garcia this summer.

B OK.

A Do the owners heat the swimming pool?

B No, they don't heat it.

A How often does the maid clean the bedrooms?

B She cleans them every day.

A Do you include meals in the rent?

B No, we don't include them.

A When did they build the house?

B They built it four years ago.

A Did the owners sign the agreement on Friday?

B No, they didn't sign the agreement.

A But I paid the deposit on time!

0 Is the swimming pool heated?

1 No, ..........................................................

2 How often ....................................................

..........................................................

3 The bedrooms .......................................... ...

4 ..........................................................

5 No, meals ................................................. ...

6 When ..........................................................

7 It ..........................................................

..........................................................

8 ..........................................................

..........................................................

9 No, it ..........................................................

10 But the deposit ...........................................

2 Grammar in Use Choose the correct words in italics in the article. Listen and check.

THIS IS THE FAMOUS MILLENNIUM BRIDGE which (0) crosses is crossed the River Thames in London. Every day the bridge (1) be is used by thousands of people. Many of them do not know that when the bridge first opened, there was a serious problem and it (2) was / were closed again for almost two years.

The bridge was designed (3) by / from the famous British architect, Sir Norman Foster. It (4) opened / was opened by Queen Elizabeth II on 9 May 2000 but members of the public were only allowed to use the bridge on 10 June. Over 90,000 people (5) were used / used the bridge on that first day. All the people walking on the bridge (6) made / was made it move slowly from side to side. It was a strange experience and some of the people were very frightened. The next day the same thing (7) happened / was happened again, so the bridge was (8) closed / closing until they fixed the problem.

3 Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words.

0 They make cars there. Cars ..........................................................

1 Tommy Hilfiger designed her dress. Her dress .................................. Tommy Hilfiger.

2 Somebody stole my dictionary yesterday. My dictionary .........................

3 She cleans the windows once a week. The windows ................................ once a week.

4 They didn't accept your offer. Your offer .............................................

5 The teacher doesn't mark our homework every day. Our homework ...........

every day.
The beautiful castle at Chenonceaux has been owned by the Menier family since 1913.

1 Present perfect
We make the passive of the present perfect with has/have been + the past participle. The object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence:
The Menier family have owned the castle since 1913. (active, castle = the object)
The castle has been owned by the Menier family since 1913. (passive, castle = the subject)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>Scientists have discovered a new planet. They haven't fixed the computers yet. Have they emptied the bins?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A new planet has been discovered. The computers haven't been fixed yet. Have the bins been emptied?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Modal verbs
We make the passive form of modal verbs with the modal verb + be + past participle:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You can wash this shirt at 40 degrees. You must switch off mobile phones. They will fix the TV tomorrow. You should not wash this dress. They had to delay the flight.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This shirt can be washed at 40 degrees. Mobile phones must be switched off. The TV will be fixed tomorrow. This dress should not be washed. The flight had to be delayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We often use modal passives for written instructions and rules:
Answers must be written in ink.
Mobile phones cannot be used during the flight.

⚠ Don't use to after can, must, will or should in active or passive sentences:
X All the questions must to be answered.
✔ All the questions must be answered.

Irregular past participles ➤ page 314
1 Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.

0 Julia’s bag **has** have been stolen.
1 **Did / Has** your mobile phone been repaired yet?
2 An amazing new medicine **has been / be** discovered in America.
3 Cameras must not **be / to be** used inside the theatre.
4 Where is the cleaner? The beds haven’t been **make / made** yet!
5 Money and passports can be **leave / left** in the hotel safe.
6 **Are / Have** those letters been delivered?

2 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Read the email from Judy to her boss.
Then use the information to complete the sentences below.

Subject: News from the office

Dear Charlotte,

I hope your trip to New York is going well.
Everything is fine in the office, but I haven’t sent the emails to Australia.
I’ve typed the sales report and I’ve sent copies to Donald and Mrs Langton.
I haven’t printed last year’s report yet.
I’ve arranged your flight to Los Angeles. You can collect the tickets at the airport.
Alex hasn’t fixed the computers yet but he has put a new printer in Davy’s office.
Don’t forget you have to pay Roger on Friday.

Best wishes
Judy

0 The emails to Australia **haven’t been sent**
1 The sales report
2 Copies
3 Last year’s report
4 Your flight to Los Angeles
5 The tickets
6 The computers
7 A new printer
8 Roger

3 Complete the sentences with forms of the verbs in brackets (). Listen and check.

0 Concert tickets **can be bought** on the Internet. (can/buy)
1 This dress **must be washed** at 40 degrees. (must/wash)
2 Requests for tickets **should be sent** to our office in Manchester. (should/send)
3 All answers **must be written** in black ink. (must/write)
4 Mobile phones **must not be used** during the flight. (may not/use)
5 Dangerous items **must not be taken** on the aircraft. (should not/take)
6 All passports **must be shown** at the desk. (must/show)
7 A snack **will be served** during the flight. (will/serve)
8 This credit card **cannot be used** outside the United Kingdom. (cannot/use).
to have something done

1 Use

When you have something done, someone does it for you. It is usually a service that you pay someone to do because it is their job.

I have my hair cut every six weeks. (by the hairdresser)
Carol has her house painted once every five years. (by professional painters)
How often do you have your car checked? (by the garage)

We don't usually say who does the action. But if we say this, we use by:
Paula has her hair cut by Sergio at the hairdresser's in the high street.

NATURAL ENGLISH In everyday English, we can also say get something done:
I'm going to get my hair cut tomorrow.
Don't forget to get the car checked.

2 Form

We use have + object + the past participle of the verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE AND NEGATIVE</th>
<th>HAVE</th>
<th>DON'T HAVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>I/We/You/They</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>I/He/She/It/We/You/They</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>I/We/You/They</td>
<td>have had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>has had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can also use will, can, must and should + have something done:
I must have the windows cleaned soon.
The college will have a new library built next year.

We can ask questions:
How often do you have your hair cut?
Did you have the house painted last year?
Should we have the car checked before we drive to Scotland?
Will you have the TV repaired soon?
Practice

1 Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.
0 The car's very dirty. Shall I make \( \text{have} \) it cleaned next time I go to the garage?
1 Mrs Aziz always has / have her hair done before a big party.
2 Davina's wedding photos were fantastic. She had taken / had them taken by a famous photographer.
3 Your computer's making a strange noise. I think you should it have / have it checked.
4 My neighbours have a beautiful garden. They have / are having the grass cut twice a week!
5 Don't forget to get / got my suit cleaned when you go to the dry cleaner's.
6 It was a special party so we had prepared the food / the food prepared by a professional chef.

2 Melinda is a film star. She has a big house and lots of people do things for her. Study the information. Then answer the question. Use the words in brackets ( ).
   Listen and check.

MELINDA'S STAFF:
• The gardener cuts the grass
• The cleaner makes the beds and washes the clothes
• A famous chef prepares the meals
• A professional hairdresser cuts Melinda's hair
• Her assistant organises her diary
• Her secretary types Melinda's letters

What does Melinda have done for her?
0 She has her letters typed by her secretary. .................................................. (letters)
1 .................................................. (meals)
2 .................................................. (clothes)
3 .................................................. (hair)
4 .................................................. (beds)
5 .................................................. (grass)
6 .................................................. (diary)

3 GRAMMAR IN USE There are six more mistakes in the letter. Find and correct them.

Dear Mr Hanshow,
Thank you for agreeing to advertise our house for sale.
We had a lot of things done to the house and garden last year. Here is a list:
• We had the roof it repaired. Most of the roof is completely new.
• Last summer we have the outside of the house paint. We also had the kitchen and bathroom painting.
• We the new heating system had put in last winter.
• There were some improvements to the garden: we have some new trees planted and we had the walls repaired.
THE STORY OF Hampton Court Palace

In 1514 Thomas Wolsey, King Henry VIII’s most important and richest minister, bought a large piece of land in Hampton Court on the River Thames, just west of London. Over the next ten years he built an enormous palace on the land. In 1525 Wolsey gave the palace to the king and since that time the palace has belonged to the kings and queens of England. Henry’s daughter Queen Elizabeth I used the palace during the later sixteenth century.

In 1689 King William III decided the palace was too old-fashioned and he asked Sir Christopher Wren to design a new section. William was Dutch and he created a Dutch garden in front of the new part of the palace.

Queen Victoria didn’t like the palace and she didn’t want to live there. So in 1838 she opened the palace for ordinary people to visit.

The government repaired the palace and gardens in the 1990s. Today the royal family doesn’t use Hampton Court, so the public can visit the palace.

1514 — A piece of land in Hampton Court (0) was bought by (00) Thomas Wolsey.

1514–1524 — An enormous palace (1) on the land.

1525 — The palace (2) to the king (3) Thomas Wolsey.

Later 16th Century — The palace (4) by (5) .

1689 — Sir Christopher Wren (6) to design a new section.

1689 — A Dutch garden (7) in front of the new palace.

1838 — The palace (8) to the public by Queen Victoria.

1990s — The palace and gardens (9) by the government.

Today — The palace (10) by the public.

2 UNITS 97 AND 98 Choose the correct words in italics. Listen and check.

PEDRO Your hair looks nice.

CAROL Thank you. I (0) have [had] it cut yesterday. I had (1) it done / done it at that new place on the High Street. You know, next to the Ford garage.

PEDRO Oh yes. I (2) had my car checked / was checked my car at that garage last month.

CAROL Have you (3) found / been found a new flat yet?

PEDRO No. But I saw a nice one yesterday. It’s got a garden and it’s just (4) painted / been painted, but the rent’s quite expensive. What about you? You had some work (5) done / did at your house last month, didn’t you?

CAROL Yes. We (6) had / have a new hot water system put in. The work is almost finished but the water in the bathroom hasn’t (7) connected / been connected by the builders yet, so we can’t have showers. Anyway, they’re going to do it today.

PEDRO Your brother’s a builder, isn’t he? Did he (8) do / have done the work?

CAROL No, we (9) had it done / was done by someone else. My brother isn’t working at the moment. He (10) had / was had a car accident last month and he broke his leg, so he can’t do very much.

PEDRO That’s awful!
3 ALL UNITS Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words.

0 They've repaired your computer.
   Your computer ..................................................

1 The driver will collect you from the station.
   You .............................................................. from the station.

2 Somebody has stolen my credit card!
   My credit card ................................................!

3 You must clean this shirt professionally.
   This shirt must .............................................. professionally.

4 Marianne cleans Michael's house.
   Michael has .................................................... by Marianne.

5 Children under the age of twelve should not take this medicine.
   This medicine should ....................................... by children under the age of twelve.

6 How often does Jenny cut your hair?
   How often ..................................................... your hair cut by Jenny?

4 ALL UNITS Complete the article with the correct words or phrases, A, B or C below.

The Mile High Tower
This is Jeddah in Saudi Arabia, the city where the new Mile High Tower (0) ............ The building will be one mile (1.6 kilometres) high and it (1) ............ 375 floors. When it (2) ............, it will be the tallest building in the world.

The company that plans to build the tower is Kingdom Holdings, which (3) ............ by Prince Al-Waleed bin Talal, a nephew of the Saudi Arabian king. In a recent magazine article the Prince (4) ............ as the 19th richest person in the world. He (5) ............ part of EuroDisney in Paris and the Savoy Hotel in London. The famous old hotel was bought by the Prince in 2005 and he has recently (6) ............, and improved.

The Mile High Tower is the Prince's most exciting project. Many people think that such a tall building (7) ............, but the Prince is confident. He (8) ............ by the American architects Pickard Chilton.

0 A will built (B) will be built  C will be build
1 A will have  B will be had  C will has
2 A are finished  B is finished  C is finish
3 A is owned  B be owned  C is own
4 A are described  B be described  C was described
5 A is owned  B owns  C be owned
6 A have repaired  B had it repaired  C had repaired it
7 A cannot build  B be cannot built  C cannot be build
8 A had plans prepared  B plans had prepared  C have plans prepared
Test MODULE 17

Passive forms

Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. Our classroom .......... cleaned every day.
   A are B is C being ➤ Unit 96

2. Every customer is .......... a receipt when they pay.
   A give B gave C given ➤ Unit 96

3. .......... the rubbish bins emptied this morning?
   A Is B Did C Were ➤ Unit 96

4. The Mona Lisa was painted .......... Leonardo da Vinci.
   A to B by C of ➤ Unit 96

5. I can’t send any emails because my laptop .......... last week.
   A stolen B was stolen C had stolen ➤ Unit 96

   A are making B was made C were made ➤ Unit 96

7. That ring is very old. .......... 
   A It was made in 1850. B In 1850 somebody made it.
   C Somebody made it in 1850. ➤ Unit 96

8. .......... those houses been sold?
   A Have B Has C Are ➤ Unit 97

9. .......... to Linda’s birthday party?
   A Who has been invited B Has been invited who
   C Who has invited been ➤ Unit 97

10. Has your mobile phone .......... yet?
    A been repaired by somebody B been repaired C is repaired ➤ Unit 97

11. I’ll email you because the new phone line .......... been put in yet.
    A haven’t B hasn’t C don’t have ➤ Unit 97

12. Your exam results ..........!
    A have arrived B have been arrived C were arrived ➤ Unit 97

13. The application form must .......... in before the end of the month.
    A be sent B to be sent C sent ➤ Unit 97

    A will delivering B will to be delivered C will be delivered ➤ Unit 97

15. James has his car .......... twice a year.
    A check B checking C checked ➤ Unit 98

16. We will probably .......... by a professional company.
    A have the party organised B have organised the party
    C organised the party ➤ Unit 98

17. .......... the bedroom painted or will you do it yourself?
    A Will you B Will have you C Will you have ➤ Unit 98

18. They had the photos taken .......... a professional photographer.
    A from B by C of ➤ Unit 98

19. I must .......... cleaned – it’s very dirty.
    A got my car B the car C get my car ➤ Unit 98

20. My mobile isn’t working. I need to .......... 
    A have it repaired B have repaired C it repaired ➤ Unit 98
Words that go together

Before you start

1 Read the job advertisement and the letter. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

HELP WANTED
A busy professional couple is looking for someone to look after their three children while they are at work. You will have to take the two older children to school in the mornings and bring them home in the afternoon. During the day you will have to take care of the baby.

Excellent salary and free accommodation – you can stay in one of our bedrooms.

If you are interested in the job, please send us an email.
Clive and Marcia Griffith.
clivemarchigriff@hotmail.com

Dear Tessa,
My new job is terrible! I’m working for a couple with two children and a baby – Mr and Mrs Griffith. They employed me to look after the children but they treat me like a cleaner – I have to make the beds every morning and do the dishes. Then I have to clean the house. They leave their dirty clothes on the floor and I have to pick them up and wash them! I’m really upset and I think …

2 Now read the sentences. Choose the correct words in italics.
The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 I’m not really interested of / in business.
2 My boss is away so I’m going to take / have care of that project.
3 Are you looking a new job for / for a new job?
4 Don’t worry. I’ll look at / after the pets while you’re away.
5 Are you staying in / with a hotel?
6 Don’t leave paper on the floor. Pick up it / Pick it up and put it in the bin, please.
7 You will be able to take / bring the prize away at the end of the competition.
8 Can you lend me your umbrella? I forgot to bring / take one when I came here.
9 I usually cook the meal and my wife makes / does the dishes.
10 Mrs Lombard has a cleaner so she never has to do / make the beds herself.

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.
1 Verb + noun
Here are some common examples of verbs and nouns that go together:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>the housework  the dishes the cleaning your homework  an exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>dinner  a mistake  a noise  the beds  friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>an exam  a test  a photo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass/fail</td>
<td>an exam  a test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>a sport  a game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>a car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>a bike  a horse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I often listen to the radio while I do the dishes. 
Can you ride a bike? 
I haven’t taken my driving test yet.

A few verbs and nouns that go together usually have a preposition after them (e.g. take care of, take part in make friends with): 
Have you made friends with anyone in your new class? 
Can you take care of the baby while I go to the shops? 
More examples of make/do/take + noun ➤ Unit 104

2 Adjective + noun
Some adjectives and nouns go together:

a strong swimmer = a person who can swim very well  
a good driver = a person who can drive very well (x a strong driver)

Here are some common examples:
smart clothes, a smart suit, a tall building, a high wall, a heavy smoker, heavy rain, 
a light meal/lunch/dinner, a strong smell, a hard worker

I usually have a light meal at lunchtime. 
You should wear a smart suit for that job interview.

These are often different in other languages, so it is best to check in a good dictionary.

3 Adjective + preposition
We often use a preposition after an adjective and before the noun that follows it:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FEELINGS</th>
<th>ABILITIES</th>
<th>BEHAVIOUR</th>
<th>OTHERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>afraid of</td>
<td>interested in</td>
<td>pleased with</td>
<td>worried about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angry with</td>
<td>good at</td>
<td>kind to</td>
<td>different from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excited about</td>
<td>bad at</td>
<td>nice to</td>
<td>famous for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Carla was good at cleaning. The hotel manager was always pleased with her work. 
Paris is famous for its beautiful buildings.

When we put a verb after the preposition we use the -ing form: 
I’m really bad at cooking. Are you excited about going on holiday? 

Prepositions + nouns, e.g. at home, on time, for sale ➤ Unit 24
1 Match the two parts of the sentences. Listen and check.

0 1 I recently learnt how to ride  A a car.
   2 I don’t know how to drive  B a bike.

1 1 Have you taken  A the exam?
   2 Did you do  B your homework?

2 1 She’s very good  A for delicious food.
   2 France is famous  B at cooking.

3 1 Kristof is a hard  A swimmer.
   2 Lizzie is a strong  B worker.

4 1 I’m very excited  A in the news.
   2 I’m not very interested  B about the news.

5 1 Sue’s worried  A of the dark.
   2 Sally’s afraid  B about her job.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation with words from the box.
There are three extra words. Listen and check.

about at done for from hard in made of pass smart strong taken with

SOPHIE How are the children, Anna?
ANNA Oh, fine. Steven’s just (0) taken a science exam.

SOPHIE Did he (1) it?
ANNA Yes, he got 88 percent. He’s always been good (2) science.

SOPHIE And how’s Carrie? How’s she getting on at her new school?
ANNA Very well. Of course, it’s very different (3) her old school, but she
   seems very interested (4) the lessons and she’s (5) friends with lots of the other children.

SOPHIE That’s good.
ANNA What about you? Are you still working with children?
SOPHIE Yes. I’m taking care (6) three young children at the moment. By the way,
   that’s a very (7) suit you’re wearing. Are you going somewhere special?
ANNA Yes, I’m going for a job interview. I’m really excited (8) it.
SOPHIE I’m sure you’ll get it. Everyone knows you’re a (9) worker.
   Well, I must hurry. I haven’t even (10) the dishes yet!

3 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.
Use one, two or three words.

0 That building has many floors. It’s a tall building.
1 Jim can swim very well. Jim is a swimmer.
2 Mandy doesn’t eat much for lunch. Mandy prefers lunch.
3 John didn’t pass the exam. John .
4 Uncle Leroy smokes a lot. Uncle Leroy is .
5 Sara’s boss made her angry. Sara was her boss.
6 Your book isn’t the same as mine. Your book mine.
Jim phoned the electrical shop and spoke to the manager.
He complained about his new vacuum cleaner.

1 Verb + preposition + object
After some verbs (e.g. complain, look) we need a preposition BEFORE the object:

Jim phoned the shop and complained about his new vacuum cleaner.
Sue ate a sandwich and looked at a magazine.

Look at the word order in questions:
Are you complaining about the camera? Which camera are you complaining about?
What are you looking at?

2 Verb + preposition
Here are some common verbs + prepositions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb + to</th>
<th>belong to</th>
<th>explain to</th>
<th>listen to</th>
<th>speak to</th>
<th>talk to</th>
<th>write to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>verb + about</td>
<td>complain about</td>
<td>read about</td>
<td>speak about</td>
<td>talk about</td>
<td>think about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + for</td>
<td>apply for</td>
<td>look for</td>
<td>pay for</td>
<td>wait for</td>
<td>work for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + in</td>
<td>arrive in</td>
<td>believe in</td>
<td>get in</td>
<td>live in</td>
<td>succeed in</td>
<td>stay in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + of</td>
<td>approve of</td>
<td>think of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + on</td>
<td>depend on</td>
<td>decide on</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + at</td>
<td>arrive at</td>
<td>laugh at</td>
<td>look at</td>
<td>stay at</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + with</td>
<td>agree with</td>
<td>stay with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We’ve been waiting for half an hour! What are you listening to?
Maria is right. I agree with her.

⚠️ If there is a verb after the preposition, we use the -ing form:
× I’m thinking of buy a new car. ✓ I’m thinking of buying a new car.

⚠️ We don’t use to after the verbs ask, answer, call, phone and thank:
× Please phone to me later. ✓ Please phone me later.

⚠️ We don’t use about after discuss:
× We discussed about the weather. ✓ We discussed the weather.

3 Verb + to/about
We often use to before people and about before things:
I saw Lucy talking to Jake. They were talking about Jake’s party.

A verb can be followed by more than one preposition + noun in a sentence:
I complained to the manager about the vacuum cleaner.
Practice

1 Match the two parts of the sentences.

0. That book belongs
1. She often complains
2. You have to apply
3. Let me look
4. I don’t believe
5. She doesn’t approve
6. You should never depend

A. in luck.
B. to the library.
C. at your visa.
D. on other people.
E. about the weather.
F. of my friends.
G. for a visa.

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the text. Listen and check.

HomeAdvice Stories and advice about all your problems.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AUTHOR</th>
<th>MESSAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alicia posted</td>
<td>I’m a cleaner and I’m working (0) of / for a family in Scotland. I live (1) in / with their house. They make me use a very expensive German vacuum cleaner but it’s very difficult to find new bags for it. So I looked (2) of / for them on the Internet and bought some from a website. I used my bank card. I’ve been waiting (3) for / at three weeks but nothing has arrived. What should I do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freddy posted</td>
<td>Why don’t you (4) phone to / phone the Internet company and (5) ask to / ask them what has happened? It’s usually OK to buy things on the Internet. But I always (6) pay for / pay things with my credit card, not my bank card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belinda posted</td>
<td>Alicia, I’m afraid I don’t agree (7) of / with Freddy. I never buy things on the Internet. I often read (8) about / from problems like the one you are having. I don’t believe (9) of / in using the Internet, it isn’t safe. Why don’t you complain (10) on / about the Internet company to your bank? Maybe they can help ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the phone conversation with prepositions. Write (-) if you do not need a preposition. Listen and check.

AGENT Good morning. Apex Cleaning.
MARTA Hello. I’m looking (0) for some part-time cleaning work.
AGENT OK. First, I need to ask (1) you – do you have any experience?
MARTA Yes. I’m working for SuperClean at the moment, but I’m thinking (2) changing my job.
AGENT How long have you worked there and why do you want to change?
MARTA I’ve worked (3) them for about six months. But I live outside the city now and SuperClean doesn’t pay (4) my transport. Your office is much closer to my house.
AGENT I see. Which area do you live (5) ?
MARTA Solihull.
AGENT Have you applied (6) a job with us before? Or spoken (7) a member of staff?
MARTA Well, I phoned (8) your office last week but nobody answered ...
1 Verb + preposition + object
After some verbs, the preposition we use depends on the object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>in (a town or country)</td>
<td>When did you arrive in England?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>at (any other place)</td>
<td>The train arrived at Victoria Station at six o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>(a person or a bill) (no preposition)</td>
<td>My mother paid the bill/the waiter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>for (a thing)</td>
<td>I haven't paid for the tickets yet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>in/at (a place)</td>
<td>She stayed at the Hilton Hotel last month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>with (a person)</td>
<td>I'm staying with my cousins for the holidays.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Different preposition, different meaning
The meaning of some verbs changes with the prepositions, e.g:
- **look at** = turn your eyes towards something or someone:
  'Look at the clock. We're late!'
- **look for** = try to find something:
  'Excuse me. I'm looking for Dr Watson's office. Do you know where it is?'
- **look after** = take care of someone/something:
  'A friend looks after the children while Emily is at work.'
- **look like** = have a similar appearance:
  'Michael looks like his grandfather. They are both tall and slim.'

3 Verb + object + preposition
With some verbs (e.g. ask, thank, invite, tell) we need a preposition AFTER the object:

I asked the stranger for directions to the post office.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + object + preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask somebody for something</td>
<td>Did you ask the doctor for some advice?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank somebody for something</td>
<td>The manager thanked the staff for their hard work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite somebody to something</td>
<td>I invited Carla to my party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell somebody about something</td>
<td>Have you told your parents about your new job yet?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

0 Grandma loves looking ........ at her old photos.

1 'He looks ............ his father!'

2 I've just arrived ........ the station.'

3 Caroline's looking ........ her earring.

4 'Have you told your parents ........ your exam result?'

5 'Excuse me. You haven't paid ........ your meal!'

2 Write the words in the correct order. Listen and check.

0 about have told you Karel your new job? Have you told Karel about your new job?

1 pay how much the meal did you for?

2 at those people me are looking

3 to have your party you invited my brother?

4 my teacher I some extra homework for asked

5 thanked for Sandra the birthday present her mother

3 Grammar in Use. Complete the email. Use a verb from A and a word or phrase from B for each space. Listen and check.

A arrived collecting invited look pay staying told B after at him me the bill us with

Subject: Hello Jan

Hi Jan

Today has been a really busy day! Toby (0) ........ arrived at the bus station this morning so I went to meet him. We had a sandwich at the café but he didn’t have any money so I had to (1) ................. Then I took him to Gina’s house. He’s (2) .................
his for a few days. He’s such a polite guy – he thanked me for (3) ................. from the bus station and gave me a present! After that I rushed home because Carol asked me to (4) ................. her children for the afternoon. They are lovely children – Suzy (5) ................. all about her new school! Anyway, Carol has (6) ................. to dinner next Friday. I hope you can come. Let me know.

Go online for more practice and a progress test
1 Verb + adverb
A phrasal verb is a verb + an adverb/preposition, e.g. take + off (= take off).
It usually has a different meaning from the verb alone:
It's cold. You should take a jumper with you.
It's warm. I'm going to take off my jumper. (take off = remove)

In formal English we often use a different verb with the same meaning as the phrasal verb:
Why don't you take off your shoes? (informal) = Please remove your shoes. (formal)

2 Phrasal verbs with an object
Many phrasal verbs have an object:
Please take off your shoes.

If the object is a noun, we can put it before or after the adverb/preposition:
Please put your jacket on. Please put on your jacket.

But we always put pronoun objects (e.g. it, him, them) between the verb and
adverb/preposition:
✔ Put on it. ❌ Put it on.

Here are some common phrasal verbs that have an object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring / give / put something back</td>
<td>bring / give / put something back (= complete a form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill something in</td>
<td>fill something in (= complete a form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find something out</td>
<td>find something out (= get information)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give something up</td>
<td>give something up (= stop a habit, activity or job)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let somebody in</td>
<td>let somebody in (= find in a book, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look something up</td>
<td>look something up (= find in a book, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick somebody up</td>
<td>pick somebody up (= collect somebody and take them somewhere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick something up</td>
<td>pick something up (= collect something and take it somewhere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put something down</td>
<td>put something down (= put something away)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put something on</td>
<td>put something on (= put something on your body)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put something on / off</td>
<td>put something on / off (= put something on and then take it off)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remove something on / off</td>
<td>remove something on / off (= take something away)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take something away</td>
<td>take something away (= take something away from something)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take something off</td>
<td>take something off (= take something off your body)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn something down</td>
<td>turn something down (= reduce the sound)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write something down</td>
<td>write something down (= write something down)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It's dark in here. Can you turn on the lights?
I'll take your computer away today and I'll bring it back on Friday.
Liz is on a diet so she's giving up chocolate.

3 Phrasal verbs without an object
Some phrasal verbs have no object:

- come back / come in / get out / get up / go away / go back / go in / go out / grow up / hurry up
- lie down / look around / look out (= be careful) / sit down / stand up / turn around / wake up

Hurry up! We're late. I usually wake up early. Look out! A car's coming.
Practice

1 Match the two parts of the sentences. Listen and check.

0 It's dark in here. You should turn A a jacket on.
1 Your TV is too loud, please turn B it in.
2 It's hot in here – why don’t you take C on the lights.
3 Here's the application form – please fill D your jacket off?
4 It’s a formal meeting, you should put E down.
5 I'm quite tired. I think I'm going to lie F it down.

2 Match the sentences with similar meanings. Then decide which sentences are formal (F) and informal (I).

0 I can find that out for you. .......... \( F \)
1 Our representative will collect A Do not remove the book’s cover. .......... \( I \)
       you from the airport. .......... \( I \)
2 You have to bring them back. .......... \( F \)
3 Please be careful. .......... \( I \)
4 Don’t take it off. .......... \( I \)
5 Please ask your parents to complete A I can get the information A I can get the information
       the form. .......... \( I \)
       you need. .......... \( F \)
       B Look out! .......... \( F \)
       C They have to fill it in. .......... \( I \)
       D Readers must return all the B We’ll pick you up. .......... \( F \)
       books. .......... \( I \)

3 Grammar in use Complete the conversation. Use one word only for each question.

JACKIE Hurry (0) ... up,..., you two! You’ll be late for school.
       It's cold – you should both put (1) ........ your coats.

EMMA Where’s my coat, Jackie?

JACKIE I (2) ........ it back in the hall cupboard yesterday.

EMMA Are you picking us (3) ........ from school today?

JACKIE No, Emma. Mrs Stevens is going to bring (4) ........
       back. Now what’s that on Harry’s coat? (5) ........
       around, Harry. Oh, it's only a piece of paper.

HARRY Jackie, can I borrow your camera for my geography trip?

JACKIE All right. But be careful with it. Don’t forget to give it
       (6) ........ to me later.

HARRY OK. I’ll (7) ........ it back this afternoon. Oh, how do you turn (8) ........ on?

JACKIE You press the red button. And to turn it (9) ........ you press the black one.

HARRY I see. Are we going swimming on Saturday?

JACKIE I don’t know but I’ll find (10) ........ for you. Now come on, we’re late ...

4 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from A and a pronoun from B.

A give back let in look up put on take away turn down B him it (x 3) me them

0 My grandmother wears glasses – she .......... put them on .......... when she's reading.
1 If you don’t want your old fridge, I'll ................. ................. ...
2 John's at the door – can you .......... \( x 3 \)?
3 Please .......... my dictionary – I need it.
4 I don’t know the answer but I'll .......... on the Internet.
5 Your music's too loud! Can you .......... ?

Go online for more practice
1 bring/come or take/go

**bring/come** (movement towards or with the speaker)  
Will you *bring* your camera? (when you come here)  
Are you *coming* to the cinema tonight? (= Are you coming with me?)

**take/go** (movement away from or without the speaker)  
Will you *take* your camera? (when you go away on holiday)  
Are you *going* to the cinema tonight? (= I'm not going.)

2 live or stay

We use *live* to talk about permanent situations or long periods of time:  
*Most British people live in towns.*  
*I've lived in Cape Town since 2002.*

We use *stay* for temporary situations:  
*We went to Holland on holiday and stayed in Amsterdam. How long are you staying here?*

`stay + with/in/at ➤ Unit 101.1`

3 do the cooking/cleaning, go swimming/dancing, etc.

We use *do + the + -ing* for some activities, usually jobs around the house.  
We use *go + -ing* for activities that we enjoy, usually sports or leisure:

**do the** cleaning, washing, cooking, gardening, etc.

**go** swimming, dancing, skiing, camping, riding, hiking, etc.

We can use *do or go* with *shopping:*

*Have you done the shopping* yet? (for food)  
*We're going shopping* this afternoon. (for food or other things, e.g. clothes)

⚠️ *I want to do camping this summer. ✓ I want to go camping this summer.*

4 get

We often use *get:*

| to mean | buy, bring, or receive | Can you *get* some coffee? (buy)  
*I'll get* the dictionary for you. (bring)  
Did you *get* a letter from the bank? (receive) |
| to mean become | The weather's *getting* hotter.  
*I hope you get better/well* soon. (become well again after an illness) |
| in common phrases, e.g. | *get married, get dressed, get wet, get lost* | They *got married* last April.  
Take an umbrella or you'll get wet. |
| to talk about going or arriving somewhere | How do you *get to* the airport from here?  
What time do you usually *get home?* |

Phrasal verbs with *get,* e.g. *get up ➤ Unit 102.3*
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with a form of come, go, take or bring.

1 ‘Oh no! Didn’t you .................. our passports?’
2 Barbara didn’t .................. to her neighbours’ party. They didn’t invite her.
3 ‘This year we’re .................. the children camping for the first time.’
4 ‘We’re going to the concert now. Are you .................. with us?’

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Jane looks after Zara’s children. Read Zara’s note to Jane and choose the correct underlined words. [4.54] Listen and check.

Jane,
Here is the list of things I’d like you to do today after I’ve (0) come / gone to work:
- (1) Take / Bring Jake to the dentist. His appointment is at 10.15. His teeth are (2) making / getting better, but tell me what the dentist says.
- Please (3) do / make the washing – the dirty clothes are on top of the washing machine.
- I (4) took / brought some fresh vegetables from the market yesterday – please use them to make lunch for the children.
- When you do (5) shopping / the shopping, don’t forget to (6) get / do my mother’s medicine from the chemist’s – she is (7) living / staying here at the weekend and she will need it.
- I’m (8) going / coming home at about six o’clock today, so you don’t have to prepare dinner.

Thanks! Zara

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation with the words from the box. There are three extra words. [4.55] Listen and check.

come do doing done get getting go going got live make stay took went

MIKE Have you (0) .............. done the shopping yet?
DAVE Yes, I (1) ...................... lots of food this morning. It’s all in the fridge.
MIKE Are you (2) ..................... the cooking this evening?
DAVE No, I’m (3) ..................... ice skating with Alex. He’s really good at it.

Of course I’m not as good as him – but I’m (4) ..................... better all the time.
MIKE Why don’t you (5) ..................... at home tonight? I hate eating alone.
DAVE I don’t like being at home every evening. I (6) ..................... bored.

Listen, why don’t you (7) .................. to the ice rink with us?
MIKE No thanks! I (8) ..................... skating with my brother when I was ten.

He (9) ..................... me to a frozen lake – I fell over and broke my arm!
DAVE Mmm. Well, if you’re not going out, you could (10) ..................... the cleaning ...

Go online for more practice
1 make or do?

We often use the verb *make* to talk about creating or producing something:

*Mercedes cars are made in Germany.*

*Who's making lunch today?*

We often use *do* to talk about any activity:

*What do you usually do at the weekends?*

*I'm afraid I haven't done the report yet.*

Here are some common words we use with *make* and *do*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>make</th>
<th>do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a meal</td>
<td>the shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breakfast</td>
<td>the gardening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunch</td>
<td>your homework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dinner</td>
<td>an exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a phone call</td>
<td>a test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a noise</td>
<td>an exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a mistake</td>
<td>the cleaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an appointment</td>
<td>the washing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an arrangement</td>
<td>the cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a suggestion</td>
<td>the dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a plan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the bed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a copy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Don't make any noise – I'm doing my homework.*

*On Saturday mornings I do the cleaning and my wife makes lunch.*

2 have or take?

We can describe some actions with either *have* or *take*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have or take</th>
<th>a bath a shower a break a holiday a rest a seat (= sit down)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*Have you taken your break yet?*

*Yes, I had a break at eleven o'clock.*

But for some actions we only use *take*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>take</th>
<th>an exam a test care (of) medicine drugs a message part in a photo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*Mrs Carshaw isn't here. Can I take a message?*

*You aren't allowed to take photos in the museum.*

*We usually use take, not have, to talk about time (days, hours, etc.):*

*That letter took three days to get here.*

*How long does it take to boil an egg?*

*have for doing things, e.g. have breakfast, have a party ➤ Unit 43.3*
Practice

1 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Choose the correct words in *italics* in the advertisement.

**Listen and check.**

The *HouseMate X2* is a new kind of robot.
It (1) makes / does all the jobs that you hate!
It can (2) make / do the beds every morning and then (3) make / do the washing.
Then it will (4) make / do your lunch for you.
And afterwards it will (5) make / do the dishes!
It can even (6) make / do phone calls,
(7) make / take messages and
(8) make / take appointments. And, believe it or not, it can (9) make / take care of children!
The *HouseMate X2*

is (10) made / done in Japan. *Only $495*

2 Answer the questions. Use *make, do or take* in each answer.

0 What do carpenters do? **They make things from wood.**
1 What do photocopiers do? .................................................................
2 What do gardeners do? .................................................................
3 What do telephone answering machines do? .................................
4 What do cooks do? ..........................................................................
5 What do photographers do? ...........................................................
6 What do washing machines do? ........................................................

3 **GRAMMAR IN USE** Complete the article with forms of *make, do, have or take*.

**Local Hero Alison Doughty**

**ALISON DOUGHTY RETIRED** last year. She didn’t want to stay at home and (6) do ………… nothing, so she decided to become a home help. Each day she visits old people in their homes and helps them.

Some of the old people can’t (1) ………… do housework so Alison has to (2) ………… their beds and (3) ………… do the cleaning. If they have problems with walking, she will go out and (4) ………… do their shopping. Sometimes she even (5) ………… do lunch for the old people. Alison says that is her favourite part of the job. A lot of the old people have health problems so Alison checks that they (6) ………… do the correct medicines at the right time of the day. If they need to see a doctor or dentist, she can phone and (7) ………… make an appointment for them.

Alison tells us she really enjoys (8) ………… look after old people.

4 Find four more mistakes in the sentences and correct them. Tick (√) the correct sentences.

**Listen and check.**

0 How long does it have to get to the station? 5 Sue did a good suggestion tonight.
1 Did you have a shower this morning? 6 We’re very tired. Shall we take a break?
2 It had three hours to get here today! 7 I’m going to make the shopping – do you need anything?
3 Kyle has just taken his driving test. 4 I’m sorry. I’ve done a silly mistake.
Review MODULE 18

1 **UNITS 99 AND 100** Match the two parts of the sentences.

0 Are you excited   \[\text{A for a better job?}\]
1 Is this job different  \[\text{B in getting that job?}\]
2 Are you looking  \[\text{C from the old job?}\]
3 Is Roger good  \[\text{D of his job?}\]
4 Did she succeed  \[\text{E about your new job?}\]
5 What does Tim think  \[\text{F at his job?}\]

2 **UNITS 99, 100 AND 101** Write the second sentence so it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets ( ).

0 Mandy smokes a lot. (smoker) \[\text{Mandy is a heavy smoker.}\]
1 I don’t have the same opinion as Jim. (agree) ..........................................................
2 Gerry doesn’t drive very well. (driver) ..........................................................
3 My brother likes his new car. (pleased) ..........................................................
4 Alicia said I could come to her party on Friday. (invited) ..........................................................
5 Your MP3 player isn’t the same as mine. (different) ..........................................................
6 Who bought the tickets? (paid) ..........................................................
7 I’m trying to find the post office. (looking) ..........................................................
8 When will you get to the railway station? (arrive) ..........................................................

3 **UNITS 101 AND 102** Put the words in brackets ( ) in the correct order. Then complete the conversation. \[4.58\] Listen and check.

DANIEL Hello, Helen. When did (0) \[\text{you arrive in town}\]. (arrive/town/you/in)?
HELEN I got here yesterday. I’m (1) \[\text{my parents/with/staying}\].
DANIEL Is this your new baby? She’s lovely. She (2) \[\text{like/you/looks}\].
HELEN Thanks. My mother’s helping me to (3) \[\text{look/her/after}\].
DANIEL That’s nice of her. But she has a job too, doesn’t she?
HELEN No. She’s (4) \[\text{her boss/for/asked/a promotion}\]. She (5) \[\text{it/up/given}\]. (it/up/given). She (5) \[\text{her boss/for/asked/a promotion}\] but she didn’t get it.
DANIEL That’s a pity. But of course it means she can (6) \[\text{home/at/stay}\] and help you with the baby.
HELEN Yes.
DANIEL Can I (7) \[\text{her/up/pick}\]?
HELEN Of course. But be careful, she’s sleeping. By the way, (8) \[\text{the/present/you/thank/for}\] you sent. That was really nice of you.
DANIEL Oh, it’s nothing ... Have I (9) \[\text{about/told/my new job/you}\] yet?
HELEN No. What is it?
DANIEL I’m working at the art gallery. I check people’s tickets and (10) \[\text{them/in/let to the exhibitions}\].
HELEN That’s interesting. What exhibition is on at the moment?
Dear Laura,
Here's some information about your new job.
We would like you to wake the children up and (0) _______ their breakfast in the morning, then you can (1) _______ them to school. (You don’t have to (2) _______ to the school in the afternoons because the children (3) _______ home on the school bus.)
We don’t expect you to (4) _______ any cleaning but we would like you to (5) _______ the beds. I’m afraid I don’t have time to go (6) _______ so I will give you money and you can (7) _______ everything you need at the supermarket; it only (8) _______ a few minutes to drive there.
Please remember to (9) _______ your driving licence and passport with you. We would like to (10) _______ copies of them.
Best wishes,
Helen Matherson

0 A do B make C have 6 A the shopping B shop C shopping
1 A take B bring C get 7 A shop B get C have
2 A come B go C bring 8 A takes B has C makes
3 A come B go C take 9 A take B do C bring
4 A do B make C take 10 A do B make C bring
5 A do B make C get

ALL UNITS

Complete the crossword.

ACROSS
2 Jane looks ... our children when we’re at work.
4 Are you ... to the party with us?
5 It’s cold outside. You should ... your coat on.
6 Venice is ... for its canals and beautiful buildings.
8 Can you ... a bicycle?
9 I’m not very hungry so I only want a ... meal.
10 Have you ... the washing yet?
11 My best friend ... married last week.
12 Can you ... me to the airport tomorrow?
14 The traffic was terrible; it ... an hour to get here.
15 Shall I take ... of the baby while you do the shopping?
16 Tell me about your new friend. What does she look ...?

DOWN
1 I don’t know if I want it; it ... on the price.
3 Zara’s a ... swimmer; she’s in the school team.
5 Are you going to take ... in the charity race?
7 We’re really worried ... the test tomorrow.
9 Someone’s at the door. Can you ... them in?
11 Sorry about your illness – I hope you ... better soon.
13 You’re right; I ... with you.

Go online for more review exercises
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. How many exercises did you ........... at the gym this morning?
   A have  B take  C do  ➤ Unit 99

2. I’m busy. Can you take care ........... the baby for a minute?
   A of  B for  C with  ➤ Unit 99

3. Dharma will pass her test. She’s a ........... driver.
   A good  B strong  C well  ➤ Unit 99

4. My brother’s very excited ........... his new job.
   A of  B about  C for  ➤ Unit 99

5. Philip went to the hotel reception and ...........
   A about the room complained  B complained about the room
   C complained the room about  ➤ Unit 100

6. Hurry up. I’ve been waiting ........... hours!
   A of  B at  C for  ➤ Unit 100

7. I think you’re wrong. I don’t agree ........... you.
   A with  B of  C at  ➤ Unit 100

8. My grandmother is thinking of ........... for a whole week.
   A to stay  B stay  C staying  ➤ Unit 100

9. How much did you ........... your motorbike?
   A pay  B pay of  C pay for  ➤ Unit 101

10. Justin is very handsome – he looks ........... a film star.
    A after  B like  C for  ➤ Unit 101

11. After the lesson I asked ........... some advice.
    A my teacher for  B to my teacher  C for my teacher  ➤ Unit 101

12. It’s hot now. I think I’ll ........... my jacket.
    A take  B take on  C take off  ➤ Unit 102

13. I don’t eat chocolate any more. I’ve ...........
    A given it up  B given up it  C it given up  ➤ Unit 102

14. When I say your name, please ...........
    A stand up  B stand up you  C stand you up  ➤ Unit 102

15. Hi, Steve, it’s me. Are you ........... here this evening or not?
    A going  B taking  C coming  ➤ Unit 103

16. In my country a lot of people ........... in small villages.
    A live  B stay  C get  ➤ Unit 103

17. I think the weather is ........... colder.
    A getting  B making  C being  ➤ Unit 103

18. Be quiet. I need to ........... an important phone call.
    A do  B have  C make  ➤ Unit 104

19. People don’t believe me but I actually enjoy ........... the cleaning.
    A doing  B making  C getting  ➤ Unit 104

20. Mrs Bradley isn’t here. Would you like me to ........... a message for her?
    A take  B make  C do  ➤ Unit 104
Before you start

1 Read the advertisement. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

SALE starts 2 SEPTEMBER!!!

BLAKE'S
Home & Garden Centre

- Special prices on comfortable leather sofas and armchairs.
- A large range of inexpensive garden tools and garden furniture.
- Dining room furniture at low, low prices.
- A wide range of kitchen equipment from well-known makes such as Miele and Siemens.
- 20% discount for professional builders.
- Experienced and helpful staff.
- Free car parking for all visitors to the store.

For more information visit our website: www.blakeshomeandgarden.net

2 Now read the sentences. Use the words and ideas in brackets () to complete them. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

1 Young ______________ have more accidents than older ones. (a noun from drive) ➤ Unit 105
2 Who is your favourite ______________? (a noun from act) ➤ Unit 105
3 When is your next ______________? (the noun from examine) ➤ Unit 105
4 Carla's sister is very ______________. (an adjective from beauty) ➤ Unit 106
5 Is long hair ______________ at the moment? (an adjective from fashion) ➤ Unit 106
6 I'm afraid that answer is ______________. (not correct) ➤ Unit 106
7 The flat has two bedrooms and a large ______________. (a room you live in) ➤ Unit 107
8 I have a ______________ job with an IT company. (I get paid a lot of money) ➤ Unit 107

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

5 fashionable 6 incorrect 7 living room 8 well-paid
1 drives 2 actor 3 examination 4 beautiful
1 Nouns that end in -er, -or, -ant/-ent and -ist

These nouns are often people and their jobs (e.g. a teacher, a dentist):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB OR NOUN</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>= PERSON/JOB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>builder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit</td>
<td>-or</td>
<td>visitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>-or</td>
<td>actor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assist</td>
<td>-ant/-ent</td>
<td>assistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>-ent</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art</td>
<td>-ist</td>
<td>artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>journal</td>
<td>-ist</td>
<td>journalist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cycle</td>
<td>-ist</td>
<td>cyclist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some nouns that end in -er are things, not people: cooker = a machine that cooks things photocopier = a machine that makes copies

2 Nouns that end in -ese, -(i)an and -ish

These nouns are often nationalities and/or languages. They are also used as adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COUNTRY</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>= NATIONALITY/LANGUAGE/ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>-ese</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>-ese</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>-ese</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>-(i)an</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>-(i)an</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>-(i)an</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>-ish</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>-ish</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>-ish</td>
<td>Polish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>-ish</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

! The names of some languages and nationalities do not follow these patterns (e.g. The Netherlands → Dutch, Greece → Greek, Thailand → Thai).

3 Nouns that end in -ment, -(t)ion, -ation and -sion

We make these nouns from verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>= NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>-ment</td>
<td>movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argue</td>
<td>-ment</td>
<td>argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>govern</td>
<td>-ment</td>
<td>government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>communicate</td>
<td>-ion</td>
<td>communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
<td>-ion</td>
<td>education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>produce</td>
<td>-tion</td>
<td>production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examine</td>
<td>-ation</td>
<td>examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite</td>
<td>-ation</td>
<td>invitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inform</td>
<td>-ation</td>
<td>information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>-sion</td>
<td>discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decide</td>
<td>-sion</td>
<td>decision</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Nouns that end in -ness, -ity and -ance/-ence

We make these nouns from adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>= NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>-ness</td>
<td>happiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dark</td>
<td>-ness</td>
<td>darkness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ill</td>
<td>-ness</td>
<td>illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able</td>
<td>-ity</td>
<td>ability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>active</td>
<td>-ity</td>
<td>activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>national</td>
<td>-ity</td>
<td>nationality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>important</td>
<td>-ance</td>
<td>importance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distant</td>
<td>-ance</td>
<td>distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>independent</td>
<td>-ence</td>
<td>independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td>-ence</td>
<td>difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silent</td>
<td>-ence</td>
<td>silence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The spelling often changes when we add letters to a word that ends with a vowel or -y: cycle → cyclist, study → student, decide → decision, argue → argument, happy → happiness
Practice

1 Match the words in A with the letters in B to make ten more nouns. You need to change the spelling in some of them.

A: visit active art China dark drive educate examine govern Poland study

B: -er -ation -ent -er -ese -ion -ish -ist -ity -ment -ness

0 visitor 3 6 9
1 4 7 10
2 5 8

2 Complete the sentences. Use nouns formed from the words in brackets ()

Listen and check.

0 Elizabeth is studying Japanes... at university. (Japan)
1 Is Billy better after his ............... yet? (ill)
2 The bus hit a ............... as it was turning the corner. (cycle)
3 Misha speaks Polish and ............... (Hungary)
4 We need to buy a new ............... for the kitchen. (cook)
5 I heard a really interesting ............... on the radio. (discuss)
6 When did your country get its ............... ? (independent)
7 I can understand ............... but I can’t write it very well. (Portugal)
8 What is the ............... between New York and Los Angeles? (distant)

3 Grammar in use Complete the notice with nouns from this unit. The first two letters of each noun are given.

Listen and check.

Tranley Adult (0) Education... Centre CURRENT JOBS

• Art (1) Te............. Are you a good (2) ar.............? We need someone to teach art on our painting course (Tuesday and Thursday evenings).

• (3) Ex............. manager. We need someone to organise tests and examinations at the centre. We have more than 600 (4) st............. here, so there are a lot of exams to organise each year. You should have at least five years’ experience in adult education.

• Teaching (5) As............. This job involves helping teachers on our (6) co............. course. The course helps people to communicate in writing and speech and to discuss different topics (You will have your own (7) di,............., group). Good (8) En............. is necessary for this job.

• Bus (9) Dr............. We need someone to drive people to swimming classes at the local swimming pool. You should have a driving licence.

For more (10) in............., about hours, salary, etc., please ask at reception.

4 Complete these sentences. Use nouns from this unit. Change the words in brackets () if necessary, so they are true for you.

Listen and check.

0 I think watching television is (an interesting) .............
1 I think ............. is (a beautiful) language.
2 My favourite ............. is (Picasso).
3 In my country, shop ............. are usually (polite and friendly).
1 Changing nouns or verbs into adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN OR VERB</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>= ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>centre</td>
<td>-al</td>
<td>central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td></td>
<td>musical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nation</td>
<td></td>
<td>national</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beauty</td>
<td>-ful</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care</td>
<td></td>
<td>careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td></td>
<td>helpful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td></td>
<td>painful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
<td></td>
<td>useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfort</td>
<td>-able</td>
<td>comfortable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fashion</td>
<td></td>
<td>fashionable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirt</td>
<td>-y</td>
<td>dirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health</td>
<td></td>
<td>healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rain</td>
<td></td>
<td>rainy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td></td>
<td>windy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danger</td>
<td>-ous</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fame</td>
<td></td>
<td>famous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>-ive</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attract</td>
<td></td>
<td>attractive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expense</td>
<td></td>
<td>expensive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The spelling often changes when we add letters to a word that ends with a vowel or -y:
- fame → famous
- expense → expensive
- beauty → beautiful

Pronunciation ➤ 1.35
Adjectives with -ed and -ing, e.g. interested / interesting ➤ Unit 26

2 Making adjectives negative

in-, un- and im- mean ‘not’:
- unhappy = not happy
- informal = not formal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>= ADJECTIVE WITH NEGATIVE MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>un-</td>
<td>uncomfortable unhappy unhealthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complete</td>
<td>incomplete incorrect inexpensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patient</td>
<td>impatient imperfect impolite impossible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ If the adjective begins with the sound /p/ we use im-, not in- to make it negative:
- polite → x impolite
  ✔ impolite
- perfect → x imperfect
  ✔ imperfect
Practice

1 Match the words in A with the letters in B to make nine more adjectives. You need to change the spelling in some of them. [4.61] Listen and check.

A  music act beauty care comfort
care formal happy health possible

B -al -able -ful in- in-
ive -less -ous un- -y

0 ...musical... 1 .................. 2 .................. 3 .................. 4 ..................
5 .................. 6 .................. 7 .................. 8 .................. 9 ..................

2 Write an adjective under each picture. Some of the adjectives are negative. Use the words in the box.

comfort correct danger expense happy health pain rain

0 ...unhappy... 1 .................. 2 .................. 3 ..................
4 .................. 5 .................. 6 .................. 7 ..................

3 Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use adjectives from this unit. Use one, two or three words. [4.62] Listen and check.

0 Cotton is a material you can use for many things.

Cotton is a .......... material...

1 That sofa costs a lot of money. It is .................... sofa.

2 Don't worry; the operation won't give you any pain.

Don't worry; the operation ................... .

3 I want a hotel in the centre of the city. I want ................... hotel.

4 You shouldn't eat food that is bad for your health.

You shouldn't eat ..................

5 Some people never have any luck. Some people .................. .

6 My sister helps people all the time. My sister is ................... person.

7 Everyone in my family is good at music. I come from ................... family.

8 In autumn there are a lot of days when it rains all the time.

There are a lot of ................... in autumn.

9 I hate people who don't behave in a polite way. I hate ...................

10 Two of the answers in the exercise are not correct.

There are two ................... in the exercise.
1 Compound nouns
A compound noun is a noun made from two words. The first noun is usually singular.
We sometimes write compound nouns as one word (e.g. newspaper, supermarket) and sometimes as two separate words (e.g. car park, ice cream). It is best to check the correct form in a dictionary.
We can make compound nouns by adding a noun, verb or adjective to a noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun + noun</th>
<th>bedroom</th>
<th>clothes shop</th>
<th>furniture shop</th>
<th>record shop</th>
<th>pizza restaurant</th>
<th>traffic jam</th>
<th>history teacher</th>
<th>credit card</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>noun + verb-er</td>
<td>DVD player</td>
<td>dishwasher</td>
<td>taxi driver</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun + verb-ing</td>
<td>ice-skating</td>
<td>snowboarding</td>
<td>horse-riding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb-ing + noun</td>
<td>shopping centre</td>
<td>washing machine</td>
<td>living room</td>
<td>swimming pool</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + noun</td>
<td>best friend</td>
<td>grandfather</td>
<td>supermarket</td>
<td>whiteboard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The stress is usually on the first syllable:
living room, traffic jam, horse-riding, grandfather

Pronunciation ➤ 1.36
The first word usually gives more information about the second word. It can tell us:
• What kind of thing?
a bathroom (= a room with a bath)
a clothes shop (= a shop which sells clothes)
• What kind of person?
a history teacher (= a person who teaches history)
a taxi driver (= a person who drives taxis)
• What is its purpose?
a washing machine (= a machine for washing clothes)
a tennis ball = (a ball for playing tennis)

2 Compound adjectives
Compound adjectives are made from nouns, adjectives, verbs and adverbs.
They usually have a hyphen (-) between the two words when they come before a noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number/measurement + noun</th>
<th>three-hour</th>
<th>two-day</th>
<th>two-kilometre</th>
<th>16th-century</th>
<th>250-gramme</th>
<th>600-dollar</th>
<th>half-price</th>
<th>half-hour</th>
<th>full-time</th>
<th>part-time</th>
<th>ten-year-old</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adjective + noun</td>
<td>high-quality</td>
<td>high-speed</td>
<td>low-price</td>
<td>low-calorie</td>
<td>well-known</td>
<td>well-paid</td>
<td>centrally-heated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adverb + participle verb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>self + verb/adjective/noun</td>
<td>self-employed</td>
<td>self-confident</td>
<td>self-service</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A compound adjective gives us information about the noun that follows it:
We had a three-hour exam. (an exam that lasted for three hours)
We went on the high-speed train. (the train that travels at high speed)
I’d like a well-paid job. (a job which pays me a lot of money)

⚠️ The noun in these adjectives is always singular:
✗ He’s a ten-years-old boy. ✓ He’s a ten-year-old boy.
✗ It was a three-hours film. ✓ It was a three-hour film.
Practice

1 Match the two parts of the sentences. Listen and check.

0 Our neighbours have got a swimming A calorie diet.
1 Why don’t you ask the taxi B known actress?
2 Is there a washing C pool in their garden.
3 Last year we went snow D speed train to Madrid?
4 Zoe got a job as a French E machine in your house?
5 She’s on a special low- F boarding in Switzerland.
6 Did you catch the high- G teacher at the local school.
7 Is she related to that well- H driver for directions?

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the text.

The story of IKEA
IKEA is one of the most famous (0) shops of furniture (furniture shops) in the world. It has more than 300 stores and employs over 100,000 people. It was started by Ingvar Kamprad in Sweden in 1943.
The store is (1) well-known / very known for its (2) cheap-price / low-price furniture which customers have to put together at home. This is much cheaper than ordinary furniture. IKEA sells about 12,000 products; it has something for every room in the house — for (3) livings / living rooms, kitchens, bathrooms, dining rooms and (4) bedrooms / sleeping rooms.
All the stores are very large and (5) self-service / serving-yourself. They have enormous (6) car / cars parks.
Shopping at IKEA is popular with families because every store has a safe place for children to play and a cheap restaurant. So if you get tired of shopping you can get a cup of coffee or an (7) ice cream / ices cream. It’s like a huge (8) central-shopping / shopping centre inside one shop!

3 Each sentence contains a part of a compound word, but the other part is missing. Find the incomplete words. Then write the whole compound word. Listen and check.

0 Can you go to the (super)market and buy me some bread? ..........supermarket
1 Uncle Gerald doesn’t work for a company – he’s self .......................self-employed
2 Coca-Cola is a well company throughout the world. .........................well-known
3 Our teacher wrote the answer on the white .........................whiteboard
4 Can I pay by credit in this restaurant? ..................................
5 We were late because there was a bad traffic on the motorway. ......................traffic jam
6 Glenda is one of our part workers, so she isn’t here on Tuesdays. .....................part-time
7 How do you set the washing for a 40-degree wash? ..........................
8 Johnny can afford a big house; he’s got a very paid job. .......................well-paid
9 If you need to buy a new coat, there’s a good clothes near me. ...................clothes shop
10 I’m on a low diet because I want to get fitter. ..........................
1 UNITS 105 AND 106  Complete Charts A and B with nouns. Complete Chart C with adjectives.

A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>ill</th>
<th>active</th>
<th>important</th>
<th>silent</th>
<th>happy</th>
<th>able</th>
<th>different</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>noun</td>
<td>illness</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>discuss</th>
<th>argue</th>
<th>educate</th>
<th>inform</th>
<th>decide</th>
<th>move</th>
<th>produce</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>noun</td>
<td>discussion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>health</th>
<th>music</th>
<th>danger</th>
<th>expense</th>
<th>nation</th>
<th>beauty</th>
<th>fashion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adjective</td>
<td>healthy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 UNITS 105 AND 106  Complete the sentences about the pictures. Use some of your answers from Exercise 1.

0 Health and __happiness__ are the most important things in life.
1 Mel lives in a ____________ house in the country.
2 One of Germany's main industries is the ____________ of cars.
3 The Stade de France is France's ____________ stadium.
4 The Internet is a great place to get ____________
5 The ____________ to sing well is very rare.

3 UNITS 105 AND 106  Complete the conversation. Use the words in brackets () to make nouns or adjectives. 14:46:52 Listen and check.

**SUSAN** Hi, Samir. How are things?

**SAMIR** Oh, life is always busy when you're a (0) ____________ (build)!

**SUSAN** I can imagine. How are the kids?

**SAMIR** Well, Suzy has finished school now. She's working as a shop (1) ____________ (assist) at that big furniture store in Crownley. She rides her bike there every day – she's a ____________ (cycle).

**SUSAN** But that's quite a long (3) ____________ (distant) from home, isn't it? And it's a very busy road – it sounds (4) ____________ (danger)!

**SAMIR** Well, I worry about it sometimes, but she loves her (5) ____________ (independent) so she doesn't want to go on the bus. We had a big (6) ____________ (argue) about it a few days ago!

**SUSAN** What about Danny? Has he finished his (7) ____________ (educate) yet?

**SAMIR** No, he's still at school. He's very (8) ____________ (music) so he's thinking about going to the Royal College of Music ...
4 **UNITS 106 AND 107** Complete the second sentence so it means the same as the first. Use one, two or three words.

0 The journey lasted for six hours. It was a __________ journey.__
00 Did Philip help you? Was __________ helpful?__
1 Don’t wear formal clothes to the party. Wear __________ clothes.
2 There was a lot of wind last Thursday. Last Thursday was a __________.
3 He only works two days a week. He has a __________ job.
4 Sam always has a lot of luck. Sam is never __________.
5 Is there a restaurant that sells pizza near here?
   Is there a __________ near here?
6 His clothes are always covered in dirt. He always wears __________.
7 I like buildings that were built in the 18th century. I like __________.
8 We stayed in a hotel that nobody knows about.
   We didn’t stay in a __________.

5 **ALL UNITS** Do the sentences in each pair have the same (S) or different (D) meanings?
Write S or D.

0 A Does Penny teach geography?
   B Is Penny a geography teacher? __________
1 A Did it hurt a lot?
   B Was it painless? __________
2 A You don’t see that colour very often.
   B That’s an unusual colour. __________
3 A My father has a well-paid job.
   B My father earns a lot of money. __________
4 A Zack is a driving examiner.
   B Zack is learning to drive. __________
5 A We had a political discussion.
   B We talked about politics. __________
6 A We need a self-confident person for this job.
   B This job isn’t suitable for someone who is shy. __________

6 **ALL UNITS** Complete the crossword.

ACROSS
1 Not possible.
4 I think ice __________ is delicious.
6 A person who works for the answer to 12 across.
8 The adjective from danger.
10 Your father’s father.
12 Something you can read every day.
13 The opposite of painless.
14 The noun from communicate.
15 The noun from decide.

DOWN
2 The language spoken in Portugal and Brazil.
3 The adjective from beauty.
5 The adjective from attract.
7 The noun from independent.
9 Not expensive.
11 The noun from happy.
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. Does your town have a lot of foreign ..........?
   A visitings  B visiters  C visitors
   ➤ Unit 105

2. Jan is ...........: he's from Amsterdam.
   A Netherlands  B Dutch  C Hollander
   ➤ Unit 105

3. Did Ali send you an ........... to his party?
   A invitation  B inviting  C invitement
   ➤ Unit 105

4. I don't like my sister; we are always having ........... with each other.
   A argues  B arguments  C argumentations
   ➤ Unit 105

5. Who won? Have the judges made a ........... yet?
   A decision  B decide  C deciding
   ➤ Unit 105

6. I have no ........... to sing – I just can't do it.
   A ableness  B able  C ability
   ➤ Unit 105

7. What is the ........... between silver and white gold?
   A difference  B differ  C difference
   ➤ Unit 105

8. If I have a ........... headache, I usually lie down.
   A pain  B painless  C painful
   ➤ Unit 106

9. Have you seen Helen's older sister? She's very ...........?
   A attractive  B attraction  C attracting
   ➤ Unit 106

10. This phone doesn't send text messages – it's completely ...........!
    A useful  B useless  C used
    ➤ Unit 106

11. Debbie's very old-fashioned – she doesn't like ........... clothes.
    A fashionable  B fashionist  C fashionive
    ➤ Unit 106

12. That DVD's very ........... – only three euros!
    A expensiveless  B inexpensive  C unexpensive
    ➤ Unit 106

13. If customers are ........... to me, I just put the phone down.
    A impolite  B impolite  C unpolite
    ➤ Unit 106

14. I don't like those chairs; they're really ...........?
    A discomfortable  B uncomforting  C uncomfortable
    ➤ Unit 106

15. You can buy CDs at the ...........?
    A records shop  B record shop  C shop of records
    ➤ Unit 107

16. Is there a chemist's at the ...........?
    A centre's shopping  B centre of shopping  C shopping centre
    ➤ Unit 107

17. Caroline used to be my sister's ...........
    A most friend  B best friend  C best of friend
    ➤ Unit 107

18. There's a ........... dining table in the January sale.
    A half-price  B price half  C price low
    ➤ Unit 107

19. There are no waiters here; it's a ........... restaurant.
    A service yourself  B self serving  C self-service
    ➤ Unit 107

20. She's the daughter of a ........... TV actress.
    A much known  B well-known  C very-known
    ➤ Unit 107
Before you start

1 Read the conversation. Look at the highlighted grammar examples.

JIM You went to Elaine’s party, didn’t you?
GABY Yes, it was excellent. It was in their garden and the weather was great.
JIM Did she? I’m not surprised, really. She’s very popular.
GABY Mmm. The only problem was that Paul wasn’t there, you know, their son. He refused to come.
JIM That’s awful! Why?
GABY Don’t know. Elaine didn’t want to talk about it. But I’ve never liked Paul really.
JIM No, neither have I. He always seems unfriendly. Anyway, I’m glad the party went well.
GABY I am, too. Now, you’re coming to dinner tomorrow evening, right?

2 Now read the conversation between Ellie and Olivia. Choose the correct words in italics. The highlighted grammar examples will help you.

ELLIE Hi, Olivia. You’ve had an invitation to Hanna’s 21st birthday party, have/haven’t you?
OLIVIA Yes, I have. I thought Hanna was younger than that, though.
ELLIE Didn’t/Did you? Yes, she’s a bit older than us. Well, it’s a pity, but I can’t go to the party.
OLIVIA No, neither/so can I. I’m on holiday that weekend.
ELLIE Yes, I am, too/so. Anyway, did you know that she’s invited everyone from the History Department at the university?
OLIVIA No! That’s/It’s crazy! That’s over 100 people!
ELLIE Well, I’m sure they will not/won’t all go.
OLIVIA Mmm, don’t know/not know about that. Those guys like parties!
ELLIE True. Listen, you’ll be in college tomorrow, no/right? I want to ask ...

3 Check your answers below. Then go to the unit for more information and practice.

1 haven’t 2 did 3 neither 4 too 5 That’s 6 won’t 7 don’t know 8 right

Go online for a full diagnostic test
1 Form

There are two main types of question tag.

- Negative statement + positive tag:

  Mr Connors doesn't work here anymore, does he? Cats don't eat chocolate, do they?

- Positive statement + negative tag:

  Mr Connors still works here, doesn't he? Cats only eat meat, don't they?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB FORM</th>
<th>STATEMENT</th>
<th>QUESTION TAG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to be</td>
<td>Sorry, I'm really late, Trevor's going to be late,</td>
<td>aren't I?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>isn't he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there is</td>
<td>There isn't a bus after 11.00,</td>
<td>is there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>You prefer tea to coffee,</td>
<td>don't you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>He didn't phone,</td>
<td>did he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>They're building a new sports centre,</td>
<td>aren't they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past continuous</td>
<td>It wasn't raining last night,</td>
<td>was it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>There hasn't been another accident,</td>
<td>has there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>I'll be on time if I leave now,</td>
<td>won't I?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>We can finish this work tomorrow,</td>
<td>can't we?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question tags always use short forms: ... isn't he? ... don't you?

We always match the tag with the statement:

- He's English, no? × He's English, isn't it? ✓ He's English, isn't he?

We can't make a question tag with am, so we use are:

- amn't-I × aren't I ✓ aren't I

2 Use

We add a question tag to change a statement into a question (Unit 77.1).

We can use question tags:

- to ask for information. We say these tags with a rising intonation (↗):

  I can get a bus from here, can't I? (I don't know the answer – I haven't taken a bus from here.)
  You aren't coming to the wedding in those jeans, are you? (I don't know, but I hope not.)

- to ask for agreement, when we think we know the answer. We say these tags with a falling intonation (↘):

  It's really hot today, isn't it? (I think it's hot and I want you to agree.)
  You haven't seen that film yet, have you? (I think you haven't.)

We answer question tags with yes/no, a short answer and other information if necessary:

'I can get a bus from here, can't I?' 'Yes, you can. The next one is in ten minutes.'
'The bus leaves at six o'clock, doesn't it?' 'Yes, that's right.'

Pronunciation 1.37
1 Match the sentences with the question tags. 4.66 Listen and check.

0 You take sugar in coffee,  
1 Steve's going to sell his car,  
2 Juliet can't run faster than you,  
3 The cat's had its food,  
4 You don't work at Smith's,  
5 Emma can give us a lift to the airport,  
6 You will remember to talk to Adam,  
7 It hasn't rained here today,  
8 Clive isn't back from Australia yet,  

A do you?  
B won't you?  
C has it?  
D is he?  
E don't you?  
F can she?  
G hasn't it?  
H can't she?  
I isn't he?

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Complete the conversation with question tags. 4.67 Listen and check.

MIKE It was your cousin's wedding last weekend, (0) ____________?

CARA That's right, in a five-star hotel with fantastic gardens.

MIKE But it rained on Saturday, (1) ____________?

CARA Yes, a bit. But it was sunny when they took the photos.

MIKE That's good. Were there many guests?

CARA More than a hundred, and Annabel and her husband paid for everything.

MIKE Oh! But they're very young, (2) ____________?

How could they afford it?

CARA Annabel was my grandfather's favourite grandchild. He left her all his money.

MIKE That's a bit strange, (3) ____________? So no one else in the family got any money?

CARA No, but we don't mind. Anyway, how was your weekend? You went to see the tennis at Wimbledon, (4) ____________?

MIKE Yes, we did. You haven't been, (5) ____________?

CARA No, I'm not interested in tennis. Anyway, you can't get tickets very easily, (6) ____________?

MIKE No, you can't - we were lucky ... Oh, nearly two o'clock! It's late, (7) ____________? We should get some lunch.

CARA Good idea. That new sandwich shop in the High Street has opened now, (8) ____________?

3 Change the questions into statements and question tags. 4.68 Listen and check.

0 Did Paul tell you about the party?  
1 Were you at the same school as Paul?  
2 Is there going to be food at the party?  
3 Am I included in the invitation?  
4 Will you come home by twelve o'clock?  
5 Did you tell Fran about the party?  

Paul didn't ____________.  
You weren't ____________?  
There isn't ____________?  
I am ____________?  
You will ____________?  
You didn't ____________?
1 **too, so ...**

We use *too* after a positive verb to agree with someone or to add information:

'I'm cold.' 'I am, **too**.'

'Sophie passed the exam!' 'Nat did, **too**.'

We can say the same thing with *so*, but *so* comes before the verb and the verb comes before the subject:

'I'm cold.' **'So am I.'**

'We love skiing.' **'So do we.'**

'He went to Greece.' **'So did she.'**

'I've got an interview.' **'So have I.'**

'I'd love to try that restaurant.' **'So would I.'**

⚠️ We always put the verb before the subject, and we don't repeat the main verb:

'I passed the exam!'  
X **'So did I pass!'**  
X **'So I passed!'**  
X **'So I did!'**  
✔ **'So did I!'**

2 **either, neither ...**

We use *either* after a negative verb to agree with someone or to add information:

'I'm not getting up yet.' 'I'm not **either**.'

'My mum doesn't like that programme.' 'My mum doesn't **either**.'

We can say the same thing with *neither*, but *neither* comes before a positive verb and the verb comes before the subject:

'I'm not getting up yet.' **'Neither am I.'**

'I don't like this cold weather.' **'Neither do I.'**

'She can't swim yet.' **'Neither can he.'**

'We've never been to Egypt.' **'Neither have we.'**

'I mustn't be late again.' **'Neither must I.'**

≠ Pronunciation ➤ 1.38

3 **Disagreeing with people**

We can disagree or say that something is different with short answers like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'This music's too loud!'</td>
<td>'I haven't finished my homework yet.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I like spicy food.'</td>
<td>'Oh, I have.' (not I've)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'No, it isn't!'</td>
<td>'Oh, I don't.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NATURAL ENGLISH** We often use *Oh* before we disagree. It sounds a little more polite:

'I want to go sightseeing today.' **'Oh, I don't. Let's go to the beach again.'**
Practice

1 Choose the correct reply to each statement. Listen and check.

0 I can't believe that story. Neither do I. / Neither can I.
1 Jade's cousin has been to Australia. So has mine. / Neither has mine.
2 The sports centre is closed today. The pool is, too. / The pool is either.
3 We didn't really enjoy that meal. Neither did we. / So did we.
4 My legs really hurt after that walk! Mine do either. / So do mine.
5 Our holiday was fantastic! Neither was ours. / Ours was, too.
6 I didn't hear the news until this morning. So did we. / Neither did we.

2 Grammar in use. The students want to be in the college band. Look at the information and complete the conversations. Listen and check.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STUDENT</th>
<th>LIKES</th>
<th>DOESN'T LIKE</th>
<th>CAN</th>
<th>CAN'T</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ELENA</td>
<td>classical music</td>
<td>jazz</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>play an instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANDREAS</td>
<td>jazz</td>
<td>classical music</td>
<td>play the violin</td>
<td>sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRIGITTE</td>
<td>jazz</td>
<td>classical music</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>play an instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAREK</td>
<td>popular and classical music</td>
<td>jazz</td>
<td>play the guitar</td>
<td>sing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LEADER OK, who can sing in your group?

ELENA Well, I can sing.

BRIGITTE So can I.

ANDREAS I can't.

MAREK Neither can I.

LEADER What kind of music do you like Brigitte?

BRIGITTE Well, I really like jazz.

ANDREAS ........................................

MAREK Oh, I don't.

ELENA ........................................

LEADER What about instruments?

ELENA I can't play an instrument.

BRIGITTE ........................................

ANDREAS ........................................

I can play ...................................

MAREK ........................................

I can play ...................................

LEADER Do you all like classical music?

ANDREAS Well, I don't really.

BRIGITTE ........................................

MAREK ........................................

ELENA ........................................ I love it!

3 Write sentences that are true for you.

0 I drink a lot of tea. I don't. I drink a lot of coffee.

00 I don't drink a lot of milk. Neither do I.

1 I live with my wife and children.

2 I don't like jazz.

3 I love driving fast.

4 I have blonde hair.

5 I went out last night.

6 I can't play an instrument.
Expressing surprise, shock, pleasure, etc.

1 That’s/How + adjective
We can use That’s + an adjective when we think something is very good, very bad or very surprising:
‘Jeremy has just asked me to marry him!’ ‘That’s wonderful!’
‘My mobile phone was stolen yesterday.’ ‘Oh, that’s awful!’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOOD</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>That’s</td>
<td>wonderful! great! fantastic!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BAD</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>That’s</td>
<td>awful! terrible! horrible!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SURPRISING</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>That’s</td>
<td>crazy! amazing! incredible!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can also use How + an adjective:
‘Last night we heard a knock at the door, but there was no one there.’
‘How strange! Was it the wind?’
‘She’s angry and she’s not speaking to me.’ ‘How silly!’

2 What a/an + (adjective) + noun
We use What a/an + (adjective) + noun when we are disappointed, annoyed, surprised or very pleased:
‘We can’t come to your party next week, I’m afraid.’ ‘Oh, what a pity! I’m sure you’d enjoy it.’
‘Karen phoned to say she’s coming home for the summer.’ ‘What a lovely surprise!’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>a (lovely) surprise!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a (fantastic) idea!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a (wonderful) day!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a pity!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>an (awful) shame!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a pain! (= That’s annoying!)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We need a noun in exclamations with what. We don’t use what + adjective; we use That’s or How:
✗ What fantastic! ✔ That’s fantastic!

3 Really?, No!, Wow!
There are also some single words which we use when something is surprising:
‘Wow! That’s fantastic!’
‘I’ve just got a pay rise of €2,000 a year.’ ‘No! What a surprise!’
‘Really? Lucky you.’

We use Wow! only for something good. No! and Really? can be used for good or bad news:
✗ ‘Wow! I’m really sorry.’
✔ ‘No! I’m really sorry.’
✔ ‘Really? I can’t believe that …’

Pronunciation ➤ 1.39
Practice

1 Complete the sentences with That, How or What. 

0 'Jacob didn’t get on the university course he wanted.' ‘......What...... a shame!’
1 'I've just passed my driving test!’ ‘....................'s great!’
2 'There's been another bank robbery in the city.' ‘.................... awful!’
3 'We decided to sell our house and we sold it to the first person who looked at it.'
   ‘....................'s amazing!'  
4 'Mum, Jane's expecting a baby!' ‘.................... a lovely surprise!’
5 'The doctor says that I must stop drinking coffee.' ‘.................... a pity!'
6 'I think we should all join together to buy Lucy a really good present.'
   ‘.................... a fantastic idea!’
7 'Our car has been stolen again.' ‘....................’s terrible!’
8 'The engineers are working on the railway this weekend, and it’s the busiest weekend of the year.' ‘.................... silly!’

2 GRAMMAR IN USE Choose the correct words in italics in the conversation. 

GREG Holly – have you heard about the office party?  
It’s going to be at the Norfolk Hotel this year.
HOLLY How (0) awful /[wonderful]! It’s a really good hotel.
GREG Yes, but we can’t stay the night. We’ll all have to get taxis home.
HOLLY Oh, that’s (1) nice / a pity. What’s happening? Is there a meal?
GREG A really expensive meal, but we don’t have to pay for it, of course.
HOLLY (2) Wow! / That’s crazy! When is it?
GREG December 20th – it’s a Saturday.
HOLLY What a (3) surprise / shame! I’m going away that weekend to visit my parents.
   They’re having a party.
GREG (4) Really? / That’s awful. What’s the party for?
HOLLY It’s because they’ve been married for forty years. All the family will be there.
GREG (5) What fantastic! / How fantastic! How many people will there be?
HOLLY Only fifteen, but my brother is coming from Canada – and my parents don’t know.
GREG What a (6) lovely surprise / pain for them. Oh, I’d better go. I’ve got a meeting in two minutes!

3 Look at the pictures. Which of the ideas below do you think go with each one?

A Oh, that’s awful!
B What a silly little thing!
C How disgusting!
D How fantastic!
E That’s really nice.
F Wow! Lovely place!
G What a horrible photo!

4 Now write your own ideas for each picture.

Picture 1: .................................................................................................
Picture 2: .................................................................................................
1 Weak vowels

Weak vowels are vowels that we do not stress (say strongly).
The two weak vowels are /ə/ and /ʌ/:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WEAK</th>
<th>STRONG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a/an</td>
<td>/ə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the</td>
<td>/ðə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of at</td>
<td>/ɔv/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>/kæn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>/wɔz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been</td>
<td>/bɪn/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We usually use weak vowels in ‘grammar’ words, e.g. the, a, an, prepositions and auxiliary verbs.

2 Weak forms in prepositions

Most short prepositions are weak when we are speaking:
I’m going to /tə/ the cinema. Dimitri is from /frəm/ Greece. He’s at /ət/ the doctor’s.

We usually use the weak form of to /tə/ in going to and used to:
Are you going to /tə/ phone the cinema?
We used to /tə/ get the school bus at 8.00 in the morning.

Pronunciation ➤ 1.40

3 Weak forms in other words

- a/the: We usually pronounce a/an and the with /ə/:
  a book, an apple, the garden
  But when a vowel sound comes after the, we pronounce the with /ɪː/:
  the apple
- was/were /wɔz/ /wɔː/:
  Was it hot in Corfu? There were a lot of insects.
- that /ðæt/:
  Do you think that everyone’s ready?
  But when we use that to ask about something or choose something, it is always strong:
  What’s that? I’d like that one, please.
- than /ðæn/:
  We also use weak forms in comparative and superlative adjectives:
  cheaper /-ə/ cheapest /ɪst/:
  The restaurants are cheaper here than in London.
  But the cheapest restaurants are in the country.
- been /bɪn/:
  We usually pronounce been with the weak form /ɪː/:
  We’ve been to the theatre. Have you ever been to India?
- can /kæn/:
  We usually pronounce can as /kæn/ in statements and questions.
  Karen can play the piano. Can Karen play the piano?
  We use the strong form /kæn/ in short answers:
  Yes, she can.
  The negative can’t is usually strong /kænt/ in most varieties of British English:
  Karen can’t play the guitar.

Pronunciation ➤ 1.41

298
Practice

1 Write the words in the correct place below.

an  ball  been  cat  from  hand  leave  stay  that  the  to  train  wait  was

vowel usually weak  an
vowel usually strong  ball

2 Some words with weak vowels are underlined. Put a circle around the other words with weak vowels. The number in brackets () tells you how many other words there are.

1 Would you like a cup of tea? (1)
2 Louise comes from the United States. (1)
3 We were always very busy in the mornings. (1)
4 I told you that I'd been to France. (1)
5 They are going to repair the car. (2)
6 Let's go to the park - we can do our English homework tonight. (2)
7 June 21st is the longest day of the year. (2)
8 The black jeans are cheaper than the blue ones. (3)
9 I can play the piano at the show. I can't play the guitar. (3)

3 GRAMMAR IN USE Read the conversation. Then put a circle around the weak forms of can. Underline the strong forms, including can't. ✄️ Listen and check.

FRAN It's nearly the end of our last year at university.
We should organise a party.

ZOE Yes, you're right. Where (0) can we have it, do you think?

ALEX We (1) can probably use the student union building.

ZOE (2) Can you check?

ALEX Yes, I (3) can. No problem.
I'll do that tomorrow.

FRAN What about food?
(4) Can we do the food ourselves?

ALEX No, we (5) can't. The university cooks will have to do it. But I'm sure they (6) can do it for a good price.

FRAN OK. What about music? I suppose we (7) can't organise that, either.

ALEX Yes, we (8) can. We just bring the CDs we want and play them on the system there.

ZOE Great. Look, I'll do an invitation tomorrow and show it to you. Then we (9) can decide who to invite. OK?

ALEX Yes, but I've got a class in the morning, so I (10) can't meet you until after lunch.

ZOE Let's meet at about 2.00, then.

FRAN Good idea.
1 Speaking

There are a lot of differences between the way we speak English and the way we write it.

- We usually use short forms when we are speaking:
  So, we’re ready for your birthday dinner now, right?
  I think so, don’t you Jonas?
  Oh, yeah.
  You having beans, Jonas?
  Mmm ... don’t really like them, Mum.
  Really? Some beans for you, Selina?
  Not sure ... yeah, I’ll have some.

- We don’t always use pronouns (I, you, etc.) or auxiliary verbs (do, is, etc.):
  I don’t know, Mum. → Don’t know, Mum.
  Are you coming to the party? → You coming to the party?
  It’s hot today, isn’t it? → Hot today, isn’t it?
  We only do this when we are talking to people we know very well.
  We don’t do this in writing.

- We can use an extra word, (right? or OK?) when we want to check something:
  We’re ready for dinner now, right?
  We’ll order the taxi for seven o’clock, OK?
  We usually use right? to check that what we are saying is correct.
  We usually use OK? to check that an arrangement is good for the person we are speaking to.

2 Listening

When we are listening to someone speaking, we often make noises or say things to show we are listening:
‘You know your friend Jake ...’ ‘Mmm ...’
‘I’ve got tickets for the match on Saturday ...’ ‘Really?’ ‘Yeah. Do you want one?’

**Natural English** Yeah is a very informal way of saying yes.
Practice

1 Find and write the words that are usually short forms. There are two in each sentence.
   [4.75] Listen and check.
   0 I do not understand why you are so unhappy.       don’t       you’re
   1 I have not had curry for years. I will enjoy this.                      
   2 There is a bus stop on the corner. We will meet you there.                
   3 Jack and Alice cannot join us because they are busy.                  
   4 You must not leave your shoes there. It is dangerous.                 

2 Decide which words are missing from these conversations and add them.
   [4.76] Listen and check.
   A Have you
   B No, I don’t know where he is.
   1 A Awful weather, isn’t it?
   B Yes, really bad for the time of year.
   2 A OK, then, call you later.
   B Right. Speak to you then.
   3 A Ready?
   B Not sure... I can’t find my passport.
   4 A Hi. Want a quick coffee before we go?
   B Mmm, great idea.
   5 A More potatoes, Jen?
   B Mmm, love some, and some carrots, too.

3 Complete the conversation with Mmm, Really, Yeah, right or OK.
   [4.77] Listen and check.
   DYLAN Hi, Eddie. Coming to the match tonight?
   EDDIE (0) Mmm, not sure. I might have to work late.
   DYLAN (1) That’s unusual. You don’t often stay late.
   EDDIE (2) I know. You’ve got the tickets for the match, (3) ?
   DYLAN (4) but my brother will come if you can’t, so don’t worry.
   EDDIE Good. Look, I’ll call you at about 6.00, (5) ?

4 GRAMMAR IN USE Write lines 1–3 again with short forms. Then complete lines 4–6 to make
the conversation more informal.
   [4.78] Listen and check.
   0 DENISE Hi, Lynne. I have not seen you for a long time. Have you been away?
   1 LYNN We have been to Australia. We went to Sydney for the New Year celebrations.
   2 DENISE I did not know you were going away. How long were you there?
   3 LYNN We were not there for long – only two weeks. Did you do anything for New Year?
   00 DENISE We didn’t do much. Your daughter lives in Australia, doesn’t she?
   4 LYNN Yes, she does, in Perth. We went there for a week before we went to Sydney.
   5 DENISE Do you want a coffee? I’m not too busy right now.
   6 LYNN I’d love one. I’ll be with you in ten minutes.
   0 Hi, Lynne, I haven’t seen you for a long time. Have you been away?
   1 We went to Sydney for the New Year celebrations.
   2 How long were you there?
   3 only two weeks. Did you do anything for New Year?
   00 Not much. Your daughter lives in Australia, right?
   4 in Perth. We went there for a week before we went to Sydney.
   5 a coffee? I’m not too busy right now.
   6 with you in ten minutes.
1 **UNITS 108 AND 109** Choose the correct words in *italics* to complete the conversation.

Listen and check.

CHLOE Only three months to our wedding. We should book our holiday soon, (0) *should we* / *shouldn’t we*?

ANDY Yes, you’re right. Well, I’d like to go somewhere really relaxing.

CHLOE Oh, (1) *so / neither* would I! The next three months are going to be very difficult, so I don’t want any problems on our holiday.

ANDY (2) *So / Neither* do I. Well, you prefer beach holidays, (3) *don’t / aren’t* you? How about Egypt? I love Egypt.

CHLOE Mmm, I do, (4) *so / too*, but we’re getting married in late July, and that’s the hottest time in Egypt. I think it’ll be too hot.

ANDY Yeah, you’re right. We could go further away, (5) *couldn’t we? / no?* How about Thailand?

CHLOE I don’t know. Thailand will be hot, too, and we’ve only got two weeks. I’m not happy about spending days travelling.

ANDY No, I’m not (6) *too / either*. We haven’t thought about Europe, (7) *have / haven’t we?*

CHLOE True. I’d like to visit Bulgaria, or Romania, perhaps.

ANDY Yes, (8) *so I would / so would I*, but I don’t know anything about those countries. I don’t know anyone who’s been there.

CHLOE But (9) *I do / do I!* Laura from my office has been to Bulgaria.

I can ask her about it, (10) *do I? / can’t I?*

ANDY Good idea.

2 **UNITS 110 AND 112** Complete the conversation. Use the words and phrases from the box.

Listen and check.

MARTA Hi, Karen. (0) *...Everything OK?...*

KAREN Fine, thanks. (1) ................. a coffee? I’ve got something to tell you.

MARTA Oh, what’s that?

KAREN Well, I’ve got a new job.

MARTA (2) .................? I didn’t know you were looking for a new job.

KAREN I wasn’t. The company came to me!

MARTA (3) ................., a surprise! (4) ................. fantastic!

KAREN Thanks. It’s a great job – better salary, a company car, and even an apartment ...

MARTA (5) .................! More money and a car – (6) ................. wonderful!

But … you said there was an apartment, (7) .................?

KAREN (8) ................., that’s the only problem. The job’s in New York.

MARTA New York! But (9) .................! I’ll hardly ever see you.

KAREN Yes, you will. I’ll be back quite often, and you can come and visit me – it isn’t that far.

MARTA No, you’re right, and I’d love to see New York.

3 **UNITS 111 AND 112** In each sentence below, put a circle around the weak form(s) and make short forms where you can.

I’ve

0 I have never been to Africa.

1 The train has not arrived yet.

2 They did not want to go to the beach.

3 I used to study the history of art.

4 It is very hot there during the summer.

5 There are hundreds of people outside.

6 Alissa can play the piano, but she can not read music.
4 ALL UNITS  Look at the signs and notices.
Choose the best answer.

0 A That's not English, no?
  B That's not English, is it?
  C That's not English, isn't it?
1 I love Scottish dancing!
  A So I do!
  B Neither do I!
  C I don't!
2 I don't have a ticket.
  A Neither do I.
  B So do I.
  C I don't, too.
3 A That terrible!
  B What terrible!
  C How terrible!
4 A Wow! That's good.
  B Right! That's good.
  C So! That's good.
5 They can't do that! It's against the law to put an age in a job advert.
  A Neither can I!
  B Really? I didn't know that.
  C Mmm. That's good.

5 ALL UNITS  Complete the conversation with the correct words and phrases, A, B or C below.

JOHN  Are you going to a fireworks party on November 5th?
PILAR  (0) .........., I think so. (1) .......... one by the river.

JOHN  Mmm. It's usually a good one. You'll enjoy it.
PILAR  Yes and (2) .........., I prefer to go to an organised event.

JOHN  (3) .........., actually. We usually do something at home for the children.
PILAR  Oh, what do you do?

JOHN  We make a fire in the garden and buy fireworks.
PILAR  (4) .......... But you can't have as many fireworks, (5) ..........?

JOHN  Maybe not, but we make soup and bake potatoes in the fire. (6) .......... really good fun.
PILAR  (7) .........., I can see that.

JOHN  Look, why don't you come along? You haven't bought tickets for the other one yet, (8) ..........?
PILAR  No, we haven't. (9) .......... of you!

JOHN  Right. Come over to our place at about 6.00, (10) ..........?
PILAR  Thanks. That's great.

0 A No B Yeah C Right
1 A There's B Is C There is
2 A so the children B so the children will
  C so will the children
3 A I do B I don't C So I do
4 A Wow! B Really? C No?
5 A can you B you can C can't you
6 A It is B Is C It's
7 A Oh B Mmm C No
8 A no B is it C have you
9 A It's nice B How's nice C That's nice
10 A is it B yes C OK

Go online for more review exercises
Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1. You've been to Monaco, ..........?
   A have you  B haven’t you?  C isn’t it?
   ➤ Unit 108

2. There .......... many people at the shops, were there?
   A were  B aren’t  C weren’t
   ➤ Unit 108

3. I'm going to meet your new classmates tonight, ..........?
   A aren’t I  B am not I  C are not I
   ➤ Unit 108

4. We can park the car here for an hour, ..........?
   A can we  B no  C can’t we
   ➤ Unit 108

5. There isn’t much time, ..........?
   A is it  B is there  C are we
   ➤ Unit 108

6. We won’t be late, ..........?
   A will we  B are we  C is it
   ➤ Unit 108

7. ‘My boss makes me work really hard.’ ..........'
   A So mine, too.  B So mine does.  C So does mine.
   ➤ Unit 109

8. ‘Our daughter won’t eat meat.’ ..........'
   A Neither my son.  B Neither will my son.  C So will my son.
   ➤ Unit 109

9. ‘I really like Friday evenings, when I can relax.’ ..........'
   A We do, too.  B So we, too.  C We too do.
   ➤ Unit 109

10. ‘Carla never puts her books away in the evening.’ ..........'
    ➤ Unit 109

11. ‘I didn’t enjoy the party.’ ‘Oh, ..........! It was great.’
    A I didn’t  B I did  C I don’t
    ➤ Unit 109

12. ‘All the people in Germany live in flats.’
    ‘ .......... Some German people live in houses.’
    A Don’t  B We do  C They don’t
    ➤ Unit 109

13. ‘I’ll give you a lift to the airport in the morning.’ ‘Oh, .......... so kind!’
    A what’s  B that  C that’s
    ➤ Unit 110

14. ‘They’re closing the station car park.’ .......... annoying!’
    A How  B That  C What
    ➤ Unit 110

15. ‘I felt really ill so I couldn’t go to the concert.’ .......... pity!’
    A What  B That  C What a
    ➤ Unit 110

16. ‘My father has bought me a Ferrari!’ ..........! That’s amazing!’
    A OK  B Wow  C So
    ➤ Unit 110

17. You really .......... spend all your money on expensive clothes!
    A do not  B not should  C shouldn’t
    ➤ Unit 112

18. ‘We’re all ready now. Hurry up!’ ..........! I’ll be with you in a minute.’
    A Am coming  B I come  C Coming
    ➤ Unit 112

19. ‘I had an awful time yesterday evening.’ ..........? What happened?’
    A Really  B Did  C Wow
    ➤ Unit 112

20. I’ll call you later this evening, ..........?
    A when  B no  C OK
    ➤ Unit 112
Grammar check

This section will help you with your work on the practice exercises; it will help you with revision for exams, too.

APPENDIX 1  Quick checks

QUICK CHECK 1 Pronouns  306
QUICK CHECK 2 Verb tenses  306
QUICK CHECK 3 Modal verbs  308
QUICK CHECK 4 Conditionals  309
QUICK CHECK 5 Verbs + -ing form and infinitive  310
QUICK CHECK 6 Linking words  311
QUICK CHECK 7 Verbs + prepositions  312
QUICK CHECK 8 Phrasal verbs  313

APPENDIX 2  Irregular verbs  314

APPENDIX 3  Spelling rules  316

APPENDIX 4  British and American English  317
## APPENDIX 1

### QUICK CHECK 1  MODULE 2  Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR PRONOUNS</th>
<th>OBJECT PRONOUNS</th>
<th>POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES</th>
<th>POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS</th>
<th>REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>mine</td>
<td>myself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
<td>yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>himself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>hers</td>
<td>herself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
<td></td>
<td>itself</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>ours</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
<td>yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>theirs</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| UNIT | 11 | 11 | 13 | 13 | 15 |

## QUICK CHECK 2  MODULES 5, 6, 7 AND 8  Verb tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>USE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>facts/permanent situations</td>
<td>Water boils at 100°C.</td>
<td>37.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thoughts/feelings</td>
<td>I think New York is exciting.</td>
<td>37.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regular activities and habits</td>
<td>David goes to work by bus.</td>
<td>38.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with verbs that do not use the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>continuous</td>
<td>I don’t agree with you.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>actions happening now</td>
<td>The taxi’s waiting outside.</td>
<td>39.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>temporary situations</td>
<td>My computer isn’t working.</td>
<td>39.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>finished actions in the past</td>
<td>I went to the dentist yesterday.</td>
<td>45.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>repeated actions in the past</td>
<td>She phoned her parents every day.</td>
<td>45.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a series of past actions</td>
<td>We arrived at the airport and then took a taxi to</td>
<td>46.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>past situations</td>
<td>the hotel.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past continuous</td>
<td>an action at and around a time in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the past</td>
<td>I was watching TV at nine o’clock yesterday.</td>
<td>47.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>temporary situations in the past</td>
<td>She was living in Paris when she had her first baby.</td>
<td>47.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a scene in the past</td>
<td>The sun was shining when we arrived.</td>
<td>47.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>an action you did until something</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>interrupted you</td>
<td>I was watching TV when the phone rang.</td>
<td>47.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TENSE</td>
<td>USE</td>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>UNIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>actions and experiences in our lives until now</td>
<td>My parents have visited Austria once.</td>
<td>50.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with superlative adjectives</td>
<td>This is the worst food I've ever had.</td>
<td>50.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a recent action with present results</td>
<td>I've broken my leg so I can't play football.</td>
<td>51.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>giving news</td>
<td>The president has arrived in London.</td>
<td>51.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with just, already, yet</td>
<td>The train has just arrived.</td>
<td>52.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with for, since, etc.</td>
<td>He's already got off.</td>
<td>52.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with this morning, this week, etc.</td>
<td>I've known Sami for thirty years.</td>
<td>53.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for actions/situations until now</td>
<td>I've been training for six months.</td>
<td>55.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to explain a present situation</td>
<td>We've been waiting since three o'clock.</td>
<td>55.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future with going to</td>
<td>future plans</td>
<td>What are you going to do this evening?</td>
<td>57.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>things we expect to happen</td>
<td>I'm in a traffic jam so I'm going to be late.</td>
<td>57.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future with will</td>
<td>certain future</td>
<td>My mother will be fifty in May.</td>
<td>58.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>things we think will happen</td>
<td>You should go to the gym - you'll enjoy it.</td>
<td>58.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>immediate decisions</td>
<td>I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed.</td>
<td>58.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future with present</td>
<td>future arrangements</td>
<td>I'm giving a talk at the sales meeting on Wednesday.</td>
<td>59.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future with present</td>
<td>future events on timetables and programmes</td>
<td>The train leaves London at 10.25 and arrives in Bristol at 11.50.</td>
<td>59.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### QUICK CHECK 3 MODULE 9  Modal verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>USE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>can/can’t</strong></td>
<td>present ability</td>
<td>I can speak Spanish well.</td>
<td>61.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>present possibility</td>
<td>You can get cheap tickets on the Internet.</td>
<td>61.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>arrangement</td>
<td>The doctor can see you tomorrow.</td>
<td>61.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not allowed</td>
<td>We can’t wear jeans in the office.</td>
<td>61.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>permission</td>
<td>Can we borrow the car this evening? I’m sorry, you can’t. I need it.</td>
<td>63.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>can</strong></td>
<td>request</td>
<td>Can you help me with these bags?</td>
<td>63.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>can’t be</strong></td>
<td>almost certain</td>
<td>That can’t be Ed in the café – he’s at school at the moment.</td>
<td>68.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>could/ couldn’t</strong></td>
<td>past ability</td>
<td>Mozart could write beautiful music.</td>
<td>62.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>past possibility</td>
<td>Children could play in the streets years ago.</td>
<td>62.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>permission</td>
<td>Could I use your bathroom, please?</td>
<td>63.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>request</td>
<td>Could you open the window, please?</td>
<td>63.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>have to/ don’t have to</strong></td>
<td>necessary/</td>
<td>I have to get up early tomorrow to catch the train.</td>
<td>64.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not necessary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>necessary in the present</td>
<td>You don’t have to get a licence to ride a bicycle.</td>
<td>64.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>had to/ didn’t have to</strong></td>
<td>necessary/</td>
<td>They had to get visas when they went to South America.</td>
<td>66.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not necessary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>necessary/ not necessary in the past</td>
<td>We didn’t have to show our passports.</td>
<td>66.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>may/may not</strong></td>
<td>permission</td>
<td>You may start writing now.</td>
<td>63.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not allowed</td>
<td>Students may not take coats or bags with them into the exam.</td>
<td>63.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not certain</td>
<td>Mr Clement may be with a client. The order may not arrive next week.</td>
<td>68.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>might/ might not</strong></td>
<td>not certain</td>
<td>I might work in my uncle’s shop during the holidays. The parcel might not arrive tomorrow.</td>
<td>68.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>must/ must not</strong></td>
<td>instructions, signs and notices</td>
<td>Passengers must wear seat belts. Visitors must not smoke in reception.</td>
<td>65.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>recommending something</td>
<td>You really must try this salad – it’s delicious!</td>
<td>65.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>must be</strong></td>
<td>almost certain</td>
<td>They must be out – there are no lights on in the house.</td>
<td>68.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>need to/ don’t need to</strong></td>
<td>necessary/</td>
<td>I need to earn some more money.</td>
<td>64.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not necessary</td>
<td>We don’t need to take our jackets – it’s warm outside.</td>
<td>64.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>USE</td>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>UNIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ought to/ought not to</td>
<td>advice</td>
<td>You ought to find out how much it costs.</td>
<td>67.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>You ought not to sit in the sun all day.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should/should not</td>
<td>advice</td>
<td>You should see the doctor.</td>
<td>67.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>You shouldn’t eat a lot of sugar.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will/won’t be able to</td>
<td>future ability</td>
<td>I won’t be able to drive for weeks.</td>
<td>62.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>future possibility</td>
<td>We’ll be able to swim every day at the hotel.</td>
<td>62.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will/won’t have to</td>
<td>necessary/not necessary in the future</td>
<td>I’ll have to wait until tomorrow.</td>
<td>66.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We won’t have to pay at the cinema tonight.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**QUICK CHECK 4 MODULE 10  Conditionals**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONDITIONAL</th>
<th>USE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present conditions</td>
<td>real situations that can happen at any time</td>
<td>If you water the plants, they grow.</td>
<td>69.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>giving instructions or rules for a situation</td>
<td>If it doesn’t work, bring it back to the shop.</td>
<td>69.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first conditional (future conditions)</td>
<td>possible future situations</td>
<td>If the tickets are expensive, we won’t buy them.</td>
<td>70.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>certain future situations</td>
<td>When I arrive at the airport, I’ll phone you.</td>
<td>70.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>offers and warnings</td>
<td>If you arrive late, we’ll go without you.</td>
<td>70.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second conditional (unlikely/unreal conditions)</td>
<td>unlikely future conditions</td>
<td>If we had a lot of money, we’d buy a big house.</td>
<td>71.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unreal present conditions</td>
<td>If David was here, he’d enjoy this film.</td>
<td>71.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>advice</td>
<td>If I were you, I’d get there early.</td>
<td>71.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## QUICK CHECK 5  MODULE 13  Verbs + -ing form and infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERBS</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>verb + -ing form</td>
<td>like dislike enjoy (not) mind love hate prefer suggest consider imagine recommend begin delay start stop finish avoid miss</td>
<td>83.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>After you finish eating, you can wash the dishes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + preposition + -ing form</td>
<td>give up (= stop a habit or activity)</td>
<td>83.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>talk about (= discuss)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>think of (= consider)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’m thinking of training as a nurse.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go + -ing form</td>
<td>go swimming/skating/dancing, etc.</td>
<td>83.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Let’s go shopping on Saturday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + infinitive without to</td>
<td>should can can’t must let’s</td>
<td>84.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You should send her an email.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + infinitive with to</td>
<td>can/can’t afford agree arrange consider</td>
<td>84.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ask choose decide deserve expect learn offer plan promise refuse seem want</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I want to buy some new jeans.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>would like/love/hate/prefer, etc.</td>
<td>84.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’d love to come to your party.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb (+ object) + infinitive with to</td>
<td>ask expect help need want</td>
<td>85.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He asked me to call again later.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He asked to see the manager.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + object + infinitive with to</td>
<td>advise allow cause force invite teach tell order warn</td>
<td>85.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They told us to leave.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + object + infinitive without to</td>
<td>make let</td>
<td>85.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The cold weather made the lake freeze.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# QUICK CHECK 6  MODULE 16  Linking words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF LINKING</th>
<th>LINKING WORDS</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
<th>UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>joins two sentences</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>I've washed up and I've put the dishes away.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>but</td>
<td>I've washed up but I haven't put the dishes away.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
<td>I can wash up or I can put the dishes away.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>92.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>makes and/or stronger</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>Hilary speaks both French and Japanese.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... and</td>
<td>We can either watch TV or listen to music.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>either</td>
<td></td>
<td>92.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explains why</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>The match is delayed because it's raining.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something happens</td>
<td>because of</td>
<td>The match is delayed because of the rain.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>93.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gives a result</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>It's raining, so the match is delayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>93.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explains why you</td>
<td>so that</td>
<td>I studied languages so that I could become a translator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do something</td>
<td>to + infinitive</td>
<td>I studied languages to become a translator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>93.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gives a time</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>I'll call you when we get back.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>after</td>
<td>I went to bed after I locked the back door.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>before</td>
<td>I locked the back door before I went to bed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>while</td>
<td>He saw the accident while he was waiting for the bus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>until</td>
<td>I waited with the children until she got home.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>as soon as</td>
<td>I'll call you as soon as the plane lands.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>94.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gives the order of</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>First the bus was late.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>events in a story</td>
<td>then</td>
<td>Then there was a lot of traffic.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>after that</td>
<td>After that, there was a long queue at the ticket office.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the end</td>
<td>In the end, we got on a train, but we were very late.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>94.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gives instructions</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>First, enter the number of your car.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>next</td>
<td>Next, put the coins in the machine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>then</td>
<td>Then press the green button.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>finally</td>
<td>Finally, take your ticket and put it inside your car.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>95.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# QUICK CHECK 7 MODULE 18  Verbs + prepositions

## COMMON VERBS + PREPOSITIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + Preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>verb + to</td>
<td>belong to</td>
<td>That house belongs to my uncle.</td>
<td>100.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>explain to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>listen to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>speak to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>talk to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>write to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + about</td>
<td>complain about</td>
<td>British people often complain about the weather.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>read about</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>speak about</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>talk about</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>think about</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + for</td>
<td>apply for</td>
<td>We’ve been waiting for half an hour!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ask for</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>look for</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pay for</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wait for</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>work for</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + in</td>
<td>arrive in</td>
<td>Do you believe in luck?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>believe in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>get in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>live in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>succeed in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stay in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + of</td>
<td>approve of</td>
<td>What do you think of her new friend?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>think of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + on</td>
<td>decide on</td>
<td>I decided on studying chemistry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>depend on</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + at</td>
<td>arrive at</td>
<td>We’re staying at a small hotel.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laugh at</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>look at</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stay at</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + with</td>
<td>agree with</td>
<td>Maria is right. I agree with her.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stay with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## VERBS + DIFFERENT PREPOSITIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>(a town or country)</td>
<td>When did you arrive in England?</td>
<td>101.1 AND 101.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at</td>
<td>(any other place)</td>
<td>The train arrived at Victoria Station at six o’clock.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>(a person or a bill)</td>
<td>My mother paid the bill.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(no preposition)</td>
<td>She paid the waiter at the end of the meal.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for</td>
<td>(a thing)</td>
<td>I haven’t paid for the tickets yet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>in/at</td>
<td>(a place)</td>
<td>She stayed at the Hilton Hotel last month.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with</td>
<td>(a person)</td>
<td>I’m staying with my cousins for the holidays.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td></td>
<td>look at somebody/something</td>
<td>Look at the clock. We’re late!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>look for somebody/something</td>
<td>Excuse me, I’m looking for Dr Watson’s office. Do you know where it is?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>look after somebody/something</td>
<td>A nanny looks after the children while Emily is at work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>look like somebody/something</td>
<td>Michael looks like his grandfather. They are both tall and thin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## VERB + OBJECT + PREPOSITION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask somebody</td>
<td>for something</td>
<td>Did you ask the doctor for some advice?</td>
<td>101.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank somebody</td>
<td>for something</td>
<td>The manager thanked the staff for their hard work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite somebody</td>
<td>to something</td>
<td>I invited Carla to my party.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell somebody</td>
<td>about something</td>
<td>Have you told your parents about your new job yet?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# QUICK CHECK 8  MODULE 18  Phrasal verbs

## COMMON PHRASAL VERBS WITH AN OBJECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>bring</strong></td>
<td>bring something back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fill</strong></td>
<td>fill something in (= complete a form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>find</strong></td>
<td>find something out (= get information)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>give</strong></td>
<td>give something back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>give something up (= stop a habit, activity or job)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>let</strong></td>
<td>let somebody in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>look</strong></td>
<td>look something up (= find information in a book or computer, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pick</strong></td>
<td>pick something up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pick somebody up (= collect somebody and take them somewhere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>put</strong></td>
<td>put something back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>put something down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>put something on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>switch</strong></td>
<td>switch something on/off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>take</strong></td>
<td>take something away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>take something off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>turn</strong></td>
<td>turn something down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>turn something on/off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## COMMON PHRASAL VERBS WITHOUT AN OBJECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>move towards or away from something/somewhere</td>
<td>come back  come in  get out  go away  go back  go in  go out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move your body</td>
<td>lie down  look round  sit down  stand up  turn around</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>others</td>
<td>get up  grow up  hurry up  look out (= be careful)  wake up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## APPENDIX 2

### Common irregular verbs (1) A–Z list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lose</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burnt/burned</td>
<td>burnt/burned</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dive</td>
<td>dived</td>
<td>dived</td>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamt/ dreamed</td>
<td>dreamt/ dreamed</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelt/spelled</td>
<td>spelt/spelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>forgiven</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Common irregular verbs (2) list of forms

### 1. Past tense form = past participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2. Infinitive + (e)n

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Past tense form + (e)n

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. No change

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* For read, the spelling doesn’t change, but the pronunciation does: /rɪd/ /red/ /red/

### 5. Vowel change

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6. Two participle forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burnt/burned</td>
<td>burnt/burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamt/dreamed</td>
<td>dreamt/dreamed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelt/spelled</td>
<td>spelt/spelled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# APPENDIX 3

## Spelling rules

### 1 Spelling of nouns/verbs + s

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Most nouns and verbs</th>
<th>Add -s</th>
<th>cat → cats  house → houses  eat → eats  sleep → sleeps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nouns and verbs that</td>
<td></td>
<td>church → churches  bus → buses  dish → dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end in -ch, -s, -sh, -x, -o</td>
<td>Add -es</td>
<td>box → boxes  potato → potatoes  teach → teaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nouns and verbs that</td>
<td></td>
<td>miss → misses  wash → washes  go → goes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end in consonant + y</td>
<td>Take away -y and add -ies</td>
<td>city → cities  family → families  carry → carries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nouns and verbs that</td>
<td>Add -s</td>
<td>holiday → holidays  key → keys  enjoy → enjoys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end in vowel + y</td>
<td></td>
<td>play → plays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nouns that end in</td>
<td>Take away -f(e) and add -ves</td>
<td>wife → wives  loaf → loaves  (BUT roof → roofs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-f or -fe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Spelling of -ing forms of verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Most verbs</th>
<th>Add -ing to the infinitive form</th>
<th>eat → eating  go → going  sleep → sleeping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verbs that end in -e</td>
<td>Take away -e and add -ing</td>
<td>take → taking  use → using</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs that end in -ie</td>
<td>Take away -ie and add -ying</td>
<td>die → dying  lie → lying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs of one syllable that end in a short vowel + consonant</td>
<td>Double the consonant and add -ing</td>
<td>sit → sitting  swim → swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs with more than one syllable that end in a stressed short vowel and consonant, e.g. begin.</td>
<td>Double the consonant and add -ing (We don’t double the consonant if the final syllable is not stressed: visit → visiting)</td>
<td>begin → beginning  forget → forgetting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3 Spelling of regular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs that end in -e</th>
<th>Add -d</th>
<th>die → died  like → liked  live → lived</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verbs that end in a stressed vowel and one consonant (except y, w or x)</td>
<td>Double the consonant and add -ed (We don’t double the consonant if the final syllable is not stressed)</td>
<td>plan → planned  rob → robbed  stop → stopped (visit → visited  open → opened)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs that end in a consonant + y</td>
<td>Remove -y and add -ied</td>
<td>carry → carried  study → studied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs that end in a vowel + -y</td>
<td>Add -ed</td>
<td>enjoy → enjoyed  play → played</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4 Spelling of comparative adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Most short adjectives</th>
<th>Add -er</th>
<th>rich → richer  tall → taller</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Most short adjectives that end in e</td>
<td>Add -r</td>
<td>late → later  nice → nicer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short adjectives that end in one vowel + one consonant (except w)</td>
<td>Double the consonant and add -er</td>
<td>big → bigger  hot → hotter  (slow → slower  low → lower)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short adjectives that end in consonant + -y</td>
<td>Change y to i and add -er</td>
<td>dry → drier  funny → funnier</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 Spelling of superlative adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>most short adjectives</th>
<th>add -est</th>
<th>rich → richest  tall → tallest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>short adjectives that end in -e</td>
<td>add -st</td>
<td>late → latest  nice → nicest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short adjectives that end in one vowel + one consonant (except w)</td>
<td>double the consonant and add -est</td>
<td>big → biggest  hot → hottest (slow → slowest  low → lowest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short adjectives that end in consonant + y</td>
<td>change y to i and add -est</td>
<td>dry → driest  lucky → luckiest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

APPENDIX 4

British and American English

**at/on the weekend**  ➤ Unit 21.1

BrE: at the weekend
AmE: on the weekend

What are you doing at the weekend?
We’re visiting our cousins in Ohio on the weekend.

**to/through**  ➤ Unit 21.3

BrE: from (day/date) to (day/date)
The shop will be closed from Wednesday to Friday.
AmE: (day/date) through (day/date)
The shop will be closed Wednesday through Friday.

**have/have got**  ➤ Unit 42

We can use have got in American English but have is more common.

BrE: Has your house got a garden?
AmE: Does your house have a garden?

**have/take a shower**  ➤ Unit 43.3

BrE: have a shower/bath/holiday
Jack can’t come to the phone; he’s having a shower.
AmE: take a shower/bath/holiday
Jack can’t come to the phone; he’s taking a shower.

**just/already/yet**  ➤ Unit 52

In British English we usually use the present perfect with just, already and yet.
We don’t use the past simple.

We’ve just finished eating.
Graham’s train has already arrived.
Have you seen that film yet?

In American English we can use the present perfect OR the past simple.

We just finished eating.
Graham’s train already arrived.
Did you see that film yet?

We’ve just finished eating.
Graham’s train has already arrived.
Have you seen that film yet?

We just finished eating.
Graham’s train already arrived.
Did you see that film yet?
A
a/an 8
or the 10, 12
pronunciation 298
uncountable nouns 6
uses 12
a bit 80
a few 18
a little
+ comparative adjective 80
+ uncountable noun 18
+ verb 80
a lot 80
a lot of 16
ability
future: be able to 156
past: could 156
present: can/can’t 154
-able adjectives 284
about: verb + about 268
above 44
across 48
active verbs 256
adjectives 62-4
+ adverbs of degree 80
+ enough 78
+ noun 62, 266, 286
+ preposition 266
adverb + participle verb 286
as + adjective + as 76
of colour 62
comparative adjectives 70, 72, 80, 316
compound adjectives 286
demonstratives 32
-ed form 64
forming adjectives 284, 286
How? + adjective 206
-ing form 64
of material 62
measurements 206
of nationality 62
negative form 284
(not) + adjective + enough 78
number + noun 286
of opinion 62
possessive adjectives 30
prefixes 284
the same (as) 76
self + verb/adjective/noun 286
of shape 62
suffixes 64, 284
superlative adjectives 74, 124, 316
too + adjective 78
verbs + adjective 62
word order 62
adverbs 66-8
+ enough 78
already 128, 317
as + adverb + as 76
certainly 158
definitely 144
of degree 80
of direction 66
of frequency 66, 68, 92
irregular adverbs 66
just 128, 317
of manner 66, 68, 184
of place 66, 68
probably 144
of time 66
too + adverb 78
verb + adverb 68, 80, 272
very 80
word order 68, 144, 184
yet 128, 317
advice
If ... 174, 178
If I were/was you ... 178
reporting advice 226
should, ought to, must 166
advise 226
after 52
+ -ing form 250
future events/time 146, 248
order of events 248
after that 250
age 206
ago 110
agreement
either 294
neither 294
noun–verb 2
question tags 292
so 294
too 294
-al adjectives 284
all 20
all of 20
allowed to 154
along 48
already 128, 317
am 86

318
American English 317

an see a/an
-ance nouns 282
and 244
animals
  referring to 26
  that 234
  which 234
another (one) 38
-ant nouns 282
any 14
  anybody 36
  anyone 36
  anything 36
  anywhere 36
apostrophes (‘) 30
are 86
aren’t I? 292
aren’t they? 292
arrangements
  future 142, 146, 148
  present 154
arrive 270
articles
  definite: the 10, 12
  indefinite: a/an 6, 8, 10, 12
  no article 12
  pronunciation 298
as 54
  as + adjective + as 76
  as + adverb + as 76
  as soon as 146
ask 226, 270
at
  place 44, 56
  time 50, 56, 317
  verb + at 268
-ation nouns 282
auxiliary verbs
  after and/or 244
  word order 68, 186, 198, 200

B
bad 72, 74
be
  + adjectives 62
  + object pronouns 26
  be able to 156
  be allowed to 154
  past simple 108
  present simple 86, 88
  question forms 88, 108, 198
  there + be 190
  Yes/No questions 198
  because/because of 246
  been 126
    pronunciation 298
  before 52, 124
    + -ing 250
    future events/time 146, 248
    order of events 248
  behind 46
  below 44
  beside 44
  best: the best 74
  better 72
  between 46
  bit: a bit 80
  both 20
    both ... and 244
    both of 20
  bring back 272
  bring or take 274
British and American English 317
but 244
by
  + noun phrases 56
  by myself/himself 34
  passive + by 256, 260
  place 44
  time 52
  ways of travelling/communicating/paying 54
C
can
  ability 154
  after so that 246
  arrangements 154
  permission 154, 158
  possibility 154
  pronunciation 298
  reported statements 224
  requests 158
cannot/can’t
  ability 154
  arrangements 154
  can’t be 168
  can’t we? 292
  possibility 154
  pronunciation 298
  refusing permission 158
capital letters 2
causative (have something done) 260
certainly 158

319
certainty
   definitely 144
   going to 148
   must be 168
   probably 144

classes
   linking words 244
   main clauses 234, 238
   relative clauses 234, 236, 238

collocations 266

come back 272

come in 272

come or go 274

commas (,) 248

comparative adjectives 70, 316
   + adverbs of degree 80
   without than 72

compound adjectives 286

compound nouns 286

conditionals 174-8, 309
   first conditional 176
   future conditions 176
   present/real conditions 174
   second conditional 178
   unlikely/unreal conditions 178

collocations see linking words

conjunctions see linking words

consonants 8, 10

correlations see short forms

could/couldn’t
   past ability 156
   past possibility 156
   permission 158
   reported statements 224
   requests 158
   suggestion 158
   uncertainty 168

countable nouns 4, 6, 20

dates: It’s ... 192
days: It’s ... 192
decisions: I’ll ... 144, 148
definite article: the 10, 12, 298
definitely 144
demonstratives 32
describing events in the past 250
did he? 292
didn’t have to 164

direct questions 228
disagreement 294
distances
   How far? 206
   It’s ... 192

do
   do + the + -ing or go + -ing 274
   do/don’t 90, 92
   do or make 276
   in indirect questions 228
Do you think ... ? 168
Do you think + should/ought to 166
does/doesn’t 90, 92
Don’t! 186
don’t have to 160, 162
don’t need to 160
don’t you? 292
during 52
   or while 248

E
each other 34

early 66
-ed adjectives 64
-ed form of verb 110, 124, 224, 315
either 294
either ... or 244
-ence nouns 282
-end: in the end 250

enough 78
   not enough 18, 78

-ent nouns 282

-er comparative adjectives 70, 298, 316

-er nouns 282

-ese nouns 282

-est superlative adjectives 74, 124, 298, 316
ever 74, 124
everybody 36
everyone 36
everything 36
everywhere 36

exclamation mark (!) 186

exclamations 296

extremely 80

F

fairly 80

far 72, 74
   How far? 206

far or near? (this or that?) 32

farther 72

farthest: the farthest 74

fast 66
   How fast? 206

few: a few 18

fill in 272

finally 250

find out 272
first conditional 176
First (describing past events) 250
for
  + indirect object 188
  + noun phrases 56
  + past simple 112, 118
  + present perfect 130
  + present perfect continuous 134
preposition 52, 112, 118, 130-1, 134
verb + for 188, 268
for sale 56
frequency
  adverbs 66, 68, 92
  How often? 206
  present simple 92
from 48
  (from) ... to 50, 112
  (from) ... until 50
front: in front of 46
-ful adjectives 284
further 72
furthest: the furthest 74
future forms 142-8, 307
  ability 156
  arrangements 142, 146, 148
  certainty 144, 148
  decisions 144, 148
  events 142
going to 142, 148
  linking words 248
  necessity 164
offers, promises, warnings 144
plans 142, 146, 148
possibility 148, 156
predictions 142, 144, 148
present continuous 146, 148
present simple 146
will 144, 148
go back 272
go in 272
go on 224, 282
go out 272
gone 126
good 66, 72, 74
got: have got 100, 102, 317
grow up 272
H
had (past perfect) 224
had to/didn’t have to 164
hard 66
has there? 292
hate: I’d hate ... 216
have 102
  have got 100, 102, 317
  have or take 276, 317
  have something done 260
  have to/don’t have to 160, 162
  will have to 164
he 26, 234
help 216
her
  object pronoun 26
  possessive adjective 30
hers 30
herself 34
him 26
himself 34
his
  possessive adjective 30
  possessive pronoun 30
How? 206
  + adjective 206
  How many? 16, 206
  How much? 16, 206
  How often? 206
How + adjective! 296
hurry up 272
hyphen (-) 286
I
I 26
I (don’t) think
  + should/ought to 166
  + will 144
-ian nouns 282
if
  advice 174, 178
  if + past simple, would/wouldn’t + infinitive
    without to 178
index

intonation
  compound nouns 286
  question tags 292
  Wh- questions 200
  Yes/No questions 198
  see also pronunciation
intransitive verbs 184
invite 270
-ion nouns 282
irregular forms
  adverbs 66
  comparative adjectives 72
  plural nouns 2
  superlative adjectives 74
  verbs 110, 126, 314–15
is 86
  Is that ...? 32
  is there? 292
  isn't he? 292
-ish nouns 282
-ist nouns 282
it 26
  as subject/object 192
  and there 192
it's (= it is) 26
  + adjective/noun + to 192
  it's and there is 192
its (possessive adjective) 30
itself 34
-ity nouns 282
-ive adjectives 284

J
just 128, 317

L
late 66
least: the least 74
less 72
-less adjectives 284
let + object + infinitive 218
let in 272
Let's + infinitive 216, 218
lie down 272
like
  + -ing form 214
  I'd like ... 216
  preposition 54
  What is it like? 204
linking words 244–50, 311
  for instructions 250
  joining clauses 244
  joining sentences 246
for purpose 246
for reason 246
for result 246
for order of events 248, 250
for stories 250
for time 248
listener responses 300
little: a little
+ comparative adjective 80
+ uncountable noun 18
+ verb 80
live or stay 274
look after 270
look at 270
look for 270
look like 270
look out 272
look round 272
look up 272
lot: a lot 80
lot: a lot of 16
love
  I’d love 216
  in love 56
-ly adverbs 66
instructions, signs and notices 162
necessity 160, 162, 164
opinion 160, 162, 166
passive forms 258
permission 154, 158
possibility 154, 156, 168
recommendation 166
refusing permission 162
requests 158
suggestions 158
Yes/No questions 198
more 70, 72
most 20
  the most + adjective 74
  most of 20
movement: prepositions 48
much
+ comparative adjective/adverb 80
+ uncountable noun 16
How much? 16, 206
too much 18
must
advice and recommendation 166
instructions, signs and notices 162
necessity 162
opinion 162
reported statements 224
must be 168
must not/mustn’t
advice and recommendation 166
instructions, signs and notices 162
my 30
myself 34
names 12
nationalities 62, 282
near 44
near or far? (this or that?) 32
necessity
  future: will have to 164
  past: had to 164
  present: have to/don’t have to 160
  present: must 162
  present: need to 160
need to/don’t need to 160
negative forms
adjectives 284
cannot/can’t 154
could not/couldn’t 156
future with going to 142
future with will 144, 156
have 102
nothing 36
past continuous 114
past simple 112
present continuous 94
present perfect continuous 134
present perfect simple 124
present simple 90
present simple: be 86
present simple: have got 100
question tags 292
questions 200
sentences 218
used to 118
neither 294
-ness nouns 282
never 68, 124
next to 44
no 20, 36
Not 296
no one 36
nobody 36
none 20
none of 20
not as ... as 72, 76
not enough 18, 78
+ adjective + enough 78
nothing 36
nouns 2-6
adjective + noun 62, 266, 286
changing nouns into adjectives 284
compound nouns 286
countable nouns 4, 6, 20
forming nouns 282, 286
-ing form as noun subject 186
noun + noun 286
noun + 's' 28
noun–verb agreement 2
object nouns 188
of + noun 28
plural 2, 8, 10, 316
possessive forms 28
singular 2
uncountable nouns 4, 6, 8, 10
verb -ing + noun 286
verbs + nouns 266
now or then? (this or that?) 32
nowhere 36

O

object
it as an object 192
object nouns 188
object pronouns 26, 192
object questions 208
relative pronoun as object 236
verb + object + infinitive 218
verb + object + preposition 270
verb + preposition + object 268, 270
verb + two objects 188
of
+ noun 28
verb + of 268
off 48
offers
future conditional 176
imperatives 186
shall/will 144
often: How often? 206
Oh 294
OK? 300
on
+ noun phrases 56
place 44, 56
time 50, 56, 317
verb + on 268
on fire 56
on purpose 56
on time 56
one/ones 38
onto 48
opinion adjectives 62
opposite 46
or 244
-or nouns 282
order of events 248, 250
orders 186
other: each other 34
ought to/ought not to 166
reported statements 224
our 30
ours 30
ourselves 34
-ous adjectives 284
out of
+ noun phrases 56
movement 48
out of order 56
over 48
P

passive forms 256–60
active or passive? 256
+ by 256, 260
have something done 260
modal verbs 258
past simple 256
present perfect 258
present simple 256
reasons for using 256
verb + object(s) 256
in writing 258
past 48
past continuous 114, 306
or past simple? 116
reported statements 224
past participles 124, 126, 224
irregular forms 314–15
regular forms 316
past perfect 224
past simple 110–12, 306
be 108
for + period of time 112
from ... to 112
irregular verbs 110, 314–15
negative 112
passive 256
or past continuous? 116
positive 110
or present perfect? 132
questions 112
regular verbs 110, 316
reported statements 224
then 112
time expressions 110, 112
or used to? 118
past tenses 108–18, 306
irregular verbs 314–15
linking words 248, 250
passive 256
past continuous 114
past simple: negative 112
past simple or past continuous? 116
past simple or used to 118
past simple: positive 110
past simple: questions 112
regular verbs 316
used to 118
pay 270
permission

can/can’t 154, 158
could/couldn’t 158
may/may not 158

phrasal verbs 272, 313
pick up 272
place
adverbs of place 66, 68
prepositional phrases of place 56
prepositions of place 44, 46
place names 12
plans and arrangements 142, 146, 148
please 158
plural nouns 2
and articles 8, 10
possessive forms 28
spelling 316
politeness
indirect questions 228
Oh 294
please 158
requests 158
positive question tags 292
possessives
adjectives 30
nouns 28
pronouns 30
in reported statements 224
's' 28
possibility
future conditional 176, 178
future: will/won’t be able to 156
may 168
might 168
past: could/couldn’t 156
present: can/can’t 154
predictions
with going to 142, 148
with will 144, 148
prefer: I’d prefer 216
prepositional phrases 56
prepositions 44–56
adjective + preposition 266
of movement 48
no preposition 50
+ object pronouns 26
of place 44, 46, 56
in relative clauses 238
of time 50, 52, 56, 317
in American English 317
verb + preposition 214, 268, 270, 312
weak forms in speech 298
in Wh- questions 202
with other meanings 54
present conditions 174
present continuous 94, 306
for future 146, 148
negative 94
or present simple? 98
positive 94
questions 96
time expressions 94
verbs not using 98
present perfect 124–36, 307
with for, since etc. 130
with just, already, yet 128, 317
passive 258
for past experiences 124
or past simple? 132
or present perfect continuous? 136
for present results 126
reported statements 224
present perfect continuous 134, 307
or present perfect? 136
present simple 306
be 86, 88
can/can’t 154
facts, thoughts and feelings 90
for future 146
have got 100
negative 90
passive 256
positive 90
or present continuous? 98
questions 92
regular activities, habits and routine 90
spelling 316
present tenses 86–102, 306
passive 256, 258
present continuous 94, 96, 96, 146, 148
present simple 90, 92, 98
present simple: be 86, 88
prices: How much? 16, 206
probably 144
promises: will 144
pronouns 26, 30–8, 306
another (one) 38
demonstratives 32
indefinite pronouns 36
object pronouns 26, 192
one/ones 38
possessive pronouns 30
reflexive pronouns 34
relative pronouns 234, 236
in reported statements 224
in short answers 88
in spoken English 300
subject pronouns 26, 192
pronunciation
the 10, 298
weak/strong forms 298
see also intonation
purpose: linking words 246
put back 272
put down 272
put on 272
Q
quantifiers 14–20
all 20
any 14
both 20
either 294
a few 18
a little 18
a lot of 16
many 16
most 20
much 16
neither 294
no 20, 36
none 20
none of 20
not enough 18, 78
some 14, 20
without a noun 14, 16
question mark (?) 186
question tags 292
questions 198–208
with be 88, 108, 198
can/can’t 154
direct questions 228
future with going to 142
future with will 144
have 102
have something done 260
How? 206
indirect questions 228
for information 202
in modals 154–68
negative questions 200
object questions 208
past continuous 114
past simple 112
present continuous 96
present perfect 124
present perfect continuous 134
present simple 92
subject questions 208
used to 118
Wh- questions 92, 200–6
word order 186, 208
Yes/No questions 198, 228
shall  
offers 144  
shall we? 144  
suggestions 144  
she 26, 234  
short answers 198, 294  
short forms 86, 88  
have got/got to 100, 160  
question tags 292  
spoken English 300  
wasn't/weren't 108  
would 178  
see also short answers  
should/shouldn't 166  
reported statements 224  
since  
present perfect 130  
present perfect continuous 134  
singular nouns 2  
-sion nouns 282  
sit down 272  
size 206  
so 246, 294  
So am I./So do I. 294  
so that 246  
some 14, 20  
some of 20  
somebody 36  
someone 36  
something 36  
somewhere 36  
soon: as soon as 146  
spelling 316–7  
spoken English 292–300  
agreement 294  
asking for a reaction 300  
disagreement 294  
either 294  
exclamations 296  
grammar 300  
listener responses 300  
neither 294  
 omission words 300  
question tags 292  
short forms 300  
so ... 294  
too 294  
weak forms 298  
stand up 272  
start 186  
statements 184  
reported statements 224  
word order 184  

quite 80  
R  
really 80  
Really? 296  
reason  
linking words 246  
not ... enough 78  
with so 246  
too 78  
why 238  
recommendations 166  
reflexive pronouns 34  
relative clauses 234–8  
relative pronouns 234  
as subject/object 236  
reported statements 224  
reporting verbs 226  
requests 186  
  can/can't 158  
  could/couldn't 158  
  may 158  
  please 158  
  reporting requests 226  
result: linking words 246  
right? 300  
round 48  
rules  
  have to 160  
  modal passives 258  
  with passive verbs 256  
S  
'sl' (possessive) 28  
-s, -es verb endings 90  
same (as) 76  
say 226  
schwa 298  
second conditional 178  
self- + verb/adjective/noun 286  
sense verbs 98  
sentences 184–92  
  imperatives 186  
  it as subject/object 192  
  linking words 246  
  negative sentences 218  
  statements 184, 224  
  there + be 190  
  verbs with two objects 188  
  word order 184, 186  
see also passive forms; questions; relative clauses  

\textbf{U}

un- adjectives 284
uncertainty 168
uncountable nouns 4, 6
and articles 8, 10
under 44
units: uncountable nouns 6
unstressed vowels 298
until 50, 146, 248
us 26
used to 118

\textbf{V}

verbs
+ adjective 62
+ adverb 68, 80, 272
+ no object 184
+ object + infinitive 218
+ object + preposition 270
+ prepositions 214, 268, 270, 312
+ to 268
+ two objects 188
active verbs 256
all + verb 20
auxiliary verbs 68, 186, 198, 200, 244
confusing verbs 274
\textit{-ed} form 110, 124, 224, 315
\textit{-es} form 90
infinitive form 216, 226, 250, 310
\textit{-ing} form 94, 114, 184, 214, 268, 310, 316
intransitive verbs 184
irregular verbs 110, 126, 314–15
most + verb 20
no/none + verb 20
noun–verb agreement 2
passives 256–60
past continuous 114, 116
past participles 124, 126, 224, 314–15
past simple 110–12, 116
phrasal verbs 272, 313
present continuous 94, 96, 98
present perfect 124–36, 306–7
present perfect continuous 134, 136
regular verbs 316
in reported statements 224
reporting verbs 226
short forms 86, 88
some + verb 20
spelling 94, 316
uncountable nouns 4
see also modal verbs
very 80
(very) much 80

very or too 78
vowels 8, 10
weak (unstressed) 298

\textbf{W}

wake up 272
warnings
  first conditional 176
  imperatives 186
  with will 144
was it? 292
was/wasn’t 108
  pronunciation 298
  second conditional 178
we 26
weak forms 298
weather: It’s ... 192
weekend: at/on the weekend 317
well 66, 72
we’re 86
were 108
  pronunciation 298
  second conditional 178
weren’t 108
\textit{Wh}- questions
  + do, does and did 228
  + have 102
  + have got 100
  + prepositions 202
  indirect questions 228
  past simple 112
  present continuous 96
  present perfect 124
  present perfect continuous 134
  present simple 92
  present simple: be 88
\textit{wh}- words 200, 202, 204, 206
What? 204
What a/an + (adjective) + noun! 296
when
  future events/time 146, 176, 248
  order of events 248
  past continuous 116
  past simple 110
  present conditions 174
  relative clauses 238
  and while 116
When? 92, 130, 202
where 238
Where? 202
whether 228
which 234, 236, 238
Which? 204
INDEX

which one/ones? 38
while 116, 248
who 234, 236
who? 202
  who? or whose? 204
whose? 30, 204
  whose? or who? 204
why 238
why? 202
will
certainty 144, 148
decisions, offers, promises, warnings 144, 148
reported statements 224
will/won’t be able to 156
will/won’t have to 164
with 54
  verb + with 268
won’t 144
  won’t I? 292
word formation 282–6
  adjectives 284, 286
  compound adjectives 286
  compound nouns 286
  nouns 282, 286
word order
  adjectives 62
  adverbs 68, 144, 184
  imperatives 186
  questions 186, 208
  statements 184
words that go together 266–76
  common collocations 266
  phrasal verbs 272, 313
  verb + preposition 214, 268, 270, 312
worse 72
worst: the worst 74
would + like/love/hate/prefer 216
would/wouldn’t
  reported statements 224
  second conditional 178
Wow! 296
write down 272
The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:

(Key: b-bottom; c-centre; l-left; r-right; t-top)

4Corners Images: Johanna Huber 255t, Fantuz Olimpio 258b; Alamy Images: 6, 16, 132i, 160, 178i, 206, 291, 299, Roger Bamber 183, Blend Images 104t, Peter Brown 236, Bubbles Photolibrary 199, China Images 207, Chris Howes / Wild Places Photography 228, David Cook 22, Elizabeth Whiting & Associates 77b, Greece photo library 173, Jeremy Hoare 126l, Image Source Pink 104c, INTERFOTO Pressebildagentur 117, Jeff Morgan 12, 54, Jupiterimages 91, Kenneth Dyer 263 (realia), Eddie Linssen 37, Mike Kipling Photography 176m, Mira 281, Mirrorpix 70r, MIXA Co., Ltd. 142t, Nic Cleave Photography 272r, Jeremy Pardoe 204r, Bob Pardue 226, PCL 63cr, PhotoAlto 141t, Pictorial Press Ltd 203l, Jason Politte 186, Matthew Richardson 200b, Alex Segre 72r, Leonid Serebrennikov 9b, Friedrich Stark 288cl, Steve Allen Travel Photography 303, Tetra Images 156r, Arthur Turner 204c, UpperCut Images 205, vario images GmbH & Co.KG 198; Axiom Photographic Agency Ltd: 262; Bridgeman Art Library Ltd: Staatliche Kunstsammlungen Dresden 96b; Camera Press Ltd: 118i, Rossi - Benainous / Gamma / Eyedea Presse 296; Corbis: 2, 12, 219, 270, 277, B.S.P.I. 297l, Bettmann 120, Manuel Blondeau 68, Cultura 128l, Fancy / Veer 223t, Andrew Fox 204l, Image100 66, Moodboard 293, Roy Morsch 62, José Fuste Raga 256, Patrick Robert 221, Sunset Boulevard 108b; Europa Park: 74r; FremantleMedia: 114; Getty Images: 96t, 153t, AFP 154r, 161, 255b, AFP 154r, 161, 255b, Peter Cade 189, Chris Clinton 126r, John Coletti 297r, Gregg DeGuire 90r, Goodshoot 28, Jean Heguy 235, Dan Kenyon 260r, Glyn Kirk 128r, Knauer / Johnston 153b, Sergei Krouglikov 99, Bruce Laurance 176l, Melissa McManus 82, Kazuhiro Nogi 74c, Yo Oura 38, Photographers Choice 72l, Alberto E. Rodriguez 87r, Ezra Shaw 169t, Bob Stevens 36, Taxi 25, Edmond Terakopian 188r, The Image Bank 187, WireImage 100; iStockphoto: Garret Bautista 166, Mike Bentley 288tr, Tammy Peluso 83; JupiterImages: 265, FoodPix 15; Kobal Collection Ltd: 55, 144, 241, 243, MGMT / United Artists / Sony 110, 111, Paramount / Universal 116, Warner Bros 107t; Lonely Planet Images: 178r; Masterfile UK Ltd: 274, 300, Digital Vision 272i; Moviestore Collection Ltd: 238; Panos Pictures: Abbie Trayler-Smith 246; Photofusion Picture Library: Paul Baldesari 245; Photolibrary.com: 80, 162, 223b, 252, 273, 276l, Atlanticl SN.C 288bl, Banana Stock 150, 154l, Bilderloung 30, Blend Images 64, Corbis 63r, Digital Vision 92, 103, Nick Dolding 132r, ElProductions Ltd 218, Dennis Gilbert 18, Peter Higgins 1, Rainer Holtz 261, i love images 216, Jon Arnold / Peter Adams 118r, Julian Love 257, Jose Luis Pelaez Inc 230, Kate Mitchell 89, Monkey Business Images Ltd 70l, Martin Moxter 40, Duane Osborn 215, Photodisc 136, Maurizio Polverelli 123, Stockbyte 39, Steve Vidler 75, Walter Zerla 14; Photoshot Holdings Limited: 43; Press Association Images: 74i, 90l, 104b, 129, 165, 168, 192, 288br, Evan Agostini 87l, AP 156l, Sean Dempsey 157, Vadim Ghirda 102, Peter Hatter 134, Jeff Moore 47, Matt Sayles 86; Reuters: Jason Lee 139, Max Whittaker 119; Rex Features: 13, 59, 85, 88, 108t, 109, 190, 233, 237, 260l, 276r, 287, 288cr, Riccardo Schito 164, SNAP 52, 107b, Westend61 61; Shutterstock.com: 4, 8t, 8c, 8r, 8bl, 56, 63ci, 77t, 93, 142l, 149, 188l, 191, 203r, 211, 234, 288tl; Thinkstock: 63i, 266, iStockphoto 9t, Pixland 128c, Thinkstock Images 124; TopFoto: Ann Ronan Picture Library 29; courtesy of www.iwantoneofthose.com : 169b.

All other images © Pearson Education

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders and we apologise in advance for any unintentional omissions. We would be pleased to insert the appropriate acknowledgement in any subsequent edition of this publication.
# Pronunciation table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonants</th>
<th>Vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Symbol</strong></td>
<td><strong>Keyword</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>pen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>fat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θ</td>
<td>thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ð</td>
<td>then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>soon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñ</td>
<td>ship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʒ</td>
<td>pleasure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>loch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʃ</td>
<td>cheer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dʒ</td>
<td>jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñ</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>wet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>yet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\*slash* shows main stress
Think all grammar courses are the same? Think again...

MyGrammarLab is a unique blend of book, online and mobile resources that ensures you have all the information and practice you need to master English grammar.

**Book**
- Easy-to-understand explanations using the Longman Defining Vocabulary - a simple vocabulary of just 2000 words
- Topic-based modules and natural examples showing grammar in use
- Information on common errors and how to avoid making them
- Information on the pronunciation of grammar items
- Practice exercises for every unit
- Review sections to consolidate learning
- Exit tests to check understanding
- Grammar Check and full glossary of grammar terms for quick grammar reference

**Online**
- Video presentations of key grammar points
- Additional practice for every unit
- Diagnostic, progress and exit tests to monitor progress
- Catch-up exercises to ensure the grammar has been learnt
- Automatic grading and feedback
- Pronunciation practice on the grammar of spoken English to improve fluency
- Recorded answers for exercises to give listening practice
- Grammar practice for key international exams

**Mobile**
- Download exercises to your mobile phone for practice away from your computer

www.mygrammarlab.com